Tektronix

User Manual

Tektronix

TDS 420 & TDS 460
Digitizing Oscilloscopes

070-8034-01

Please check for change information at the rear of this manual.

First Printing: December 1992
Revised Printing: March 1993

Instrument Serial Numbers

Each instrument manufactured by Tektronix has a serial number on a panel insert or tag, or stamped on the chassis. The first letter in the serial number designates the country of manufacture. The last five digits of the serial number are assigned sequentially and are unique to each instrument. Those manufactured in the United States have six unique digits. The country of manufacture is identified as follows:

B010000	Tektronix, Inc., Beaverton, Oregon, USA
E200000	Tektronix United Kingdom, Ltd., London
J300000	Sony/Tektronix, Japan
H700000	Tektronix Holland, NV, Heerenveen, The Netherlands

Instruments manufactured for Tektronix by external vendors outside the United States are assigned a two digit alpha code to identify the country of manufacture (e.g., JP for Japan, HK for Hong Kong, IL for Israel, etc.).

Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, OR 97077

Printed in U.S.A.

Copyright © Tektronix, Inc., 1992. All rights reserved. Tektronix products are covered by U.S. and foreign patents, issued and pending. The following are registered trademarks: TEKTRONIX, TEK, TEKPROBE, and SCOPE-MOBILE.

WARRANTY

Tektronix warrants that this product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of three (3) years from the date of shipment. If any such product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; or c) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Tektronix

EC Declaration of Conformity

We

Tektronix Holland N.V.
Marktweg 73A
8444 AB Heerenveen
The Netherlands

declares under sole responsibility that the

TDS 420 & TDS 460 Digitizing Oscilloscopes

meet the intent of Directive 89/336/EEC for Electromagnetic Compatibility. Compliance was demonstrated to the following specifications as listed in the official Journal of the European Communities:

EN 50081–1 Emissions:

EN 55022 Radiated
EN 55022 Conducted

EN 50082–1 Immunity:

IEC 801–2 Electrostatic Discharge
IEC 801–3 RF Radiated
IEC 801–4 Fast Transients
IEC 801–5 Surge

Please take a moment to review these safety precautions. They are provided for your protection and to prevent damage to the digitizing oscilloscope. This safety information applies to all operators and service personnel.

Symbols and Terms

These two terms appear in manuals:

- **CAUTION** statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to the equipment or other property.
- **WARNING** statements identify conditions or practices that could result in personal injury or loss of life.

These two terms appear on equipment:

- *CAUTION* indicates a personal injury hazard not immediately accessible as one reads the marking or a hazard to property including the equipment itself.
- *DANGER* indicates a personal injury hazard immediately accessible as one reads the marking.

This symbol appears in manuals:

Static-Sensitive Devices

These symbols appear on equipment:

DANGER
High Voltage

Protective
ground (earth)
terminal

ATTENTION
Refer to
manual

Specific Precautions

Observe all of these precautions to ensure your personal safety and to prevent damage to either the digitizing oscilloscope or equipment connected to it.

Power Source

The digitizing oscilloscope is intended to operate from a power source that will not apply more than 250 V_{rms} between the supply conductors or between either supply conductor and ground. A protective ground connection, through the grounding conductor in the power cord, is essential for safe system operation.

Grounding the Digitizing Oscilloscope

The digitizing oscilloscope is grounded through the power cord. To avoid electric shock, plug the power cord into a properly wired receptacle where earth ground has been verified by a qualified service person. Do this before making connections to the input or output terminals of the digitizing oscilloscope.

Without the protective ground connection, all parts of the digitizing oscilloscope are potential shock hazards. This includes knobs and controls that may appear to be insulators.

Use the Proper Power Cord

Use only the power cord and connector specified for your product. Use only a power cord that is in good condition.

Use the Proper Fuse

To avoid fire hazard, use only the fuse specified in the parts list for your product, matched by type, voltage rating, and current rating.

Do Not Remove Covers or Panels

To avoid personal injury, do not operate the digitizing oscilloscope without the panels or covers.

Electric Overload

Never apply a voltage to a connector on the digitizing oscilloscope that is outside the voltage range specified for that connector.

Do Not Operate in Explosive Atmospheres

The digitizing oscilloscope provides no explosion protection from static discharges or arcing components. Do not operate the digitizing oscilloscope in an atmosphere of explosive gases.

Contents

Preface ix

Getting Started

Overview 1-1
Product Description 1-3
Start Up 1-4
Setting Up for the Examples 1-7
Example 1: Displaying a Waveform 1-8
Example 2: Multiple Waveforms 1-15
Example 3: Automated Measurements 1-19
Example 4: Saving Setups 1-24

Operating Basics

Overview 2-1
At a Glance 2-2
Triggering 2-11
Acquisition 2-17
Scaling and Positioning Waveforms 2-22
Measurements 2-26

Reference

Overview 3-1
Acquisition Modes 3-2
Autoset 3-9
Cursor Measurements 3-11
Delayed Triggering 3-16
Display Modes 3-21
Edge Triggering 3-26

Hardcopy 3-30
Help 3-38
Horizontal Control 3-39
Limit Testing 3-43
Measurement System 3-48
Probe Accessories 3-59
Probe Compensation 3-66
Probe Selection 3-68
Remote Communication 3-75
Roll 3-79
Saving and Recalling Setups 3-83
Saving and Recalling Waveforms 3-85
Selecting Channels 3-88
Signal Path Compensation 3-90
Status 3-92
Triggering 3-93
Vertical Control 3-97
Video Triggering 3-100
Waveform Math 3-106
Zoom 3-109

Appendices

Appendix A: Options and Accessories A-1
Appendix B: Specification A-9
Appendix C: Algorithms A-25
Appendix D: Packaging for Shipment A-37
Appendix E: Factory Initialization Settings A-39
Appendix F: Remote Display A-43

Glossary

Index

Preface

This is the User Manual for the TDS 420 and TDS 460 Digitizing Oscilloscopes.

If you are a new user, try the *Getting Started* section to become familiar with the operation of your digitizing oscilloscope.

The *Concepts* section covers basic principles of the operation of the oscilloscope. These articles help you understand why your instrument works the way it does.

Use the *In Detail* section to learn how to perform specific tasks. See page 3-1 for a complete list of tasks covered in that section.

The *Appendices* provide an option and accessories listing, product specification, and other useful information.

Related Manuals

The following documents are related to the use or service of the digitizing oscilloscope.

- The *TDS Family Programmer Manual* describes using a computer to control the digitizing oscilloscope through the GPIB interface.
- The *TDS 420 & 460 Reference* gives you a quick overview of how to operate your digitizing oscilloscope.
- The *TDS 420 & TDS 460 Performance Verification* tells how to verify the performance of the digitizing oscilloscope.
- The *TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual* describes use of the Advanced DSP Math option (for TDS oscilloscopes equipped with that option only).
- The *TDS Family Option 13 Instruction Manual* describes using the optional Centronics® and RS-232 interfaces for obtaining hardcopy (for TDS oscilloscopes equipped with that option only).
- The *TDS Family Option 3P Printer Pack Instruction Manual* describes using the optional printer pack for obtaining hardcopy (for TDS oscilloscopes equipped with that option only).
- The TDS 400 Series Printer Instruction describes set up of the optional printer (Option 04).
- The *TDS 420 & TDS 460 Service Manual* provides information for maintaining and servicing your digitizing oscilloscope to the module level.

Conventions

In the *Getting Started* and *Reference* sections, you will find various procedures which contain steps of instructions for you to perform. To keep those instructions clear and consistent, this manual uses the following conventions:

- Names of front panel controls and menu labels appear in boldface print.
- Names also appear in the same case (initial capitals, all uppercase, etc.) in the manual as is used on the oscilloscope front panel and menus. Front panel names are all upper case letters, for example, **VERTICAL MENU**, **CH 1**, etc.
- Instruction steps are numbered. The number is omitted if there is only one step.
- When steps require that you make a sequence of selections using front panel controls and menu buttons, an arrow (→) marks each transition between a front panel button and a menu, or between menus. Also, whether a name is a main menu or side menu item is clearly indicated: Press **VERTICAL MENU** → **Coupling** (main) → **DC** (side) → **Bandwidth** (main) → **100 MHz** (side).

  Using the convention just described results in instructions that are graphically intuitive and simplifies procedures. For example, the instruction just given replaces these five steps:

  1. Press the front panel button **VERTICAL MENU**.
  2. Press the main menu button **Coupling**.
  3. Press the side-menu button **DC**.
  4. Press the main menu button **Bandwidth**
  5. Press the side menu button **100 MHz**
- Sometimes you may have to make a selection from a popup menu: Press **TRIGGER MENU** → **Type** (main) → **Edge** (popup). In this example, you repeatedly press the main menu button **Type** until **Edge** is highlighted in the pop-up menu.

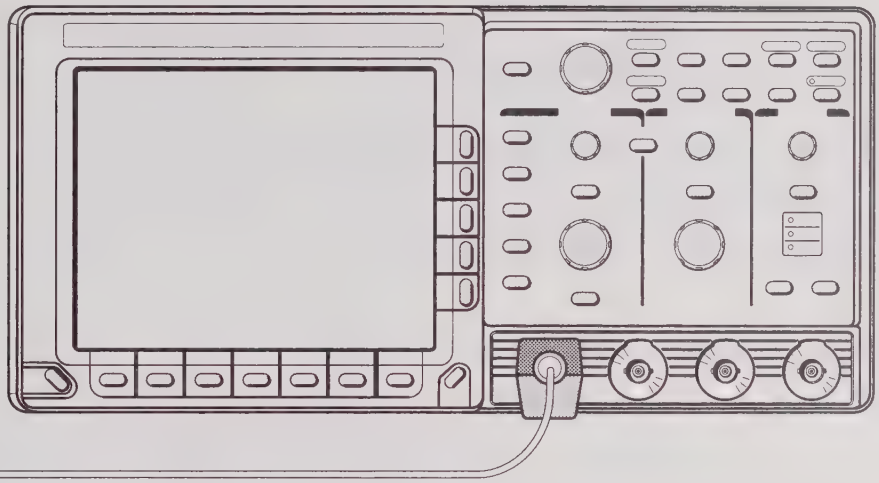
Overview

This section presents a product description, start up information, and four examples discussing the digitizing oscilloscope's basic functions. Use the *At a Glance* section (starting on page 2-2) to help you locate the correct knobs, buttons, and menus.

- *Example 1* teaches you how to reset the digitizing oscilloscope, display and adjust waveforms, and use the autoset function.
- *Example 2* explains how to add, control, and delete multiple waveforms.
- *Example 3* introduces you to the automated measurement system.
- *Example 4* discusses saving and recalling the digitizing oscilloscope setups.

Before you perform these examples, read *Conventions* on page x. If you perform the examples, use the *Operating Basics* and *Reference* sections to learn about the digitizing oscilloscope arrangement and specific functions.

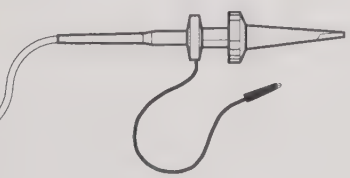
Product Description



Your Tektronix digitizing oscilloscope is a superb tool for acquiring, displaying, and measuring waveforms. Its performance addresses the needs of both benchtop lab and portable applications with:

- 350 MHz maximum analog bandwidth (TDS 460)
  150 MHz maximum analog bandwidth (TDS 420)
- 100 Megasamples/second maximum digitizing rate
- Roll mode and triggered roll mode for display of slower waveforms.
- Waveform Math—Invert a single waveform and add, subtract, and multiply two waveforms. On instruments equipped with option 2F, integrate or differentiate a single waveform or perform an FFT (fast fourier transform) on a waveform to display its magnitude or phase versus its frequency.
- Up to 15,000-point record length per channel (60,000-point optional)
- Full GPIB software programmability. GPIB hardcopy output. On instruments equipped with option 13, hardcopy output using the RS-232 or Centronics ports. On-board printer capability with option 3P instruments.
- Complete measurement and documentation ability
- Intuitive graphical icon operation blended with the familiarity of traditional horizontal and vertical knobs
- Four full-featured channels and four eight-bit digitizers
- On-line help at the touch of a button

The *Appendices* list options, accessories, and the product specifications.



Start Up

Before you use the digitizing oscilloscope, ensure that it is properly installed and powered on.

Operation

To properly install and power on the digitizing oscilloscope, do the following:

Installation

1. Be sure you have the appropriate operating environment. Specifications for temperature, relative humidity, altitude, vibrations, and emissions are included in *Appendix B: Specification* at the rear of this manual.
2. Leave space for cooling. Do this by verifying that the air intake and exhaust holes on the sides of the cabinet (where the fan operates) are free of any airflow obstructions. Leave at least 2 inches (5.1 cm) free on each side.

WARNING

To avoid electrical shock, be sure that the power cord is disconnected before checking the fuse.

3. Check the fuse to be sure it is the proper type and rating (Figure 1-1). You can use either of two fuses. Each fuse requires its own cap (see Table 1-1). The digitizing oscilloscope is shipped with the UL approved fuse installed.
4. Check that you have the proper electrical connections. The digitizing oscilloscope requires 90 to 132 V for 48 through 62 Hz, 100 to 132 V or 180 to 250 V for 48 through 440 Hz, and may require up to 240 W.
5. Connect the proper power cord from the rear-panel power connector (Figure 1-1) to the power system.

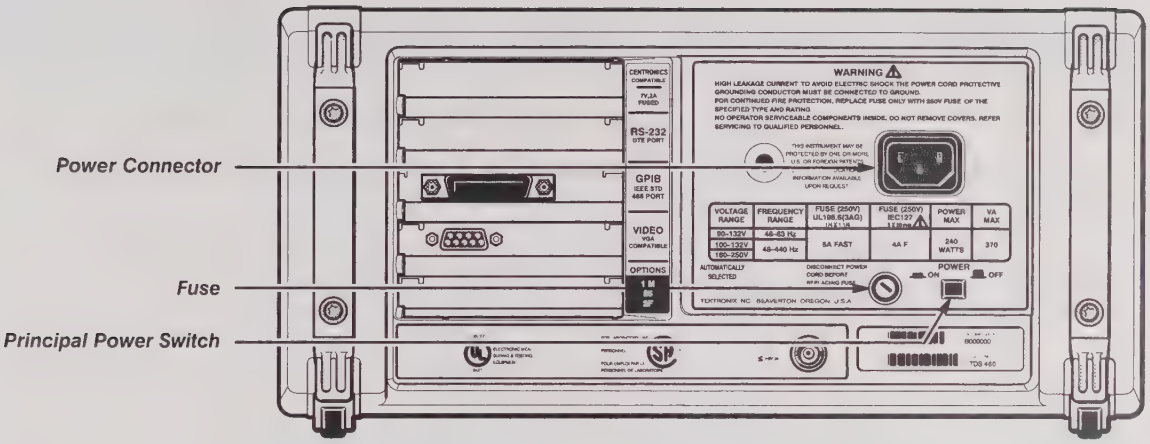


Figure 1-1: Rear Panel Controls Used in Start Up

Table 1-1: Fuse and Fuse Cap Part Numbers

Fuse	Fuse Part Number	Fuse Cap Part Number
.25 inch × 1.25 inch (UL 198.6, 3AG): 5 A FAST, 250 V.	159-0906-00	200-2264-00
5 mm × 20 mm (IEC 127): 4 A (T), 250 V.	159-0255-00	200-2265-00

Power On

1. Check that the rear-panel principal power switch is on (Figure 1-1). The principal power switch controls all AC power to the instrument.
2. If the oscilloscope is not powered on (the screen is blank), push the front-panel **ON/STBY** button to toggle it on (Figure 1-2).

   The **ON/STBY** button controls power to most of the instrument circuits. Power continues to go to certain parts even when this switch is set to STBY.

   Once the digitizing oscilloscope is installed, you can leave the principal power switch on and use the **ON/STBY** button as the power switch.

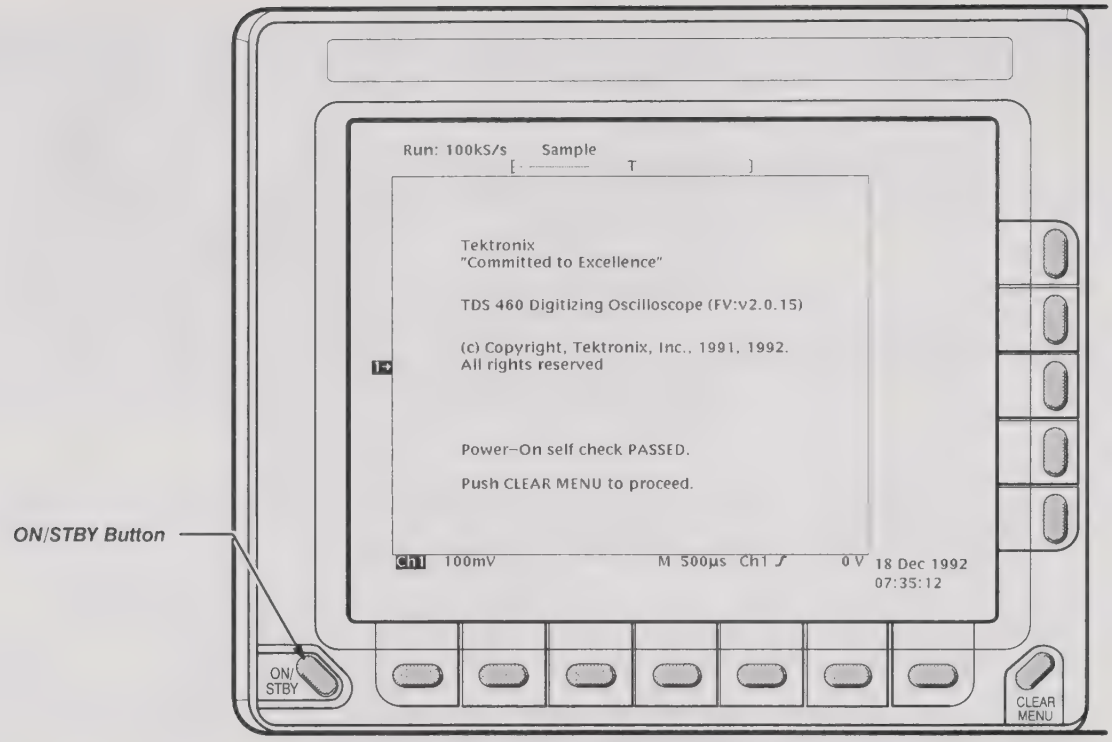


Figure 1-2: ON/STBY Button

Self Test

The digitizing oscilloscope automatically performs power-on tests each time it is turned on. It will come up with a display screen that states whether or not it passed self test. (If the self test passed, the status display screen will be removed after a few seconds.)

Check the self test results.

If the self test fails, call your local Tektronix Service Center. Depending on the type of failure, you may still be able to use the oscilloscope before it is serviced.

Power Off

Press the **ON/STBY** switch to turn off the oscilloscope.

Before You Begin

Signal Path Compensation (SPC) lets you compensate your oscilloscope for the current ambient temperature, helping to ensure maximum possible accuracy for your most critical measurements. See *Signal Path Compensation* on page 3-90 for a description of and operating information on this key feature.

Setting Up for the Examples

All the examples use the same setup. Once you perform this setup, you do not have to change the signal connections for any of the other examples.

Remove all probes and signal inputs from the input BNC connectors along the lower right of the front panel. Then, using one of the probes supplied with the digitizing oscilloscope, connect from the **CH 1** connector to the connectors (Figure 1-3).

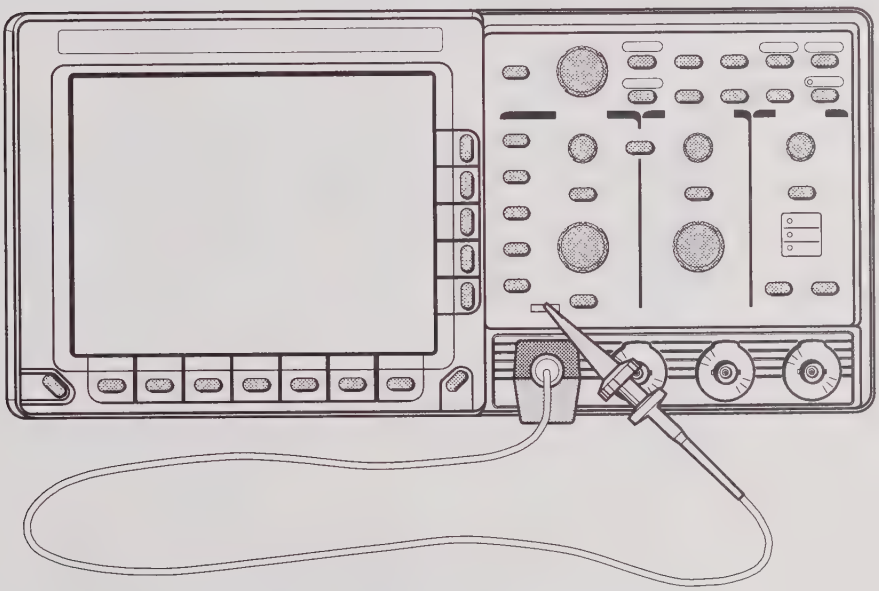


Figure 1-3: Connecting a Probe for the Examples

Example 1: Displaying a Waveform

In this first example you learn about resetting the digitizing oscilloscope, displaying and adjusting a waveform, and using the autoset function.

Resetting the Digitizing Oscilloscope

All examples begin by resetting the digitizing oscilloscope to a known factory default state. Reset the oscilloscope when you begin a new task and need to "start fresh" with known default settings.

1. Press the save/recall **SETUP** button to display the Setup menu (Figure 1-4).

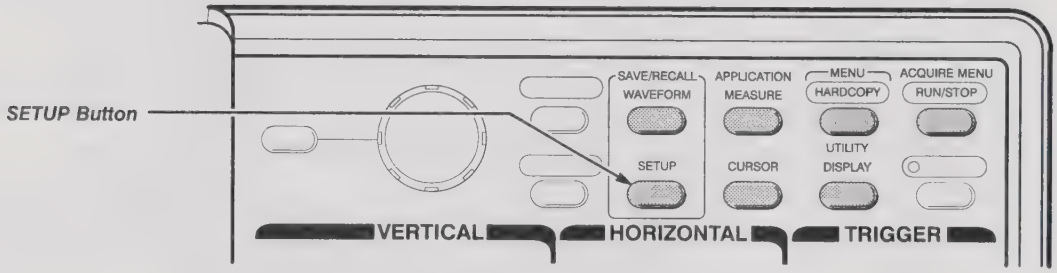


Figure 1-4: SETUP Button Location

The digitizing oscilloscope displays *main menus* along the bottom of the screen. Figure 1-5 shows the Setup main menu.

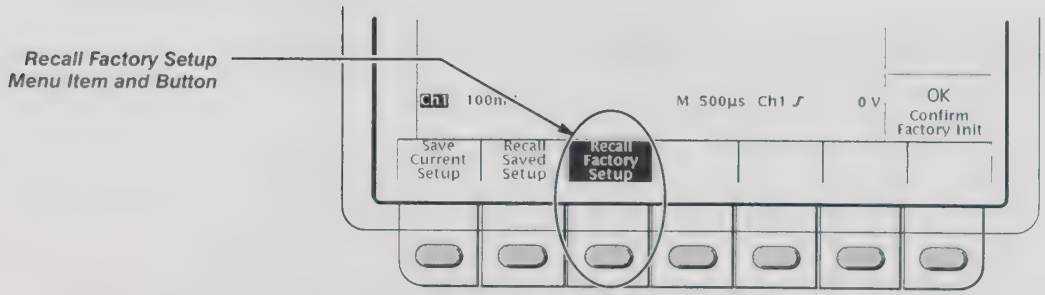


Figure 1-5: The Displayed Setup Menu

2. Press the button directly below the **Recall Factory Setup** menu item.

   The display shows *side menus* along the right side of the screen. The buttons to select these side menu items are to the right of the side menu.

   Because an accidental instrument reset could destroy a setup that took a long time to create, the digitizing oscilloscope asks you to verify the **Recall Factory Setup** selection (see Figure 1-5).

3. Press the button to the right of the **OK Confirm Factory Init** side menu item (see Figure 1-6).

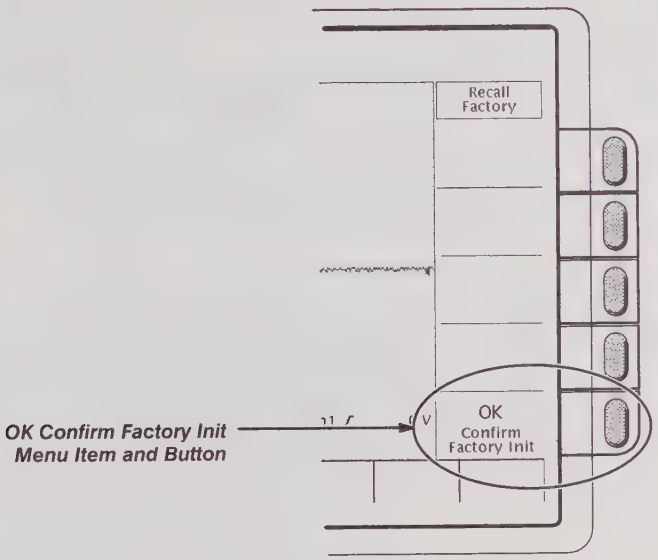


Figure 1-6: The Recall Factory Side Menu

NOTE

This manual uses the following notation to represent the sequence of selections you made in steps 1, 2 and 3: Press save/recall **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) → **OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).

Note that a clock icon appears on screen. The oscilloscope displays this icon when performing operations that take longer than several seconds.

4. Press **SET LEVEL TO 50%** (see Figure 1-7) to be sure the oscilloscope triggers on the input signal.

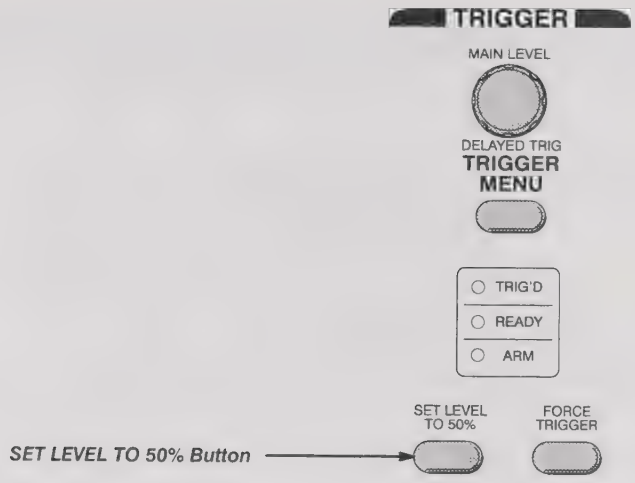


Figure 1-7: SET LEVEL TO 50% Button

Display Elements

Figure 1-8 shows the display that results from the instrument reset. There are several important points to observe:

- The *trigger level bar* shows that the waveform is triggered at a level near 50% of its amplitude (from step 4).
- The *trigger position indicator* shows that the trigger position of the waveform is located at the horizontal center of the graticule.
- The *channel reference indicator* shows the vertical position of channel 1 with no input signal. This indicator points to the ground level for the channel when its vertical offset is set to 0 V in the vertical menu; when vertical offset is *not* set to 0 V, it points to the vertical offset level.
- The *trigger readout* shows that the digitizing oscilloscope is triggering on channel 1 (**Ch1**) on a rising edge, and that the trigger level is about 200-300 mV.
- The *time base readout* shows that the main time base is set to a horizontal scale of 500 µs/div.
- The *channel readout* indicates that channel 1 (**Ch1**) is displayed with DC coupling. (In AC coupling, ~ appears after the volts/div readout.) The digitizing oscilloscope always displays channel 1 at reset.

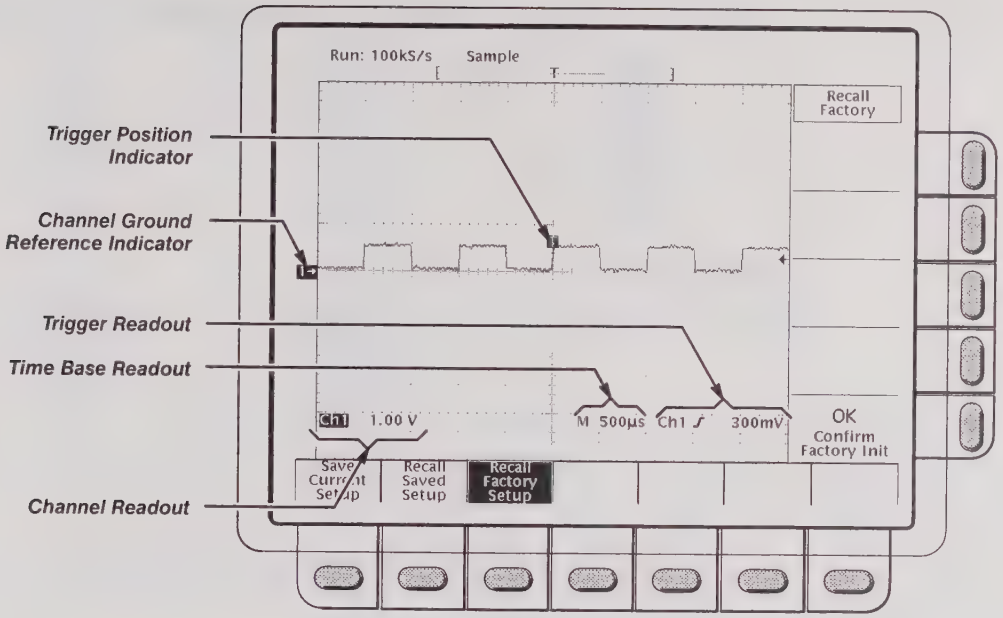


Figure 1-8: The Display After Factory Initialization

Right now, the channel, time base, and trigger readouts appear in the graticule area because a menu is displayed. You can press the **CLEAR MENU** button at any time to remove any menus and to move the readouts below the graticule.

Adjusting the Waveform Display

The display shows the probe compensation signal. It is a 1 kHz square wave of approximately 0.5 V amplitude. You can adjust the size and placement of the waveform using the front-panel knobs.

Figure 1-9 shows the main **VERTICAL** and **HORIZONTAL** sections of the front panel. Each has **SCALE** and **POSITION** knobs.

1. Turn the vertical **SCALE** knob clockwise. Observe the change in the displayed waveform and the channel readout at the bottom of the display.

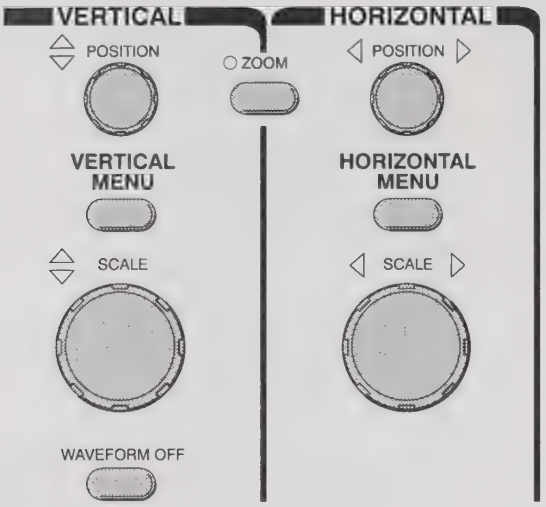


Figure 1-9: The VERTICAL and HORIZONTAL Controls

2. Turn the vertical **POSITION** knob first one direction, then the other. Observe the change in the displayed waveform. Then return the waveform to the center of the graticule.
3. Turn the horizontal **SCALE** knob one click clockwise. Observe the time base readout at the bottom of the display. The time base should be set to 200 µs/div now, and you should see two complete waveform cycles on the display.

Using Autoset

When you first connect a signal to a channel and display it, the signal displayed may not be scaled and triggered correctly. Use the autoset function and you should quickly get a meaningful display.

When you reset the digitizing oscilloscope, you see a clear, stable display of the probe compensation waveform. That is because the probe compensation signal happens to display well at the default settings of the digitizing oscilloscope.

1. To create an unstable display, slowly turn the trigger **MAIN LEVEL** knob (see Figure 1-10) first one direction, then the other. Observe what happens when you move the trigger level above the highest part of the displayed waveform. Leave the trigger level in that untriggered state.
2. Press **AUTOSET** (see Figure 1-11) and observe the stable waveform display.

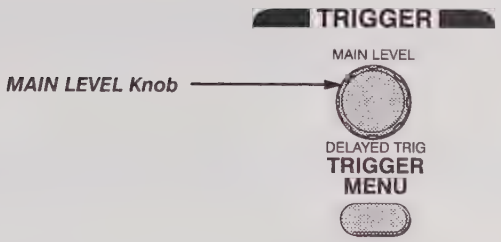


Figure 1-10: TRIGGER Controls

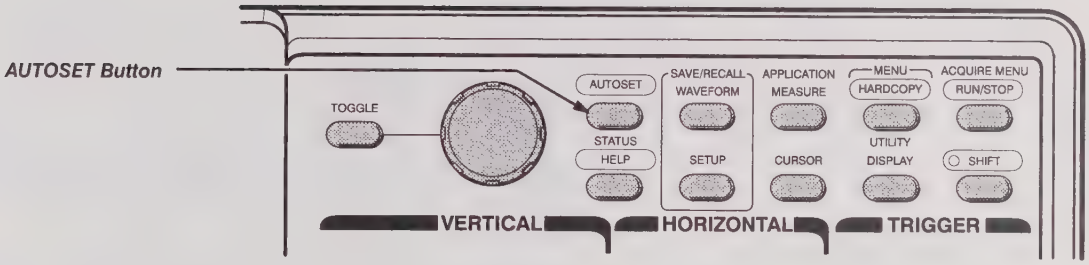


Figure 1-11: AUTOSET Button Location

Figure 1-12 shows the display after pressing **AUTOSET**. If necessary, you can adjust the waveform now by using the knobs discussed earlier in this example.

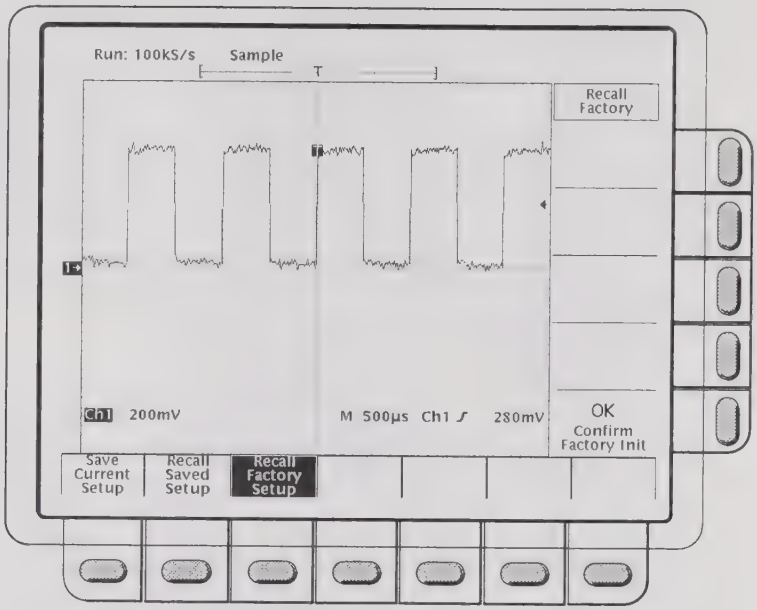


Figure 1-12: The Display After Pressing Autoset

NOTE

If the corners on your displayed signal look rounded or pointed (see Figure 1-13), then you may need to compensate your probe. The Probe Compensation *section on page 3-66 explains how to do that.*

Figure 1-13: Display Signals Requiring Probe Compensation

Example 2: Multiple Waveforms

In this example you learn how to display and control more than one waveform at a time.

Adding a Waveform

The **VERTICAL** section of the front panel contains the channel selection buttons. These are **CH1**, **CH 2**, **CH 3**, **CH 4**, and **MORE** (Figure 1-14).

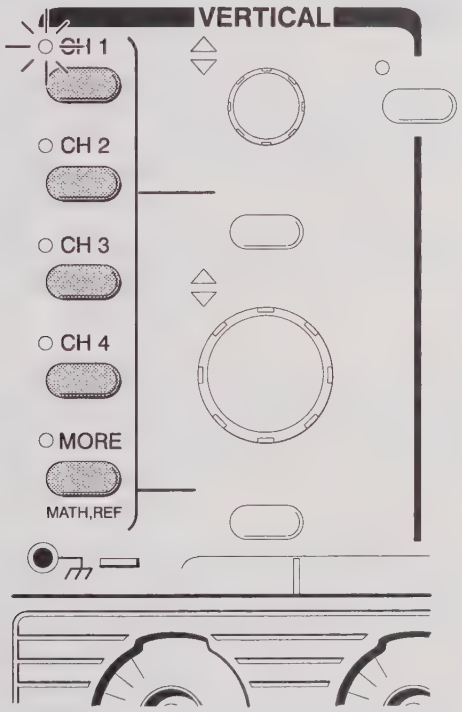


Figure 1-14: The Channel Buttons and Lights

Each of the channel (**CH**) buttons has a light beside its label. Right now, the **CH 1** light is on. That light indicates that the vertical controls are set to adjust channel 1.

The following steps adds a waveform to the display.

1. If you are not continuing from the previous example, follow the instructions on page 1-7 under the heading "Setting Up for the Examples."
2. Press **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) **→ OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).

3. Press **AUTOSET**.

4. Press **CH 2**.

   The display shows a second waveform, which represents the signal on channel 2. Since there is nothing connected to the **CH 2** input connector, this waveform is a flat line.

   There are several other important things to observe:

   - The channel readout on the display now shows the settings for both **Ch1** and **Ch2**.
   - There are two channel indicators at the left edge of the graticule. Right now, they overlap.
   - The light next to the **CH 2** button is now on, and the **CH 1** light is off. Because the knobs control only one channel at a time, the vertical controls are now set to adjust channel 2.
   - The trigger readout still indicates that the trigger is detecting trigger events on **Ch1**. The trigger source is not changed simply by adding a channel. (You can change the trigger source by using the **TRIGGER MENU** button to display the trigger menu.)

5. Turn the vertical **POSITION** knob clockwise to move the channel 2 waveform up on the graticule. You will notice that the channel reference indicator for channel 2 moves with the waveform.

6. Press **VERTICAL MENU → Coupling** (main).

   The **VERTICAL MENU** button displays a menu that gives you control over many vertical channel parameters (Figure 1-15). Although there can be more than one channel displayed, the vertical menu and buttons only adjust the selected channel.

   Each menu item in the Vertical menu displays a side menu. Right now, the **Coupling** item in the main menu is highlighted, which means that the side menu shows the coupling choices. At the top of the side menu, the menu title shows the channel affected by the menu choices. That always matches the lighted channel button.

7. Press Ω (side) to toggle the selection to **50 Ω**. That changes the input coupling of channel 2 from 1 MΩ to 50 Ω. The channel readout for channel 2 (near the bottom of the graticule) now shows an Ω indicator.

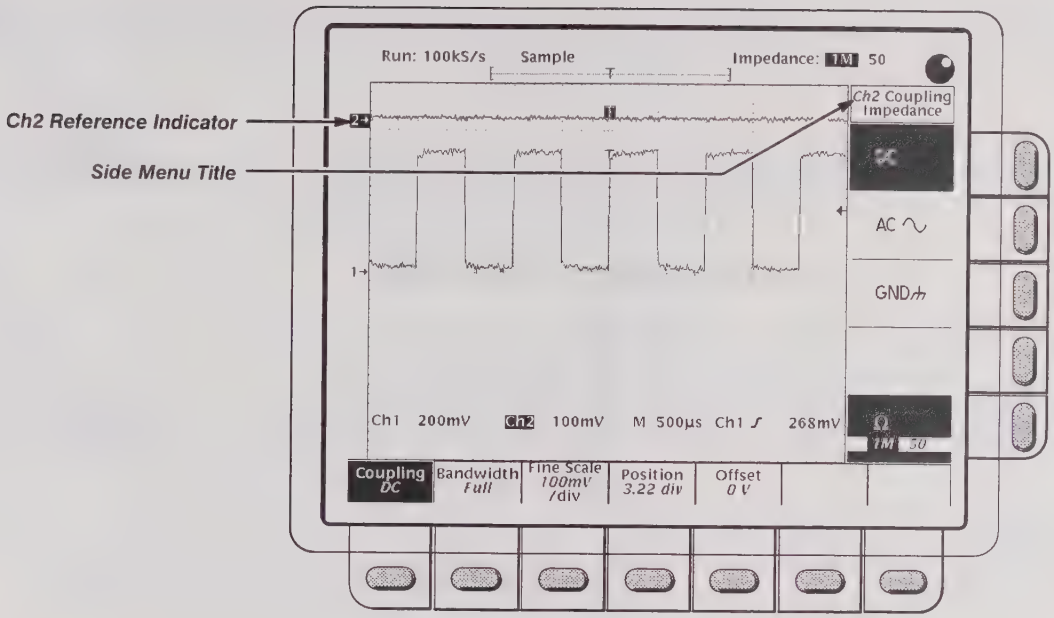


Figure 1-15: The Vertical Main Menu and Coupling Side Menu

Changing Controls to Another Channel

Pressing a channel (**CH**) button sets the vertical controls to that channel. It also adds the channel to the display if that waveform is not already displayed.

1. Press **CH 1**.

   Observe that now the side menu title shows **Ch1** (Figure 1-16), and that the light next to **CH 1** is lighted. The highlighted menu item in the side menu has changed from the **50** Ω channel 2 setting to the **1 MΩ** impedance setting of channel 1.

2. Press **CH 2 →** Ω (side) to toggle the selection to **1 MΩ**. That returns the coupling impedance of channel 2 to its initial state.

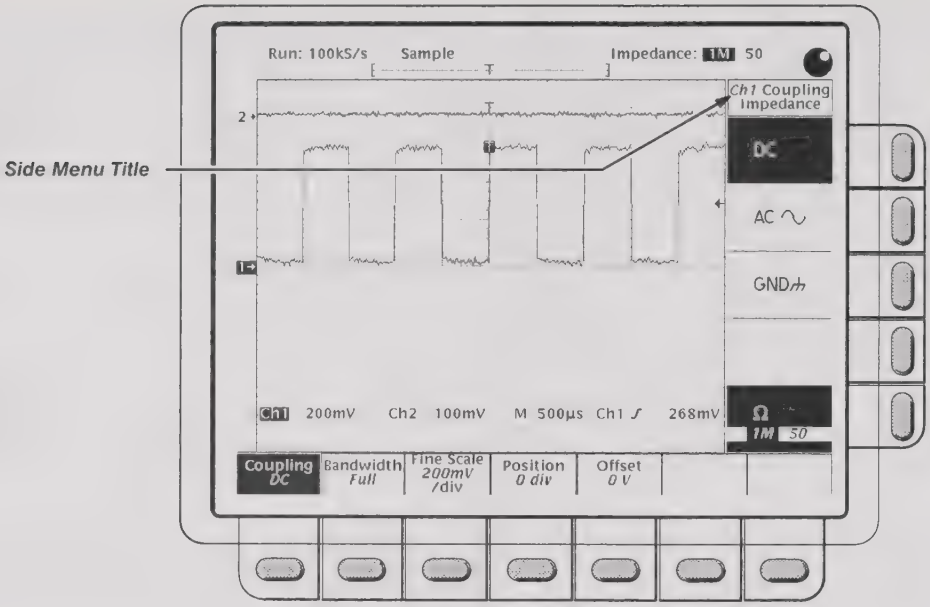


Figure 1-16: The Menus After Changing Channels

Removing a Waveform

Pressing the **WAVEFORM OFF** button removes the waveform for the currently selected channel. If the waveform you want to remove is not already selected, select that channel using the channel (**CH**) button.

1. Press **WAVEFORM OFF** (under the vertical **SCALE** knob).

   Since the **CH 2** light was on when you pressed the **WAVEFORM OFF** button, the channel 2 waveform was removed.

   The channel (**CH**) lights now indicate channel 1. Channel 1 has become the selected channel. When you remove the last waveform, all the **CH** lights are turned off.

2. Press **WAVEFORM OFF** again to remove the channel 1 waveform.

Example 3: Automated Measurements

In this example you learn how to use the automated measurement system to get numeric readouts of important waveform characteristics.

Displaying Automated Measurements

To use the automated measurement system, you must have a stable display of your signal. Also, the waveform must have all the segments necessary for the measurement you want. For example, a rise time measurement requires at least one rising edge, and a frequency measurement needs at least one complete cycle.

1. If you are not continuing from the previous example, follow the instructions on page 1-7 under the heading "Setting Up for the Examples."
2. Press **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) **→ OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).
3. Press **AUTOSET**.
4. Press **MEASURE** to display the Measure main menu (see Figure 1-17).

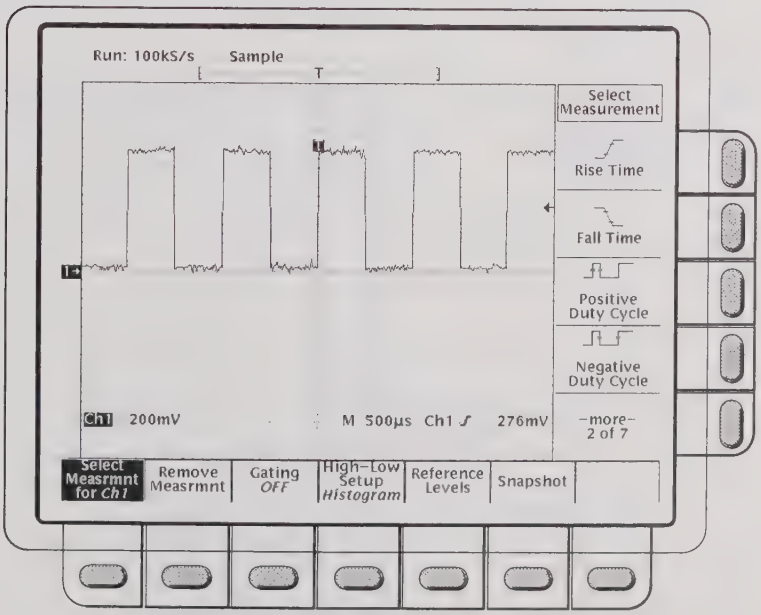


Figure 1-17: Measure Main Menu and Select Measurement Side Menu

5. If it is not already selected, press **Select Measrmnt** (main). The readout for that menu item indicates which channel the measurement will be taken from. All automated measurements are made on the selected channel.

   The Select Measurement side menu lists some of the measurements that can be taken on waveforms. There are many different measurements available; up to four can be taken and displayed at any one time. Pressing the button next to the **–more–** menu item brings up the other measurement selections.

6. Press **Frequency** (side). If the **Frequency** menu item is not visible, press **–more–** (side) repeatedly until the **Frequency** item appears. Then press **Frequency** (side).

   Observe that the frequency measurement appears within the right side of the graticule area. The measurement readout includes the notation **Ch1**, meaning that that measurement is taken on the channel 1 waveform. (To take a measurement on another channel, select that channel, and then select the measurement.)

7. Press **Positive Width** (side) → **–more–** (side) → **Rise Time** (side) → **Positive Duty Cycle** (side).

   All four measurements are displayed. Right now, they cover a part of the graticule area, including the displayed waveforms.

8. To move the measurement readouts outside the graticule area, press **CLEAR MENU** (see Figure 1-18).

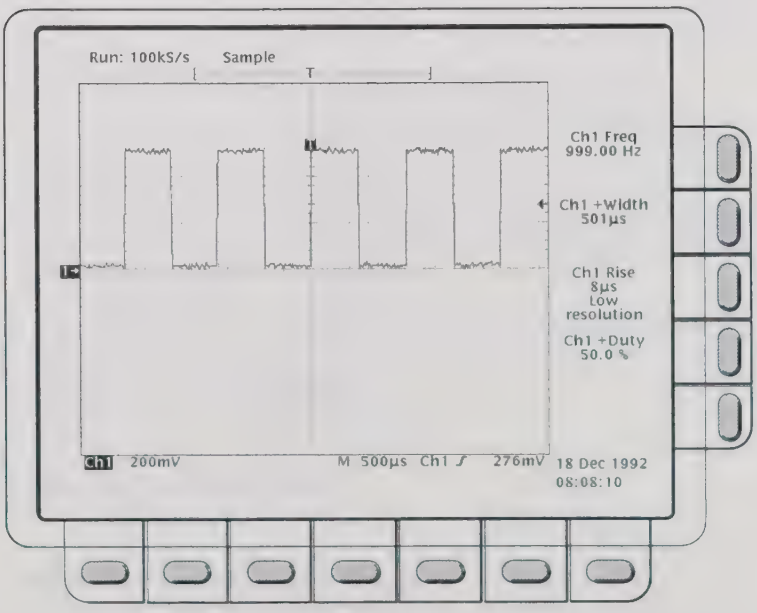


Figure 1-18: Four Simultaneous Measurement Readouts

Removing Measurement Readouts

The Measure menu lets you remove measurements you no longer want displayed. You can remove any one measurement, or you can remove them all with a single menu item.

Press **MEASURE → Remove Measrmnt** (main) → **Measurement 1**, **Measurement 2**, and **Measurement 4** (side) to remove those measurements. Leave the rise time measurement displayed.

Changing the Measurement Reference Levels

By default, the measurement system will use the 10% and 90% levels of the waveform for taking the rise time measurement. You can change these values to other percentages or change them to absolute voltage levels.

To examine the current values, press **Reference Levels** (main) → **High Ref** (side).

The General Purpose Knob

The general purpose knob, the large knob, is now set to adjust the high reference level (Figure 1-19).

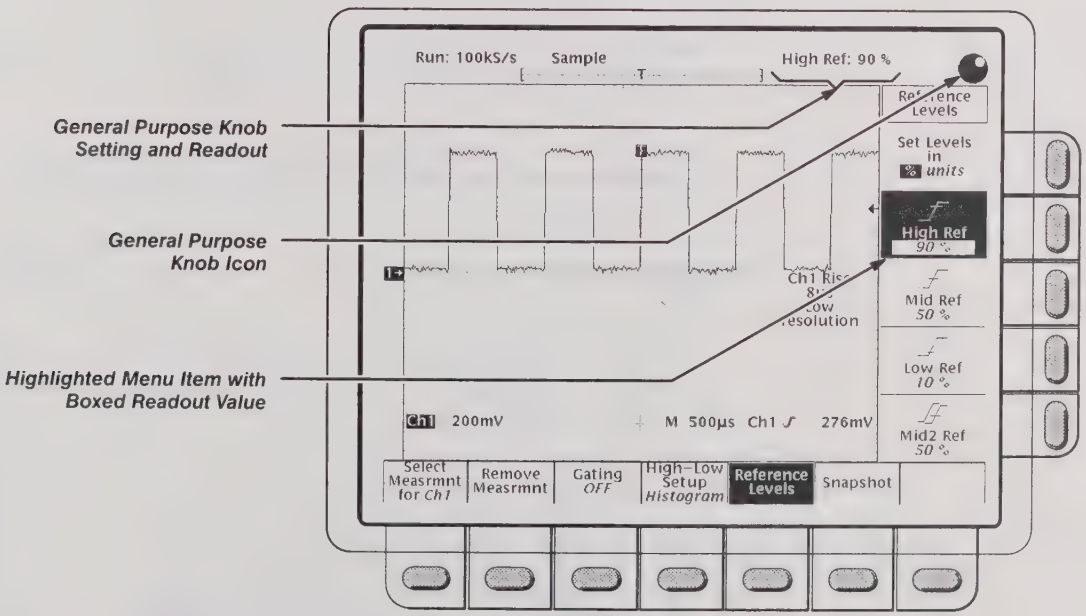


Figure 1-19: General Purpose Knob Indicators

There are several important things to observe on the screen:

- The knob icon appears at the top of the screen. That indicates that the general purpose knob has just been set to adjust a parameter.

- The upper right corner of the screen shows the readout **High Ref: 90%**.
- The **High Ref** side menu item is highlighted, and a box appears around the 90% readout in the **High Ref** menu item. The box indicates that the general purpose knob is currently set to adjust that parameter.

Turn the general purpose knob left and right, and then use it to adjust the high level to 80%. That sets the high measurement reference to 80%.

Hint: To make large changes quickly with the general purpose knob, press the **SHIFT** button before turning the knob. When the light above the **SHIFT** button is lit and the display says ***Coarse Knobs*** in the upper-right corner, the general purpose knob speeds up significantly.

You have seen how to display up to four individual automated measurements on screen. You can also pop up a display of almost all of the automated measurements available in the **Select Measrmnts** side menus. This snapshot of measurements is taken on the waveform currently selected using the channel selection buttons.

As when displaying individual measurements, you must have a stable display of your signal, and that signal must have all the segments necessary for the measurement you want.

1. Press **Snapshot** (main) to pop up a snapshot of all available single waveform measurements. (See Figure 1-20).

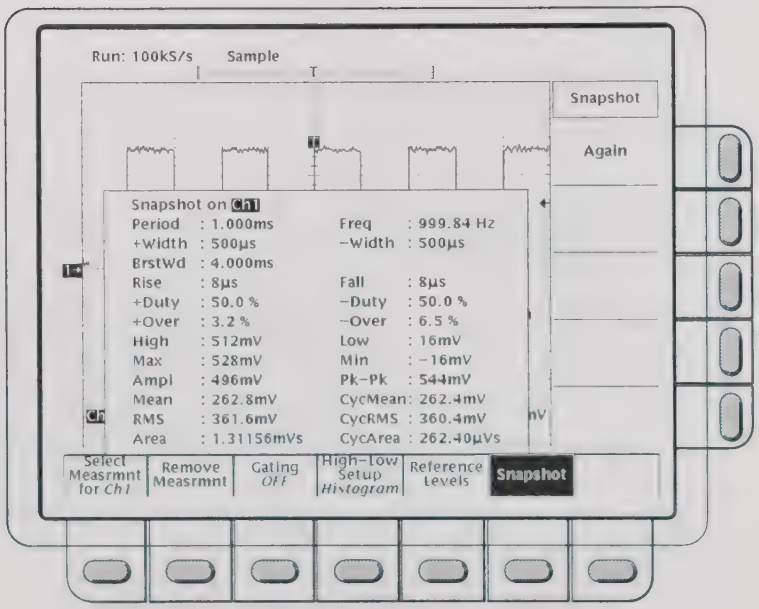


Figure 1-20: Snapshot of Channel 1

The snapshot display includes the notation **Ch 1**, meaning that the measurements displayed are taken on the channel 1 waveform. You take a snapshot of a waveform in another channel by first selecting that channel using the channel selection buttons.

The snapshot measurements do not continuously update. Snapshot executes a one-time capture of all measurements and does not update those measurements unless it is performed again.

2. Press **Again** (side) to do another snapshot and update the snapshot measurements.
3. Press **Remove Measrmnt** (main) to remove the snapshot display. (You can also press **CLEAR MENU**, but a new snapshot will be executed the next time you display the Measure menu.)

Example 4: Saving Setups

This example shows you how to save all the settings of the digitizing oscilloscope and how to recall the setup later to quickly re-establish the previously saved state. The oscilloscope provides several storage locations where you can save the setups.

Besides being able to save several complete setups, the digitizing oscilloscope remembers all the parameter settings when you power it off. That feature lets you power on and continue where you left off without having to reconstruct the state of the digitizing oscilloscope.

Saving a Setup

First, you need to create an instrument setup you want to save. The next several steps establish a two-waveform display with a measurement on one waveform. The setup created is complex enough that you might prefer not to go through all these steps each time you want that display.

1. If you are not continuing from the previous example, follow the instructions on page 1-7 under the heading "Setting Up for the Examples."
2. Press **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) → **OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).
3. Press → **AUTOSET**.
4. Press **MEASURE → Select Measrmnt** (main) → **Frequency** (side). (Press the **–more–** side menu item if the **Frequency** selection does not appear in the side menu.)
5. Press **CH 2 → CLEAR MENU**.
6. Press **SETUP → Save Current Setup** (main) to display the Setup main menu (see Figure 1-21).

Note that the setup locations shown in the side menu are labeled either ***user*** or ***factory***. If you save your current setup in a location labeled ***user***, you will overwrite the user setup previously stored there. If you work in a laboratory environment where several people share the digitizing oscilloscope, check with the other users before you overwrite their setup. Setup locations labeled ***factory*** have the factory setup stored as a default and can be used to store current setups without disturbing previously stored setups.

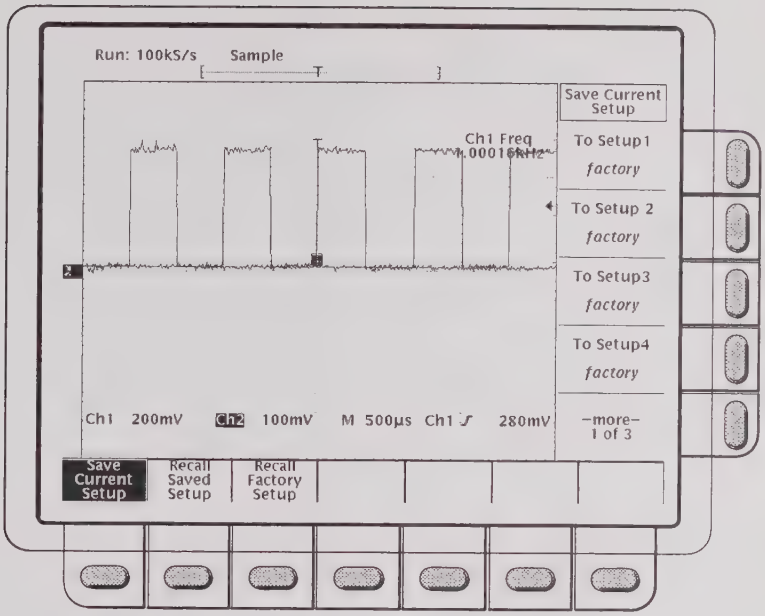


Figure 1-21: Save/Recall Setup Menu

7. Press one of the **To Setup** side menu buttons to store the current instrument settings into that setup location. Remember which setup location you selected for use later.

   There are more setup locations than can be listed at one time in the side menu. The **–more–** side menu item gives you access to all the setup locations.

   Once you have saved a particular setup, you can change the settings as you wish, knowing that you can come back to that setup at any time.

8. Press **MEASURE → Positive Width** (side) to add that measurement to the display.

Recalling a Setup

To recall the setup, Press **SETUP → Recall Saved Setup** (main) **→ Recall Setup** (side) for the setup location you used in the last exercise. The positive width measurement is now removed from the display because you selected it after you saved the setup.

This completes *Getting Started*. You can restore the default settings by pressing **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) **→ OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).

Overview

This section describes the basic concepts of operating the digitizing oscilloscope. Understanding the basic concepts of your digitizing oscilloscope will help you use it much more effectively.

The first part, *At a Glance*, quickly shows you how the oscilloscope is organized and gives some very general operating instructions. It also contains an overview of all the main menus. This part includes:

- Front Panel Map
- Rear Panel Map
- Display Map
- Basic Menu Operation
- Menu Map

The second part explains the following concepts:

- The **triggering** system, which establishes conditions for acquiring signals. Properly set, triggers can convert displays from unstable jumbles or blank screens into meaningful waveforms. See *Triggering* on page 2-11.
- The **acquisition** system, which converts analog data into digital form. See *Acquisition* on page 2-17.
- The **waveform scaling and positioning** system, which changes the dimensions of the waveform display. Scaling waveforms involves increasing or decreasing their displayed size. Positioning means moving them up, down, right, or left on the display. See *Scaling and Positioning Waveforms* on page 2-22.
- The **measurement** system, which provides numeric information on the displayed waveforms. You can use graticule, cursor and automated measurements. See *Measurements* on page 2-26.

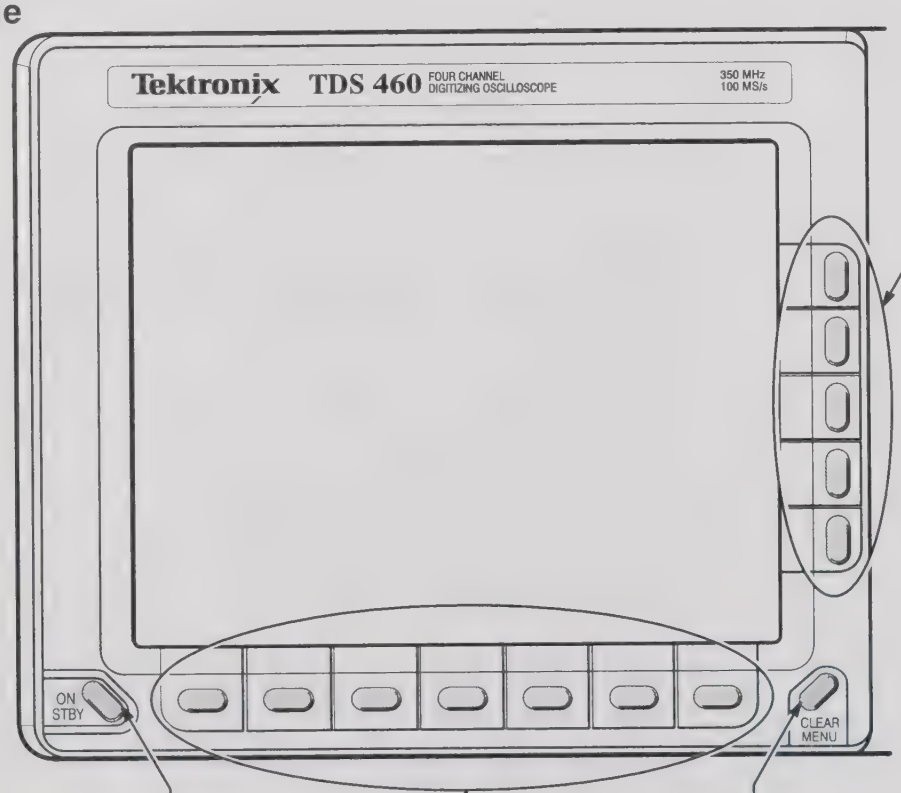
At the end of each topic, *For More Information* will point you to sources where more information can be found.

To explore these topics in more depth and to read about topics not covered in this section, see *Reference.* Page 3-1 lists the topics covered.

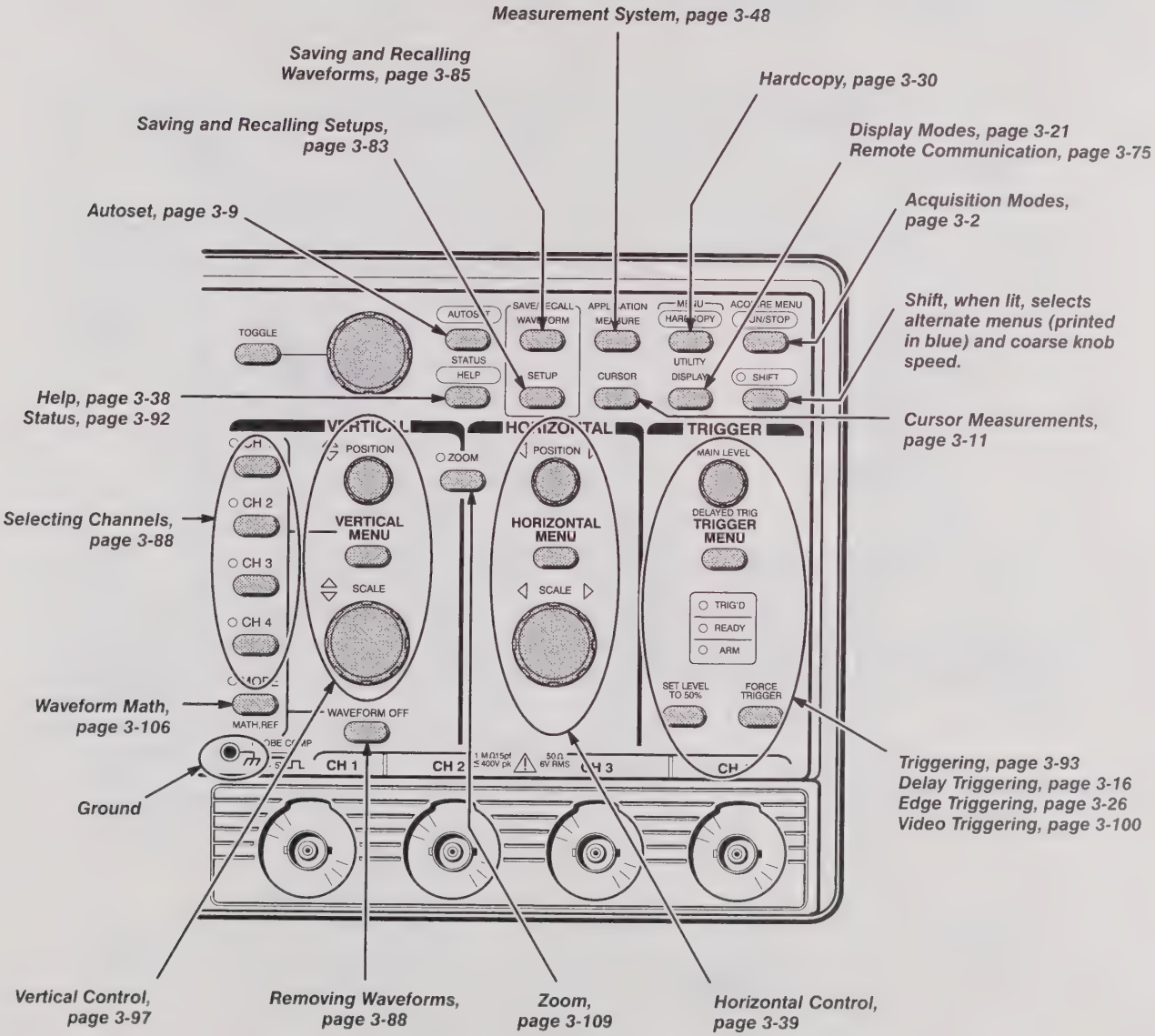
At a Glance

The *At a Glance* section contains illustrations of the display, the front and rear panels, and the menu system. These will help you understand and operate the digitizing oscilloscope. This section also contains a visual guide to using the menu system.

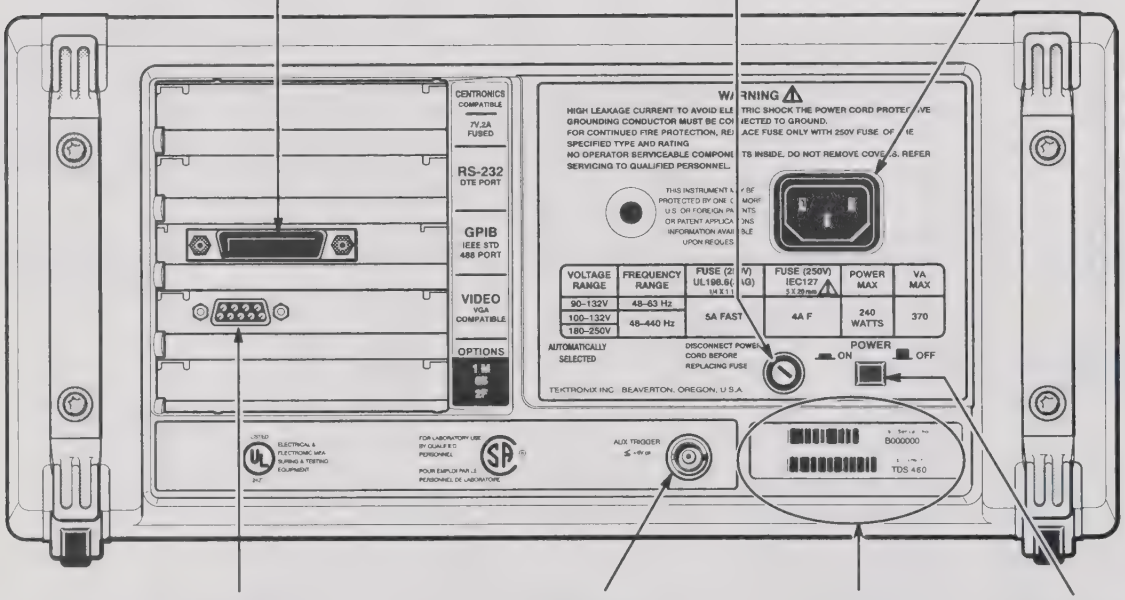
Front Panel Map—Left Side



Front Panel Map — Right Side



Rear Panel Map



GPIB Connector, page 3-75

Fuse, page 1-4

Power Connector, page 1-4

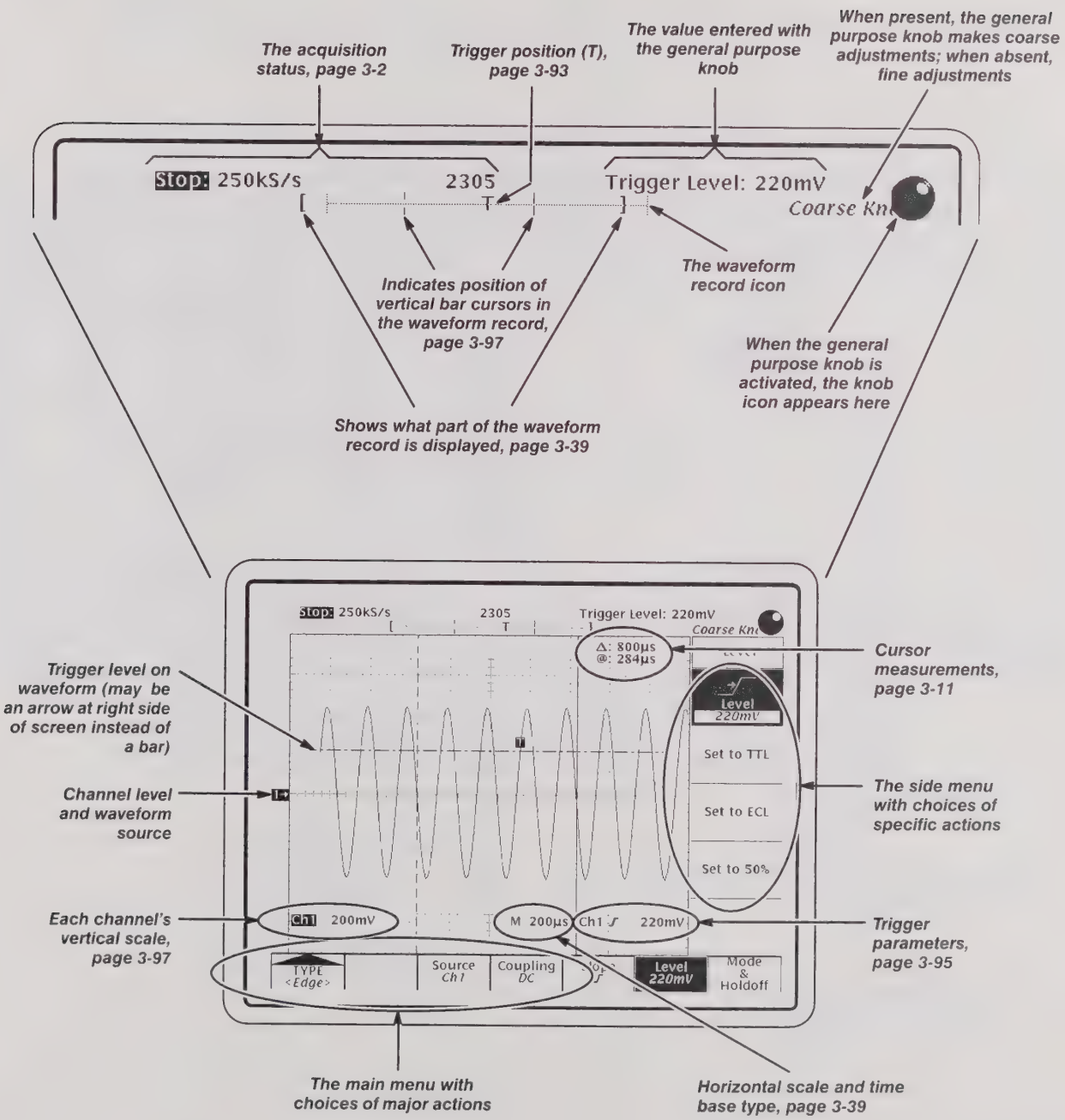
VIDEO VGA Compatible Connector, page A-43

AUX TRIGGER (Provides auxiliary trigger)

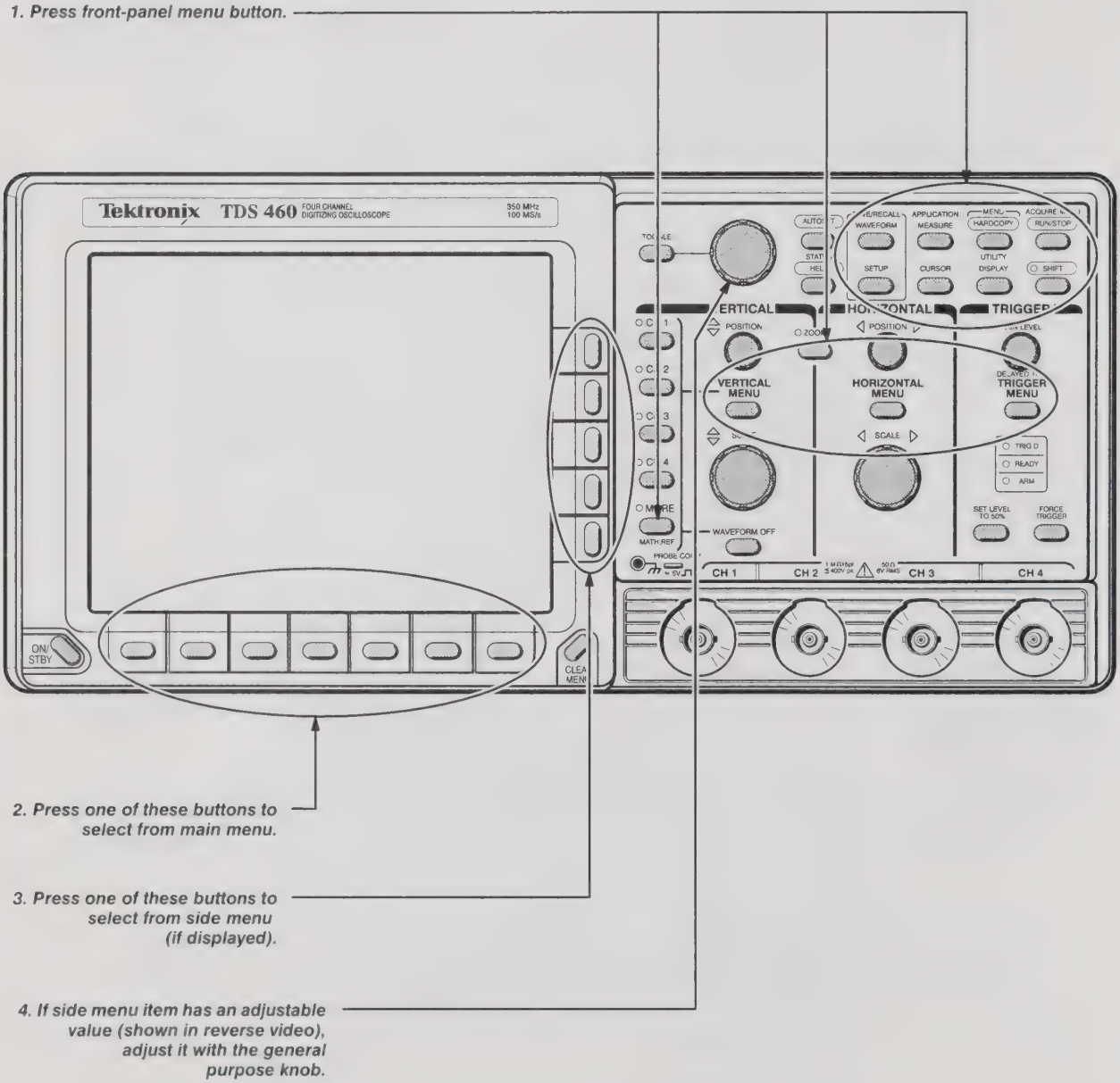
Serial Number

Principal Power Switch, page 1-4

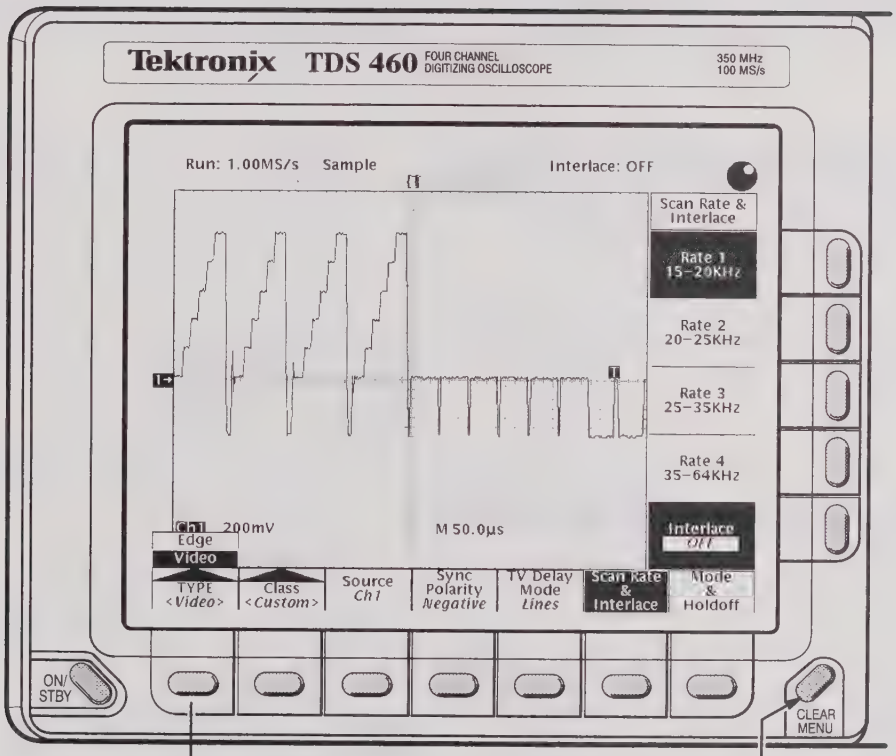
Display Map


The acquisition status, page 3-2
Trigger position (T), page 3-93
The value entered with the general purpose knob
When present, the general purpose knob makes coarse adjustments; when absent, fine adjustments
Stop: 250kS/s
2305
Trigger Level: 220mV
Coarse Kn
Indicates position of vertical bar cursors in the waveform record, page 3-97
The waveform record icon
When the general purpose knob is activated, the knob icon appears here
Shows what part of the waveform record is displayed, page 3-39
Trigger level on waveform (may be an arrow at right side of screen instead of a bar)
Channel level and waveform source
Each channel's vertical scale, page 3-97
Cursor measurements, page 3-11
The side menu with choices of specific actions
Trigger parameters, page 3-95
Stop: 250kS/s
2305
Trigger Level: 220mV
Δ: 800µs
@: 284µs
Level
220mV
Set to TTL
Set to ECL
Set to 50%
Ch1 200mV
M 200µs
Ch1 ƒ 220mV
TYPE
<Edge>
Source
Ch1
Coupling
DC
Level
220mV
Mode
&
Holdoff
The main menu with choices of major actions
Horizontal scale and time base type, page 3-39

To Operate a Menu



To Operate a Pop-Up Menu



Press to display pop-ups.

Press it again to make selection.

A pop-up selection changes the other main menu titles.

Press here to remove menus from screen.

Menu Map

	Press these buttons:	To bring up these menus:
Acquire Menu *(see page 3-2)*	SHIFT + ACQUIRE MENU (RUN/STOP)	**Mode** *Sample* | Repetitive Signal *ON* | Stop After *R/S button* | | Limit Test Setup | Limit Test Sources | Create Limit Test Template
Application Menu *(see the Programmer manual for more details)*	SHIFT + APPLICATION MEASURE	| | | | | |
Cursor Menu *(see page 3-11)*	CURSOR	**Function** *OFF* | Mode *Indep* | Time Units *seconds* | | | |
Delayed Trigger Menu *(see page 3-16)*	SHIFT + DELAYED TRIG TRIGGER MENU	| **Delay by** *Time* | Source *Ch1* | Coupling *DC* | Slope *∫* | Level *−30mV* |
Display Menu *(see page 3-21)*	UTILITY DISPLAY	**Style** *Vectors* | Intensity | Readout Options | Filter *Sin(x)/x* | Graticule *Full* | Format *YT* |
Hardcopy Menu *(see page 3-30)*	SHIFT + MENU HARDCOPY	**Format** *Interleaf* | Layout *Portrait* | Port *GPIB* | Clear Spool | | |
Horizontal Menu *(see page 3-39)*	HORIZONTAL MENU	**Time Base** *Main* | Trigger Position *50%* | Record Length *500* | Horiz Scale *(/div)* | Horiz Pos | |

Press these buttons: **To bring up these menus:**

Main Trigger Menu – Edge
(see page 3-26)

DELAYED TRIG
TRIGGER MENU

Type <Edge>		Source Ch1	Coupling DC	Slope ƒ	Level −30mV	Mode & Holdoff

Trigger Menu – Video
(see page 3-100)

DELAYED TRIG
TRIGGER MENU

TYPE <Video>	Class <Custom>	Source Ch1	Sync Polarity Negative	TV Delay Mode Lines	Scan Rate & Interlace	Mode & Holdoff

Measure Menu
(see page 3-48)

APPLICATION
MEASURE

Select Measrmnt for Ch1	Remove Measrmnt	Gating OFF	High-Low Setup Histogram	Reference Levels	Snapshot	

More Menu
(see page 3-106)

MORE

Math1 Ch1+Ch2	Math2 Ch1−Ch2	Math3 inv(Ch1)				

Save/Recall Setup Menu
(see page 3-83)

SETUP

Save Current Setup	Recall Saved Setup	Recall Factory Setup				

Save/Recall Waveform Menu
(see page 3-85)

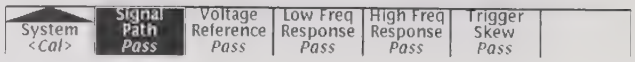
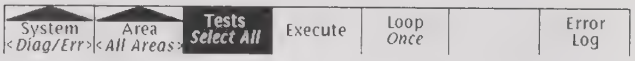
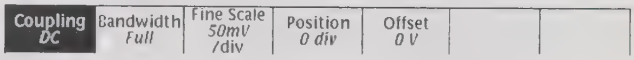
SAVE/RECALL WAVEFORM

Save Waveform Math1	Recall Waveform	Delete Refs				

Status Menu
(see page 3-92)

SHIFT + STATUS HELP

Status Snapshot
System
Trigger
Waveforms
I/O

	Press these buttons:	To bring up these menus:
Utility Menu – Calibration *(see page)*	SHIFT + UTILITY DISPLAY	
Utility Menu – Config *(see pages)*	SHIFT + UTILITY DISPLAY	
Utility Menu – Diagnostics *(see the Service manual)*	SHIFT + UTILITY DISPLAY	
Utility Menu – I/O *(see page 3-75)*	SHIFT + UTILITY DISPLAY	
Vertical Channel Menu *(see page 3-97)*	VERTICAL MENU	
Zoom Menu *(see page 3-109)*	ZOOM	

Triggering

This section describes the edge trigger of the main trigger system and explores, in a general sense, the topic of triggering. This oscilloscope also has a delayed trigger system. It is described in Section 3.

Triggers determine when the digitizing oscilloscope starts acquiring and displaying a waveform. They help create meaningful waveforms from unstable jumbles or blank screens (see Figure 2-1).

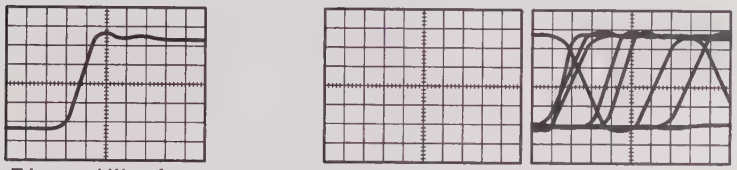


Figure 2-1: Triggered Versus Untriggered Displays

The trigger event establishes the time-zero point in the waveform record, and all points in the record are located in time with respect to that point. The digitizing oscilloscope continuously acquires and retains enough sample points to fill the pretrigger portion of the waveform record (that part of the waveform that is displayed *before,* or to the left of, the triggering event on screen).

When a trigger event occurs, the digitizing oscilloscope starts acquiring samples to build the posttrigger portion the waveform record (displayed *after,* or to the right of, the trigger event). Once a trigger is recognized, the digitizing oscilloscope will not accept another trigger until the acquisition is complete.

The basic trigger is the edge trigger. An edge trigger event occurs when the trigger *source* (the signal that the trigger circuit monitors) passes through a specified voltage *level* in a specified direction (the trigger *slope*).

Trigger Sources

You can derive your trigger from various sources.

- **Input channels**—the most commonly used trigger source is any one of the four input channels. The channel you select as a trigger source will function whether it is displayed or not.

- **AC Line Voltage**—this trigger source is useful when you are looking at signals related to the power line frequency. Examples include devices such as lighting equipment and power supplies. Because the digitizing oscilloscope generates the trigger, you do not have to input a signal to create it.
- **Auxiliary Trigger**—this trigger source is useful in digital design and repair. For example, you might want to trigger with an external clock or with a signal from another part of the circuit. To use the auxiliary trigger, connect the external triggering signal to the Auxiliary Trigger input connector on the oscilloscope rear panel.

Types

The digitizing oscilloscope provides three types of triggers for the main trigger system: edge, pulse, and logic. These triggers are described in individual articles found in the section *In Detail.* A brief definition of each type follows:

- **Edge**—the "basic" trigger. You can use it with both analog and digital test circuits. An edge trigger event occurs when the trigger *source* (the signal the trigger circuit is monitoring) passes through a specified voltage *level* in the specified direction (the trigger *slope*).

Video Trigger (Optional)

A video trigger helps simplify the triggering and viewing of video (TV) signals. The video trigger option lets you trigger on positive or negative sync pulses. It lets you select interlaced field one, interlaced field two, both fields, or noninterlaced. You also can define the signal to be NTSC, PAL, SECAM, or a custom class.

Sync Pulses—since sync pulses occur at the end of each line and picture in a video signal, they are the logical event to trigger on. The oscilloscope can trigger on a positive or negative sync pulse. Although the standard polarity for video signals is negative, the positive polarity option is useful when probing circuitry that inverts a video signal.

Interlacing and Fields—a video picture or *frame* is drawn using two separate video signals called *fields*. The two fields alternate drawing the horizontal lines in a frame: *field one* is the field that draws all the odd numbered lines, and *field two* draws all the even number lines. *Interlacing* is the act of drawing a frame by alternating between field one and field two (see Figure 2-2).

Some video formats, especially those used in computer monitors, use noninterlaced formats.

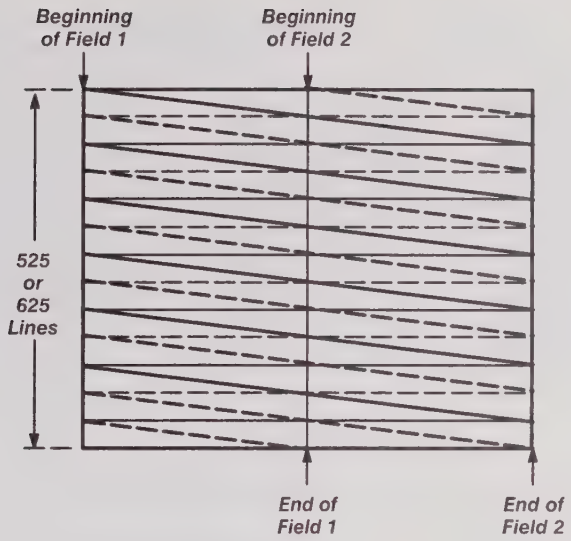


Figure 2-2: Interlaced Frame

The oscilloscope lets you choose between triggering on interlaced field one, interlaced field two, or triggering alternately on field one and field two (both fields).

Video Standards—Since video signals are used to transmit television signals, they are highly standardized. There are three dominant standards in the world today: *NTSC*, *PAL*, and *SECAM*.

- The NTSC standard was developed in the United States and is used in the U.S., Canada, and Japan. It has a line rate of 525 lines per frame and a field rate of 60 Hz.
- The PAL standard is used in Europe and many other parts of the world. It generally has a line rate of 625 lines per frame and a field rate of 50 Hz.
- The SECAM standard is used in France and USSR. It generally has a line rate of 625 lines per frame and a field rate of 50 Hz.

The oscilloscope lets you select from three predefined setups (NTSC, PAL, or SECAM), or you can customize the setup. The custom option lets you analyze the wide variety of video signals that don't adhere to NTSC, PAL, or SECAM standards. That option has several frequency ranges to choose from.

Trigger Modes

The trigger mode determines how the oscilloscope behaves in the absence of a trigger event. The digitizing oscilloscope provides two different trigger modes, *normal* and *automatic*.

- **Normal**—this trigger mode lets the oscilloscope acquire a waveform only when it is triggered. If no trigger occurs, the oscilloscope will not acquire a waveform. (You can push **FORCE TRIGGER** to force the oscilloscope to make a single acquisition.)
- **Automatic**—this trigger mode (auto mode) lets the oscilloscope acquire a waveform even if a trigger does not occur. Auto mode uses a timer that starts after a trigger event occurs. If another trigger event is not detected before the timer times out, the oscilloscope forces a trigger anyway. The length of time it waits for a trigger event depends on the time base setting.

Be aware that auto mode, when forcing triggers in the absence of valid triggering events, does not sync the waveform on the display. In other words, successive acquisitions will not be triggered at the same point on the waveform; therefore, the waveform will appear to roll across the screen. Of course, if valid triggers occur the display will become stable on screen.

Since auto mode will force a trigger in the absence of one, it is useful in observing signals where you are only concerned with monitoring amplitude level. Although the unsynced waveform may "roll" across the display, it will not disappear as it would in normal trigger mode. Monitoring of a power supply output is an example of such an application.

Normal and auto trigger modes also affect roll mode operation. If roll mode is activated while in **Normal** trigger mode, the roll mode is triggered. If roll mode is activated while in **Auto** trigger mode, the roll mode is untriggered. (See *Roll* on page 3-79 for more information.)

Holdoff

When a trigger event is recognized, the oscilloscope disables the trigger system until acquisition is complete. In addition, the trigger system remains disabled during the holdoff period that follows each acquisition. You can set holdoff time to help ensure a stable display.

For example, the trigger signal can be a complex waveform with many possible trigger points on it. Though the waveform is repetitive, a simple trigger might get you a series of patterns on the screen instead of the same pattern each time.

Digital pulse trains are good examples (see Figure 2-3). Each pulse looks like any other, so many possible trigger points exist. Not all of these will result in the same display. The holdoff period allows the digitizing oscilloscope to trigger on the correct edge, resulting in a stable display.

Holdoff is settable from 0% (minimum holdoff available) to 100% (maximum available). To see how to set holdoff, see *Mode & Holdoff* on page 3-29. The minimum and maximum holdoff varies with the horizontal scale. See *Holdoff, Variable, Main Trigger* on page A-22 of Appendix B for the typical minimum and maximum values.

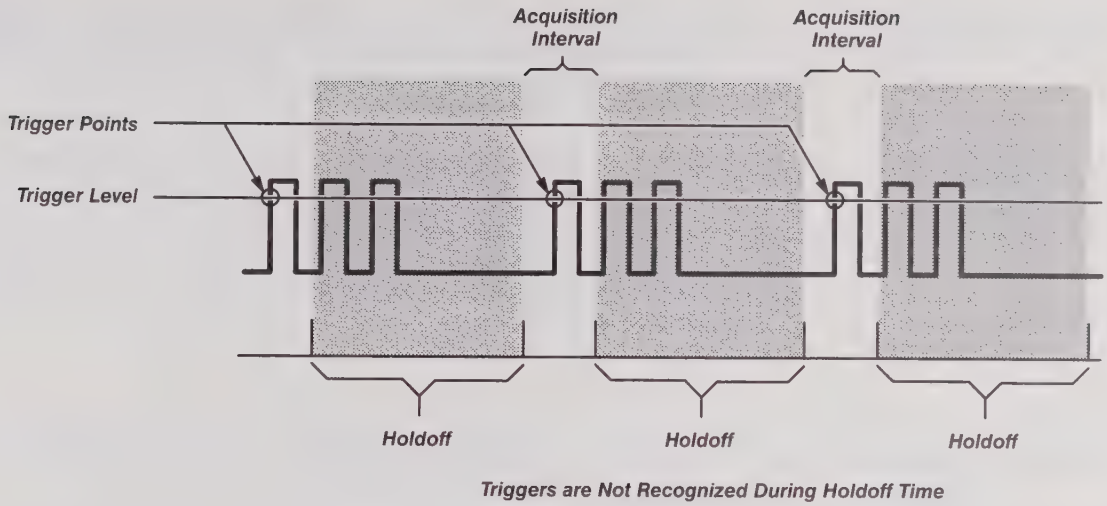


Figure 2-3: Trigger Holdoff Time Ensures Valid Triggering

Coupling

Trigger coupling determines what part of the signal is passed to the trigger circuit. Available coupling types include AC, DC, Low Frequency Rejection, High Frequency Rejection, and Noise Rejection:

DC

- *DC coupling* passes all of the input signal. In other words, it passes both AC and DC components to the trigger circuit.

AC ∿

- *AC coupling* passes only the alternating components of an input signal. (AC components above 10 Hz are passed if the source channel is in 1 MΩ coupling; above 200 kHz are passed in 50 Ω coupling.) It removes the DC components from the trigger signal.

- *High frequency rejection* removes the high frequency portion of the triggering signal. That allows only the low frequency components to pass on to the triggering system to start an acquisition. High frequency rejection attenuates signals above 30 kHz.

- *Low frequency rejection* does the opposite of high frequency rejection. Low frequency rejection attenuates signals below 80 kHz.

- *Noise Rejection* lowers trigger sensitivity. It requires additional signal amplitude for stable triggering, reducing the chance of falsely triggering on noise.

Trigger Position

The adjustable *trigger position* defines where on the waveform record the trigger occurs. It lets you properly align and measure data within records. The part of the record that occurs *before* the trigger is the pretrigger portion. The part that occurs *after* the trigger is the posttrigger portion.

To help you visualize the trigger position setting, the top part of the display has an icon indicating where the trigger occurs in the waveform record.You select in the Horizontal menu what percentage of the waveform record will contain pretrigger information.

Many users find displaying pretrigger information a valuable troubleshooting technique. For example, if you are trying to find the cause of an unwanted glitch in your test circuit, it may prove valuable to trigger on the glitch and make the pretrigger period large enough to capture data before the glitch. By analyzing what happened before the glitch, you may uncover clues about the source of it.

Slope and Level

The slope control determines whether the oscilloscope finds the trigger point on the rising or the falling edge of a signal (see Figure 2-4).

You set trigger slope by selecting **Slope** in the Main Trigger menu and then selecting from the rising or falling slope icons in the side menu that appears.

The level control determines where on that edge the trigger point occurs (see Figure 2-4).

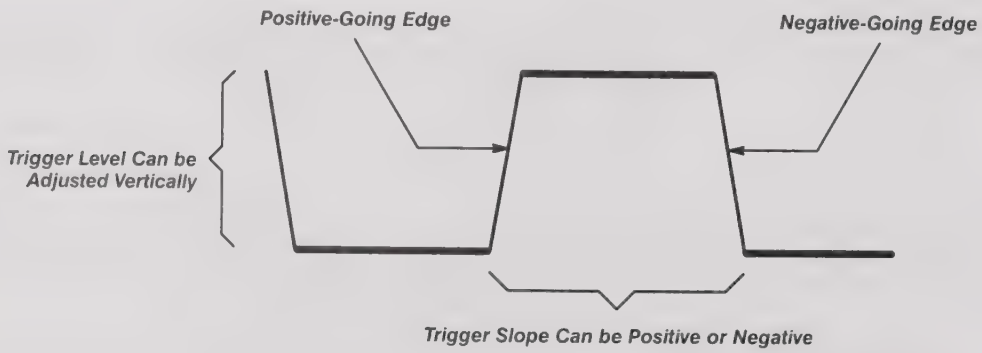

Positive-Going Edge
Negative-Going Edge
Trigger Level Can be Adjusted Vertically
Trigger Slope Can be Positive or Negative

Figure 2-4: Slope and Level Controls Help Define the Trigger

The digitizing oscilloscope lets you set the main trigger level with the trigger **MAIN LEVEL** knob.

For More Information

See *Delayed Triggering*, on page 3-16.

See *Edge Triggering*, on page 3-26.

See *Horizontal Controls*, on page 3-39.

See *Triggering*, on page 3-93.

Acquisition

Acquisition is the process of sampling the analog input signal, converting it into digital data, and assembling it into a waveform record. The oscilloscope creates a digital representation of the input signal by sampling the voltage level of the signal at regular time intervals (Figure 2-5).

Figure 2-5: Acquisition: Input Analog Signal, Sample, and Digitize

The sampled points are stored in memory along with corresponding timing information. You can use this digital representation of the signal for display, measurements, or further processing.

You specify how the digitizing oscilloscope acquires data points and assembles them into the waveform record.

Sampling and Digitizing

The trigger point marks time zero in a waveform record. All record points before the trigger event make up the pretrigger portion of the the waveform record. Every record point after the trigger event is part of the posttrigger portion. All timing measurements in the waveform record are made relative to that trigger event.

Each time it takes a sample, the oscilloscope digitizer produces a numeric representation of the signal. The number of samples may be larger than the number of points in your waveform record. In fact, the oscilloscope may take several samples for each record point (Figure 2-6).

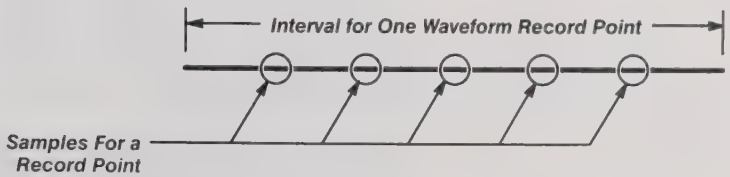


Figure 2-6: Several Points May be Acquired for Each Point Used

The digitizer can use the extra samples to perform additional processing, such as averaging or looking for minimum and maximum values.

The digitizing oscilloscope creates a waveform record containing a user-specified number of data points. Each record point represents a certain voltage level that occurs a determined amount of time from the trigger event.

Record Length

The number of points that make up the waveform record is defined by the record length. You can set the record length in the Horizontal menu. The digitizing oscilloscope provides record lengths of 500, 1,000, 2500, and 5000 points.

You can order option 1M that provides a maximum record length of 60,000 points. That option is available only at the time of original purchase; it cannot be installed later.

Sampling Methods

Sampling is the process of converting the analog input signal to digital data for display and processing. The two general methods of sampling are *real-time* and *equivalent-time*.

Real-Time Sampling—In real-time sampling, the oscilloscope digitizes all the points it acquires after one trigger event (see Figure 2-7). Use real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.

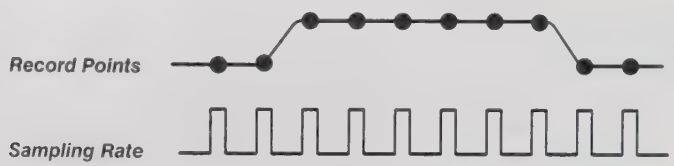


Figure 2-7: Real-Time Sampling

Depending on how many channels you are using and the speed of the time base, at some point the digitizing oscilloscope will not be able to get enough samples to create a waveform record. At that point, the digitizing oscilloscope will create the waveform record in one of two ways depending on whether you have limited the oscilloscope to real-time sampling or enabled equivalent-time sampling (you make that choice in the Acquisition menu).

During real-time sampling, the digitizing oscilloscope uses a process called interpolation to create the intervening points in the waveform record. There are two options for interpolation: linear or sin(x)/x.

Linear interpolation computes record points between actual acquired samples by using a straight line fit. It assumes all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that straight line. Linear interpolation is useful for many waveforms such as pulse trains.

Sin(x)/x interpolation computes record points using a curve fit between the actual values acquired. It assumes all the interpolated points fall along that curve. That is particularly useful when acquiring more rounded waveforms such as sine waves. Actually, it is appropriate for general use, although it may introduce some overshoot or undershoot in signals with fast rise times.

NOTE

When using either type of interpolation, you may wish to set the display style so that the real samples are displayed intensified relative to the interpolated samples. The instructions under Display Style *on page 3-21 explain how to turn on intensified samples.*

Equivalent-Time Sampling—The digitizing oscilloscope only uses equivalent-time sampling if you have enabled the equivalent-time option in the Acquisition menu and the oscilloscope is not able to get enough samples with which to create a waveform recordand the time base is faster than 500 ns.

In equivalent-time (ET) sampling the oscilloscope acquires samples over many repetitions of the event (Figure 2-8). It should only be used on repetitive signals.

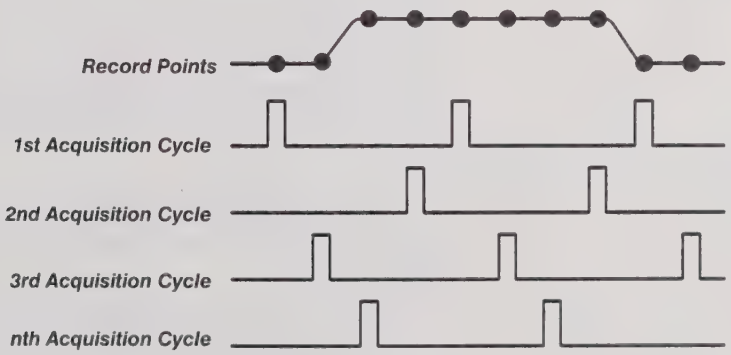


Figure 2-8: Equivalent-Time Sampling

The oscilloscope takes a few samples with each trigger event and eventually constructs a waveform record using the samples from multiple acquisitions. That feature lets you accurately acquire signals with frequencies much higher than the digitizing oscilloscope real-time bandwidth.

The digitizing oscilloscope uses a type of equivalent-time sampling called *random equivalent-time sampling*. Although the samples are taken sequentially in time, they are random with respect to the trigger. That is because the oscilloscope sample clock runs asynchronously with respect to the input signal and the signal trigger. The oscilloscope takes samples independent of the trigger position and displays them based on the time difference between the sample and the trigger.

Acquisition Modes

The digitizing oscilloscope supports five acquisition modes.

- *Sample*
- *Peak Detect*
- *Hi Res*
- *Envelope*
- *Average*

Sample acquisition mode, which acquires in real time, is the mode most commonly used. You can read about Sample and the other acquisition modes in *Acquisition Modes,* beginning on page 3-2.

Envelope and Average acquisition modes disable Roll mode. You can read about Roll mode beginning on page 3-79.

Bandwidth

Bandwidth refers to the range of frequencies that an oscilloscope can acquire and display accurately (that is, with less than 3 dB attenuation).

You can set different bandwidths with the digitizing oscilloscope. Lower bandwidth settings let you eliminate the higher frequency components of a signal. The TDS 400 offers **Full**, **100 MHz,** and **20 MHz** bandwidth settings.

Coupling

You can couple your input signal to the digitizing oscilloscope three ways. You can choose between AC, DC, or Ground (GND). You also can set the input impedance.

DC
- DC coupling shows both the AC and DC components of an input signal.

AC ∿
- AC coupling shows only the alternating components of an input signal.

GND⏚
- Ground (GND) coupling disconnects the input signal from the acquisition.

Ω
- Input impedance lets you select either 1 MΩ or 50 Ω impedance.

NOTE

If you select 50 Ω impedance with AC coupling, the digitizing oscilloscope will not accurately display frequencies under 200 kHz.

For More Information

See *Scaling and Positioning Waveforms*, on page 2-22.

See *Acquisition Modes*, on page 3-2.

Scaling and Positioning Waveforms

Scaling and positioning waveforms means increasing or decreasing their displayed size and moving them up, down, right, and left on the display.

Two display icons, the channel reference indicator and the record view, help you quickly see the position of the waveform in the display (see Figure 2-9). The channel reference icon points to the ground of the waveform record when offset is set to 0 V. This is the point about which the waveform contracts or expands when the vertical scale is changed. The record view, at the top of the display, indicates where the trigger occurs and what part of the waveform record is displayed.

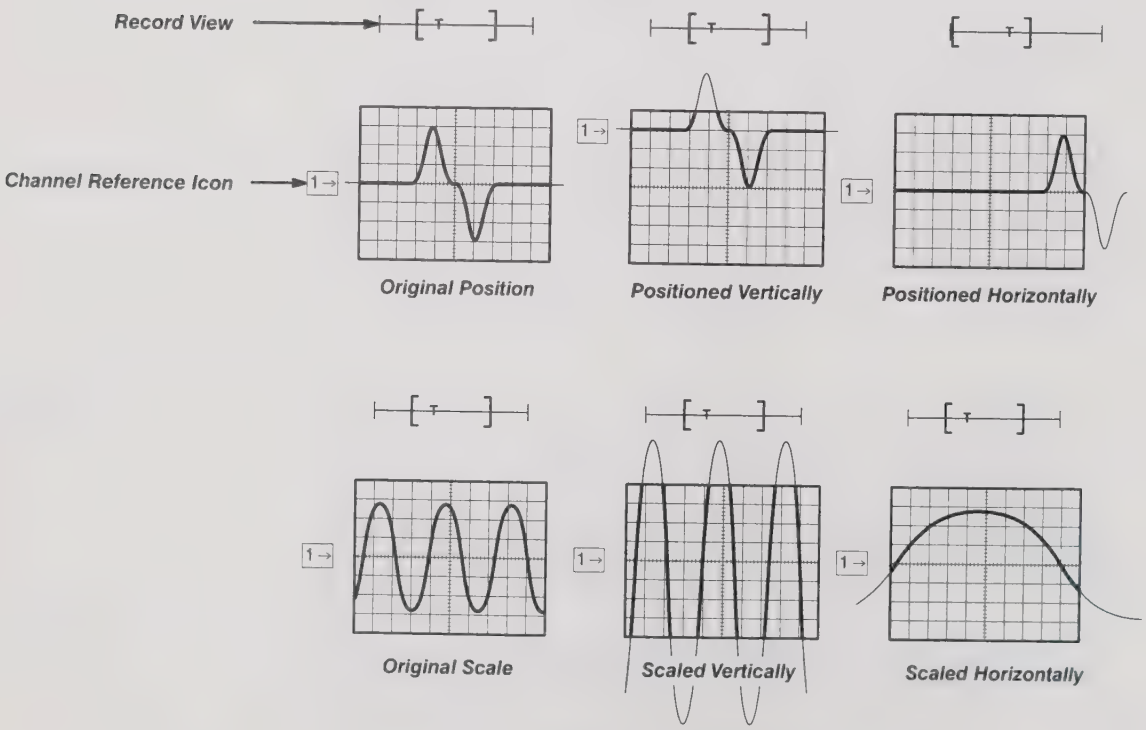


Figure 2-9: Scaling and Positioning

Vertical System

You can adjust the vertical position of the selected waveform by moving it up or down on the display. For example, when trying to compare multiple waveforms, you can put one above another and compare them, or you can overlay the two waveforms on top of each other. To move the selected waveform turn the vertical **POSITION** knob.

You can also alter the vertical scale. The digitizing oscilloscope shows the scale (in volts per division) for each active channel toward the bottom left of the display. As you turn the vertical **SCALE** knob clockwise, the value decreases resulting in higher resolution because you see a smaller part of the waveform. As you turn it counter-clockwise the scale increases allowing you to see more of the waveform but with lower resolution.

Besides using the position and scale knobs, you can set the vertical scale and position with exact numbers. You do that with the Vertical menu **Fine Scale** and **Position** selections and the general purpose knob .

Offset

Vertical offset changes where the channel reference indicator is shown with respect to the graticule. Offset adds a voltage to the reference indicator without changing the scale. That feature allows you to move the waveform up and down over a large area without decreasing the resolution.

Offset is useful in cases where a waveform has a DC bias. One example is looking at a small ripple on a power supply output. You may be trying to look at a 100 mV ripple on top of a 15 V supply. The range available with offset can prove valuable as you try to move and scale the ripple to meet your needs.

Horizontal System

Adjusting the horizontal position of waveforms moves them right or left on the display. That is useful when the record length of the waveform is so large (greater than 500 points) that the digitizing oscilloscope cannot display the entire waveform record at one time. You can also adjust the scale of the waveform. For example, you might want to see just one cycle of a waveform to measure the overshoot on its rising edge.

You adjust the horizontal scale of the displayed waveform records using the horizontal **SCALE** knob and the horizontal position using the horizontal **POSITION** knob.

The digitizing oscilloscope shows the actual scale in the bottom right of the display. The scale readout shows the time per division used. Since all live waveforms use the same time base, the digitizing oscilloscope only displays one value for all the active channels.

Aliasing

When *aliasing* happens, you see a waveform with a frequency lower than the actual waveform being input or a waveform is not stable even though the light next to **TRIG'D** is lit. Aliasing occurs because the oscilloscope cannot sample the signal fast enough to construct an accurate waveform record (Figure 2-10).

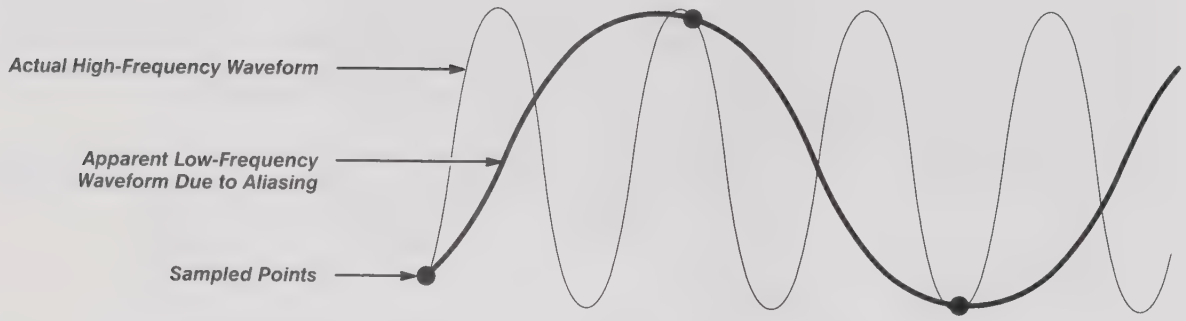


Figure 2-10: Aliasing

One simple way to check for aliasing is to slowly change the horizontal scale (time per division setting). If the shape of the displayed waveform changes drastically, you may have aliasing.

In order to represent a signal accurately and avoid aliasing, you must sample the signal more than twice as fast as the highest frequency component. For example, a signal with frequency components of 500 MHz would need to be sampled at a rate faster than 1 Gigasamples/second.

There are various ways to prevent aliasing. Try adjusting the horizontal scale, or simply press the **AUTOSET** button. You can also counteract some aliasing by changing the acquisition mode in the Acquisition menu. For example, if you are using the sample mode and suspect aliasing, you may want to change to the peak detect mode. Since the peak detect mode searches for samples with the highest and lowest values, it can detect faster signal components over time.

Delayed Time Base

You can set a main time base and a delayed time base. Each time base has its own trigger. There are two types of delayed time base acquisitions, with each based on its triggering relationship to the main time base. These are delayed runs after main and delay triggerable (after time, events, or both) acquisitions.

The delayed time base is useful in catching events that follow other events. See *Triggering* on page 2-11 for more information on the delayed trigger.

Zoom

You can use zoom to see more detail without changing the acquired signal. When you press the **ZOOM** button, a portion of the waveform record can be expanded or compressed on the display, but the record points stay the same.

Zoom is very useful when you wish to temporarily expand a waveform to inspect small feature(s) on that waveform. For example, you might use zoom to temporarily expand the front corner of a pulse to inspect its aberrations. Use zoom to expand it horizontally and vertically. After you are finished, you can return to your original horizontal scale setting by pressing one menu button. (The zoom feature is also handy if you have acquired a waveform while using the fastest time per division and want to further expand horizontally.)

Autoset

Autoset lets you quickly obtain a stable waveform display. It automatically adjusts a wide variety of settings including vertical and horizontal scaling. Other settings affected include trigger coupling, type, position, slope, mode, and display intensities. *Autoset* on page 3-9 describes in detail what autoset does.

For More Information

See *Autoset*, on page 3-9.

See *Delayed Triggering*, on page 3-16.

See *Horizontal Control*, on page 3-39.

See *Vertical Control*, on page 3-97.

See *Zoom*, on page 3-109.

The digitizing oscilloscope not only displays graphs of voltage versus time, it also can help you measure the displayed information (see Figure 2-11).

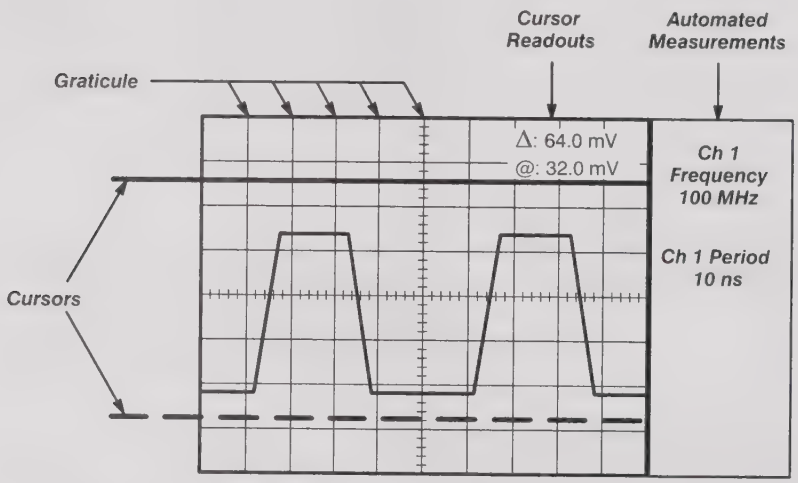


Figure 2-11: Graticule, Cursor and Automated Measurements

Measurement Sources

The oscilloscope provides three measurement classes. They are: graticules, cursors, and automated measurements.

Graticule Measurements

Graticule measurements provide you with quick, visual estimates. For example, you might look at a waveform amplitude and say "it is a little more than 100 mV."

You can perform simple measurements by counting the number of major and minor graticule divisions involved and multiplying by the scale factor.

For example, if you counted five major vertical graticule divisions between a minimum and maximum values of a waveform and knew you had a scale factor of 100 mV/division, then you could easily calculate your peak-to-peak voltage:

5 divisions $\times$ 100 mV/division = 500 mV.

Cursor Measurements

Cursors are fast and easy-to-understand measurements. You take measurements by moving the cursors and reading their numeric values from the on screen readouts, which update as you adjust their positions.

Cursors appear in pairs. One part of the pair is *active* and the other *inactive*. You move the active cursor (the solid line) using the general purpose knob. The **TOGGLE** button lets you select (toggle) which cursor bar is active or inactive. The inactive cursor is a dashed line on the display.

To get the cursor menu, press the **CURSOR** button. There are three kinds of cursors available in that menu:

- *Horizontal bar cursors* measure vertical parameters (typically volts).
- *Vertical bar cursors* measure horizontal parameters (typically time or frequency).
- *Paired cursors* measure both vertical parameters (typically volts) and horizontal parameters (typically time or frequency).

There are also two modes for cursor operation available in the cursor menu—*independent* and *tracking*. (See Figure 2-12.)

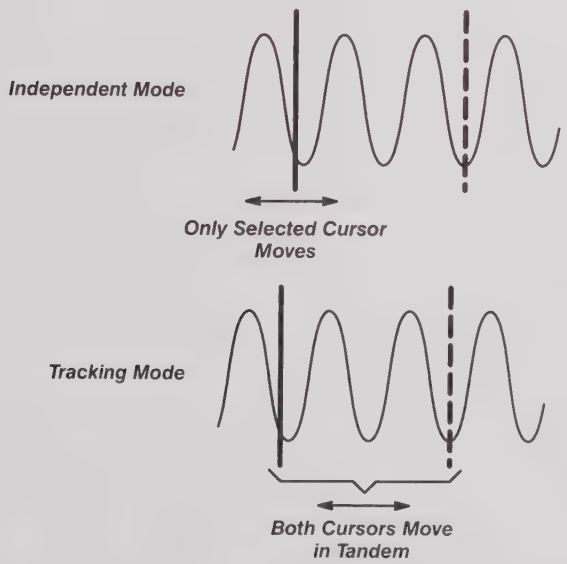


Figure 2-12: Cursor Modes

- *Independent mode* cursors operate as was earlier described; that is, you move *one* cursor at a time (the active cursor) using the general purpose knob, and you use the **TOGGLE** button to toggle which cursor bar is active.

- *Tracking mode* cursors operate in tandem: you move *both* cursors at the same time using the general purpose knob. To adjust the solid cursor relative to the dashed cursor, you push the **TOGGLE** button to suspend cursor tracking and use the general purpose knob make the adjustment. A second push toggles the cursors back to tracking.

You can read more detailed information about how to use cursors in *Cursor Measurements* beginning on page 3-11.

Automated Measurements

You make automated measurements merely by pressing a few buttons. The digitizing oscilloscope does all the calculating for you. Because these measurements use the waveform record points, they are more accurate than cursor or graticule measurements.

Press the **MEASURE** button for the automated measurement menus. These menus let you make *amplitude* (typically in volts; sometimes in %), *time* (typically in seconds or hertz), and *area* (in volt-seconds) measurements. You can select and display up to four measurements at a time. (See Table 3-4 on page 3-48 for a list of all the automatic measurements and their definitions.)

You can make automated measurements on the entire waveform record or just on a specific part. The gating selection in the Measurement menu lets you use the vertical cursors to limit the measurement to a section of the waveform record.

The snapshot selection in the Measurement menu lets you display almost all of the measurements at once. You can read about snapshot under *Snapshot of Measurements* on page 3-57.

Automated measurements use readouts to show measurement status. These readouts are updated as the oscilloscope acquires new data or if you change settings.

For More Information

See *Appendix C: Algorithms*, on page A-25, for details on how the digitizing oscilloscope calculates each automatic measurement.

See *Cursor Measurements*, on page 3-11, for more information on cursor measurements.

See *Measurement System*, on page 3-48, for more information on automatic measurements.

See the *TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual* (if your oscilloscope is equipped with that option) for using cursors to measure Fast Fourier Transformed, integrated, or differentiated math waveforms.

See *Example 3: Automated Measurements*, on page 1-19.

See *Waveform Math*, on page 3-106, for using cursors to measure math waveforms.

Overview

This section describes the details of operating the digitizing oscilloscope. It contains an alphabetical list of tasks you can perform with the digitizing oscilloscope. Use this section to answer specific questions about instrument operation. The following tasks are included.

- Acquisition Modes
- Autoset
- Cursor Measurements
- Delayed Triggering
- Display Modes
- Edge Triggering
- Hardcopy
- Help
- Horizontal Control
- Limit Testing
- Measurement System
- Probe Selection
- Remote Communication
- Roll Mode
- Saving and Recalling Setups
- Saving and Recalling Waveforms
- Selecting Channels
- Signal Path Compensation
- Status
- Triggering
- Vertical Control
- Video Triggering
- Waveform Math
- Zoom

Many of these tasks list steps you perform to accomplish the task. You should read *Conventions* on page x of *Preface* before reading about these tasks.

Acquisition Modes

The acquisition system has several options for converting analog data into digital form. The Acquisition menu lets you determine the acquisition mode and how to start and stop acquisitions.

Description of Modes

The digitizing oscilloscope supports acquisition modes.

- *Sample*
- *Peak Detect*
- *Hi Res*
- *Envelope*
- *Average*

The Sample, Peak Detect, and Hi Res modes operate in real-time on a single trigger event, provided the digitizing oscilloscope can acquire enough samples for each trigger event. Envelope and Average modes operate on multiple acquisitions. The digitizing oscilloscope averages or envelopes several waveforms on a point-by-point basis.

Figure 3-1 illustrates the different modes and lists the benefits of each. It will help you select the appropriate mode for your application.

Sample Mode

In Sample mode, the oscilloscope creates a record point by saving the first sample (of perhaps many) during each acquisition interval. (An acquisition interval is the time covered by the waveform record divided by the record length.) This is the default mode.

Peak Detect Mode

Peak Detect mode saves the highest and lowest sample in two adjacent intervals. That mode only works with real-time, non-interpolated sampling.

If you set the time base so fast (faster than 500 ns) that it requires real-time interpolation or equivalent-time sampling, the mode automatically changes from Peak Detect to Sample, although the menu selection will not change.

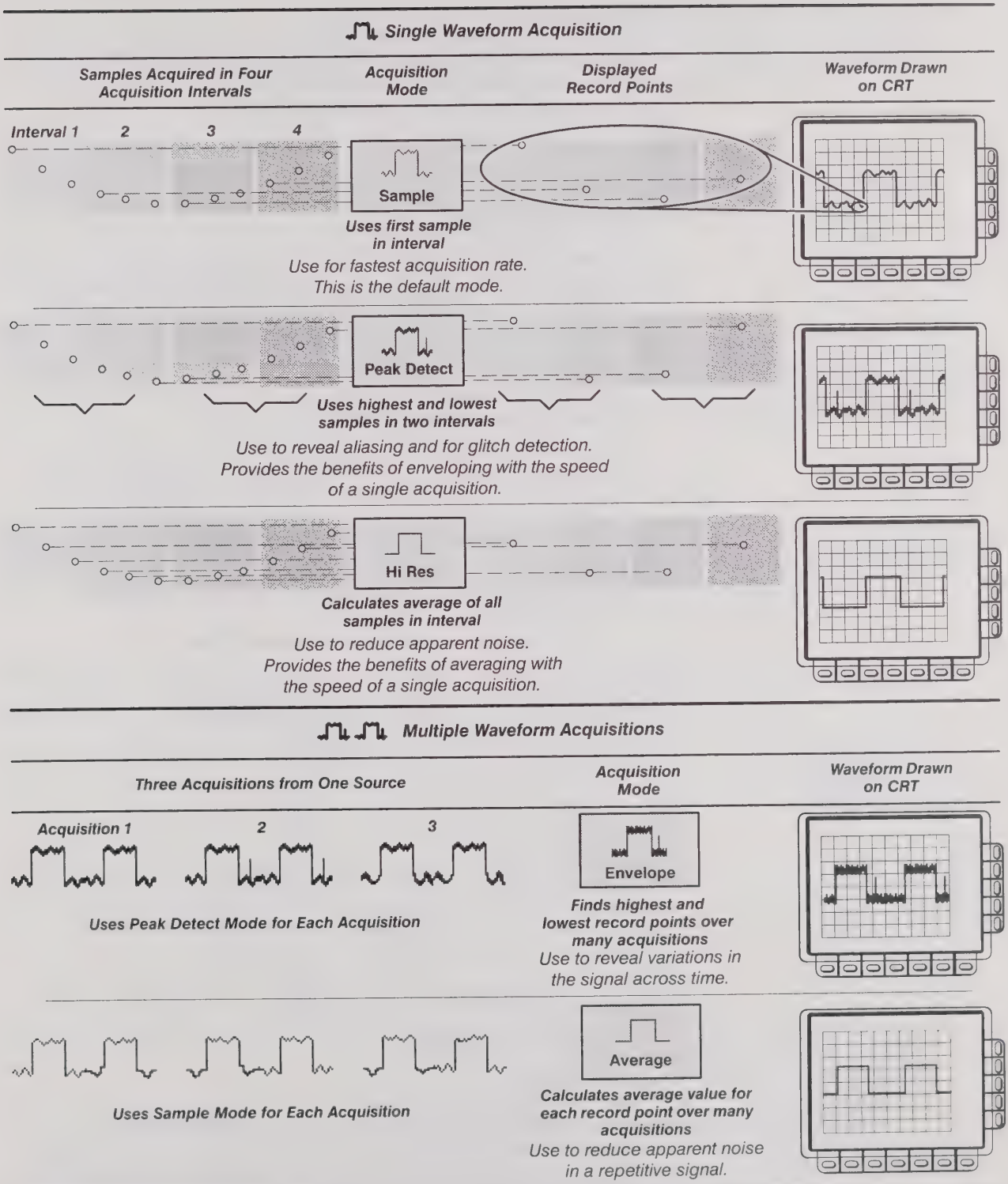

Single Waveform Acquisition
Samples Acquired in Four Acquisition Intervals
Acquisition Mode
Displayed Record Points
Waveform Drawn on CRT
Interval 1
2
3
4
Sample
Uses first sample in interval
Use for fastest acquisition rate.
This is the default mode.
Peak Detect
Uses highest and lowest samples in two intervals
Use to reveal aliasing and for glitch detection.
Provides the benefits of enveloping with the speed of a single acquisition.
Hi Res
Calculates average of all samples in interval
Use to reduce apparent noise.
Provides the benefits of averaging with the speed of a single acquisition.
Multiple Waveform Acquisitions
Three Acquisitions from One Source
Acquisition Mode
Waveform Drawn on CRT
Acquisition 1
2
3
Uses Peak Detect Mode for Each Acquisition
Envelope
Finds highest and lowest record points over many acquisitions
Use to reveal variations in the signal across time.
Uses Sample Mode for Each Acquisition
Average
Calculates average value for each record point over many acquisitions
Use to reduce apparent noise in a repetitive signal.

Figure 3-1: How the Acquisition Modes Work

Hi Res Mode

In Hi Res mode, the digitizing oscilloscope averages all samples taken during an acquisition interval to create a record point. That average results in a higher-resolution, lower-bandwidth waveform.

This mode only works with real-time, non-interpolated sampling. If you set the time base so fast that it requires real-time interpolation or equivalent-time sampling, the mode automatically becomes Sample, although the menu selection will not change.

A key advantage of Hi Res is its potential for increasing resolution regardless of the input signal. Table 3-1 and the equations shown below illustrate how you can obtain up to 15 significant bits with Hi res mode. Note that the resolution improvements are limited to speeds slower than /div. Also, resolutions above 15 bits are not allowed by internal hardware and computation limitations.

Si = *Sampling Interval for TDS 400* = 10 *ns*

$$\Delta t = \textit{Sample Interval} = \frac{\textit{Time/Div}}{\textit{Number Of Points/Div}} = \frac{10\ \mu s/\textit{Div}}{50\ \textit{Points/Div}} = 200\ ns$$

$$Nd = \textit{Number of points per decimation interval} = \frac{\Delta t}{Si} = 20$$

$$\textit{Resolution Enhancement (bits)} = 0.5 \times LOG_2(Nd) \approx 2\ \textit{extra bits}$$

Table 3-1: Additional Resolution Bits

Time Base Speed	Bits of Resolution
1 µs and faster	8 bits
2 µs to 5 µs	9 bits
10 µs to 20 µs	10 bits
50 µs to 100 µs	11 bits
200 µs to 500 µs	12 bits
1 ms to 2 ms	13 bits
5 ms	14 bits
10 ms and slower	15 bits

Envelope Mode

Envelope mode lets you acquire and display a waveform record that shows the extremes in variation over several acquisitions. You specify the number of acquisitions over which to accumulate the data. The oscilloscope saves the highest and lowest values in two adjacent intervalsnvelope mode gathers peaks over many trigger events.

After each trigger event, the oscilloscope acquires data and then compares the min/max values from the current acquisition with those stored from previous acquisitions. The final display shows the most extreme values for all the acquisitions for each point in the waveform record.

NOTE

Envelope and Average acquisition modes disable Roll mode. You can read about Roll mode beginning on page 3-79.

Average Mode

Average mode lets you acquire and display a waveform record that is the averaged result of several acquisitions. This mode reduces random noise. The oscilloscope acquires data after each trigger event using Sample mode. It then averages the record point from the current acquisition with those stored from previous acquisitions.

Acquisition Readout

The acquisition readout at the top of the display (Figure 3-2) shows the state of the acquisition system (running or stopped). The "running" state shows the sample rate and acquisition mode. The "stopped" state shows the number of acquisitions acquired since the last stop or major change.

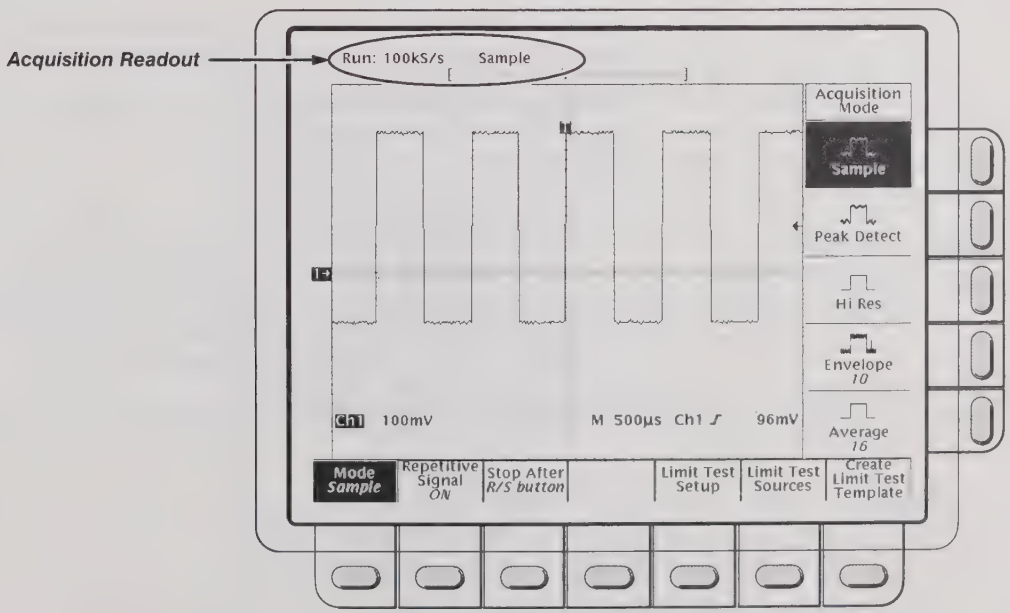


Figure 3-2: Acquisition Menu and Readout

Operation

To bring up the acquisition menu (Figure 3-2) press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU**.

Acquisition Mode

To choose how the digitizing oscilloscope will create points in the waveform record:

Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Mode** (main) **→ Sample**, **Peak Detect**, **Hi Res**, **Envelope**, or **Average** (side).

When you select **Envelope** or **Average**, you can enter the number of waveform records to be enveloped or averaged using the general purpose knob.

NOTE

If you selected the longest record length available in the Horizontal menu, then you cannot select Hi Res as your acquisition mode. This is because Hi Res mode uses twice the acquisition memory that the other acquisition modes use. If Hi Res and the longest horizontal record length were allowed to be selected at the same time, the oscilloscope would run out of memory.

Repetitive Signal

To limit the digitizing oscilloscope to real-time sampling or let it choose between real-time or equivalent-time sampling:

Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Repetitive Signal** (main) **→ ON or OFF** (side).

- **ON** uses both the real time and the equivalent time features of the digitizing oscilloscope.
- **OFF (Real Time Only)** limits the digitizing oscilloscope to real time sampling. , the oscilloscope will use the interpolation method selected in the display menu to fill in the missing record points. That is, it will use either the linear or sin(x)/x interpolation algorithm.

See *Acquisition* on page 2-17 for details about sampling.

Roll Mode

Stop After

You can choose to acquire exactly one waveform sequence or to acquire waveforms continuously under manual control.

Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Stop After** (main) → **RUN/STOP button only**, **Single Acquisition Sequence**, or **Limit Test Condition Met** (side) (see Figure 3-3).

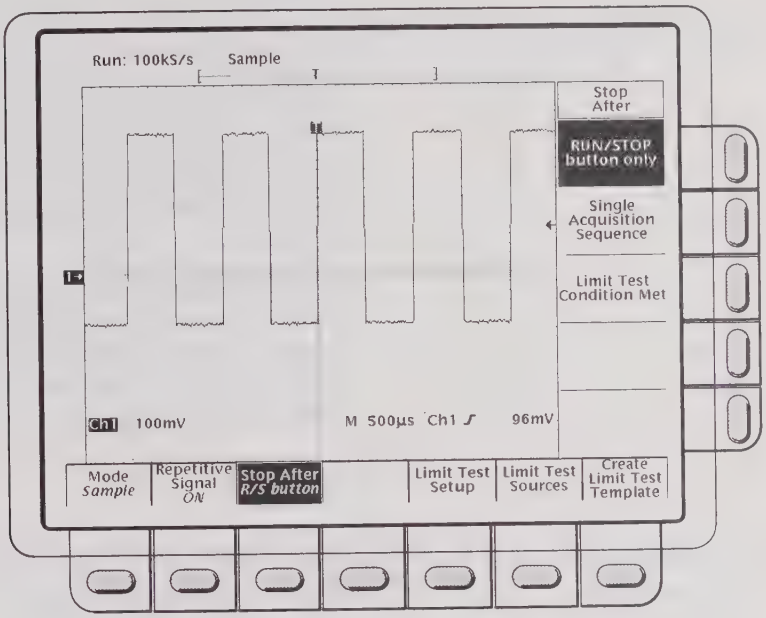


Figure 3-3: Acquire Menu—Stop After

- **RUN/STOP button only** (side) lets you start or stop acquisitions by toggling the **RUN/STOP** button. Pressing the **RUN/STOP** button once will stop the acquisitions. The upper left hand corner in the display will say **Stopped** and show the number of acquisitions. If you press the button again, the digitizing oscilloscope will resume taking acquisitions.

- Press **Single Acquisition Sequence** (side). That selection lets you run a single sequence of acquisitions by pressing the **RUN/STOP** button. In Sample, Peak Detect, or Hi Res mode, the instrument will acquire a waveform record with the first valid trigger event and stop.

  In Envelope or Average mode, the digitizing oscilloscope will make the specified number of acquisitions to complete the averaging or enveloping task.

  If the oscilloscope is in equivalent-time mode and you press **Single Acquisition Sequence** (side), it will continue to recognize trigger events and acquire samples until the waveform record is filled.

  Hint: To quickly select Single Acquisition Sequence without displaying the Acquire and Stop After menus, press **SHIFT FORCE TRIG**. Now the **RUN/STOP** button operates as just described. (You still must display the Acquire menu and then the Stop After menu to leave Single Acquisition Sequence operation.)

- **Limit Test Condition Met** (side) lets you acquire waveforms until waveform data exceeds the limits specified in the limit test. Then acquisition stops. At that point, you can also specify other actions for the oscilloscope to take, using the selections available in the **Limit Test Setup** main menu.

NOTE

In order for the digitizing oscilloscope *to stop acquisition when limit test conditions have been met, limit testing must be turned* **ON**, *using the* **Limit Test Setup** *main menu.*

Setting up limit testing requires several more steps. You can create the template waveform against which to compare incoming waveforms, using the **Create Limit Test Template** main menu item. You can then specify that the comparison is to be made, and the channel to compare against the template, using the **Limit Test Sources** main menu item.

For More Information

See *Acquisition*, on page 2-17.

See *Limit Testing*, on page 3-43.

Autoset

The autoset function lets you quickly obtain and display a stable waveform of usable size. Autoset automatically sets up the front panel controls based on the characteristics of the input signal. It is much faster and easier than a manual control-by-control setup.

Autoset makes adjustments in these areas:

- Acquisition
- Display
- Horizontal
- Trigger
- Vertical

NOTE

Autoset may change vertical position in order to position the waveform appropriately. It always sets vertical offset to 0 V.

Operation

1. Press the Channel Selection button (such as **CH 1**) corresponding to your input channel to make it active.
2. Press **AUTOSET**.

If you use autoset when one or more channels are displayed, the digitizing oscilloscope selects the lowest numbered channel for horizontal scaling and triggering. Vertically, all channels in use are individually scaled.

If you use autoset when no channels are displayed, the digitizing oscilloscope will turn on channel one (**CH 1**) and scale it.

Autoset Defaults

Table 3-2 on the following page lists the autoset defaults.

Table 3-2: Autoset Defaults

Control	Changed by Autoset to
Selected channel	Numerically lowest of the displayed channels
Acquire Mode	Sample
Acquire Repetitive Signal	On
Acquire Stop After	RUN/STOP button only
Display Style	Vectors
Display Intensity—Overall	If less than 50%, set to 75%
Display Format	YT
Horizontal Position	Centered within the graticule window
Horizontal Scale	As determined by the signal frequency
Horizontal Time Base	Main Only
Horizontal Record Length	Unchanged
Limit Test	Off
Trigger Position	Unchanged
Trigger Type	Edge
Trigger Source	Numerically lowest of the displayed channels (the selected channel)
Trigger Level	Midpoint of data for the trigger source
Trigger Slope	Positive
Trigger Coupling	DC
Trigger Holdoff	1
Vertical Scale	As determined by the signal level
Vertical Coupling	DC unless AC was previously set. AC remains unchanged.
Vertical Bandwidth	Full
Vertical Offset	0 volts
Zoom	Off

Cursor Measurements

Use the cursors to measure the difference (either in time or voltage) between two locations in a waveform record.

Description

Cursors are made up of two markers that you position with the general purpose knob. You move one cursor independently or both cursors in tandem, depending on the cursor mode. As you position the cursors, readouts on the display report measurement information.

There are three cursor types: *horizontal bar, vertical bar,* and *paired* (Figure 3-4).

Horizontal bar cursors measure vertical parameters (typically volts).

Vertical bar cursors measure horizontal parameters (typically time or frequency).

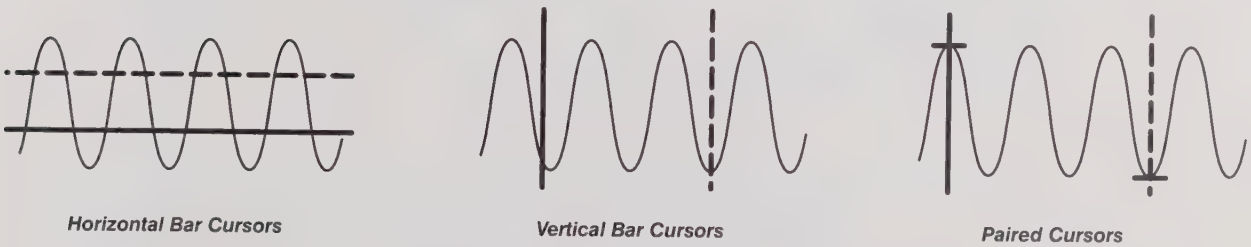


Figure 3-4: Cursor Types

Paired cursors measure both vertical parameters (typically volts) and horizontal parameters (typically time) simultaneously.

Look at Figure 3-4. Note that each of the two paired cursors has a long vertical bar paired with a short horizontal bar. The short horizontal bars measure vertical parameters (typically volts); the long vertical bars measure horizontal parameters (typically time or frequency). (See *Cursor Readouts* on page 3-12 for more information.)

NOTE

When cursors measure certain math waveforms, the measurement may not be of time, frequency, or voltage. Cursor measurement of those math waveforms that are not of time, frequency or voltage is described in Waveform Math, which begins on page 3-106. For those oscilloscopes equipped with Option 2F, the advanced DSP math option, the instruction manual shipped with the option describes the use of cursors to measure such waveforms and the measurement units that result.

There are two cursor modes: *independent* and *tracking*.

Figure 3-5: Cursor Modes

In independent mode you move only one cursor at a time using the general purpose knob. The active, or selected, cursor is a solid line. Press **TOGGLE** to change which cursor is selected.

In tracking mode you normally move both cursors in tandem using the general purpose knob. The two cursors remain a fixed distance (time or voltage) from each other. Press **TOGGLE** to temporarily suspend cursor tracking. You can then use the general purpose knob to adjust the distance of the solid cursor relative to the dashed cursor. A second push toggles the cursors back to tracking.

Cursor Readouts

The cursor readout shows the absolute location of the selected cursor and the difference between the selected and non-selected cursor. The readouts differ depending on whether you are using **H Bars** or **V Bars**.

- **H Bars:** the value after Δ shows the voltage difference between the cursors. The value after @ shows the voltage of the selected cursor relative to ground (see Figure 3-6).
- **V Bars:** the value after Δ shows the time (or frequency) difference between the cursors. The value after @ shows the time (frequency) of the selected cursor relative to the trigger point.

- **Paired:** the value after one Δ shows the voltage difference between the the two short horizontal bars; the other Δ shows the time (or frequency) difference between the two long vertical bars. The value after @ shows the voltage at the short horizontal bar of the selected cursor relative to ground (see Figure 3-7).

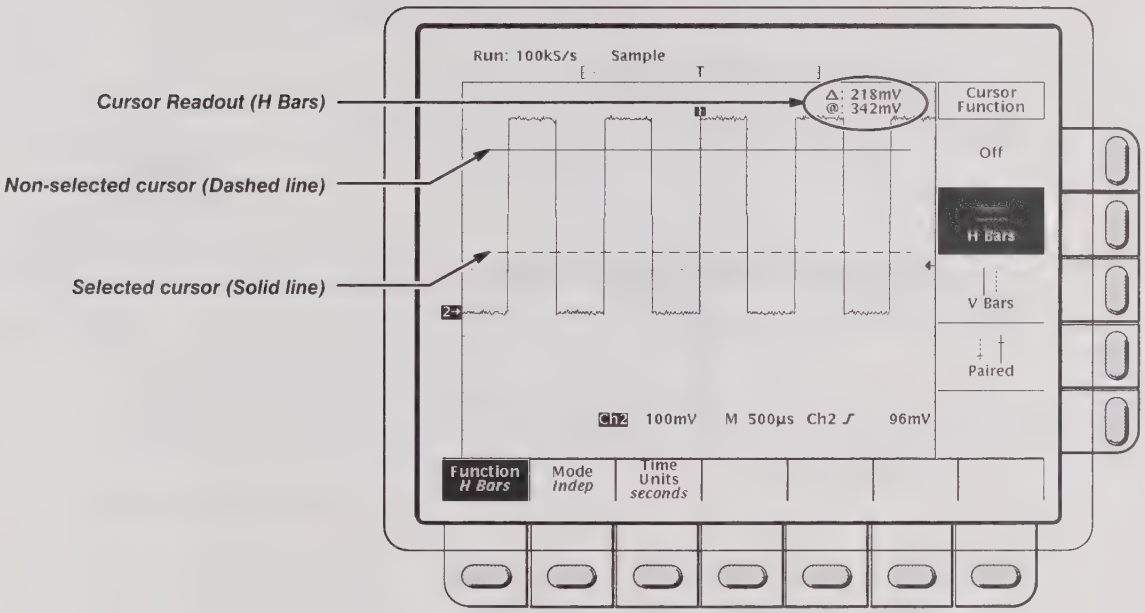


Figure 3-6: H Bars Cursor Menu and Readouts

Paired cursors can only show voltage differences when they remain on screen. If the paired cursors are moved off screen horizontally, **Edge** will replace the voltage values in the cursor readout.

Operation

To take cursor measurements, press **CURSOR** to display the Cursor menu (Figure 3-6).

Function

Select the type of cursors you want using the **Function** menu item:

Press **CURSOR** → **Function** (main) → **H Bars**, **V Bars**, **Paired**, or **Off** (side).

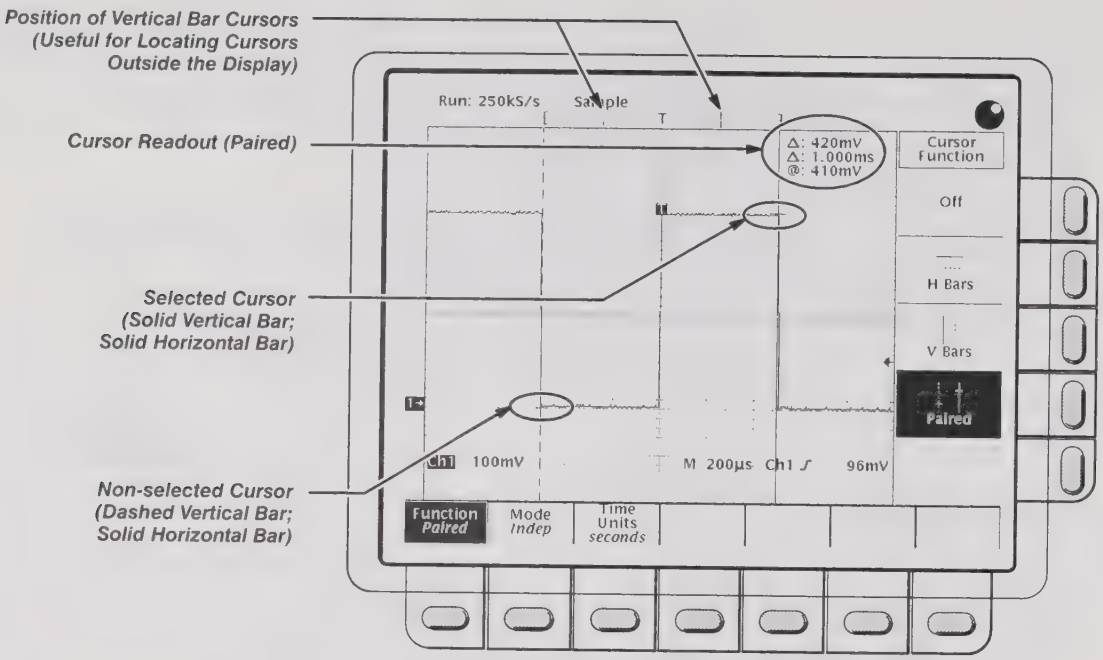


Figure 3-7: Paired Cursor Menu and Readouts

Mode

Select the cursor mode you want using the **Mode** menu item.

1. Press **CURSOR** → **Mode** (main) → **Independent** or **Tracking** (side):
   - **Independent** makes each cursor positionable without regard to the position of the other cursor.
   - **Tracking** makes both cursors positionable in tandem; that is, both cursors move in unison and maintain a fixed horizontal or vertical distance between each other.
2. Use the general purpose knob to move the selected (active) cursor if **Independent** was selected in step 1. Press **TOGGLE** to change which cursor is active and moves. A solid line indicates the active cursor and a dashed line the inactive cursor.

   or

   Use the general purpose knob to move both cursors in tandem if **Tracking** was selected in step 1. Press **TOGGLE** to temporarily suspend cursor tracking; then use the general purpose knob to adjust the distance of the solid cursor relative to the dashed cursor. Press **TOGGLE** again to resume tracking. A solid line indicates the adjustable cursor and a dashed line the fixed cursor.

Time Units

You can choose to display vertical bar cursor results in units of time or frequency.

Press **CURSOR → Time Units** (main) → **seconds** or **1/seconds (Hz)** (side).

Cursor Speed

You can change the cursors speed by pressing **SHIFT** before turning the general purpose knob. The cursor moves faster when the **SHIFT** button is lighted and the display reads ***Coarse Knobs*** in the upper right corner.

For More Information

See *Measurements*, on page 2-26.

See *Waveform Math*, on page 3-106, for information on cursor units with multiplied waveforms.

See the *TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual,* if your oscilloscope is equipped with the advanced DSP math option, for information on cursor units with integrated, differentiated, and FFT waveforms.

Delayed Triggering

The TDS 400 Series oscilloscopes provide a main time base and a delayed time base. The delayed time base, like the main time base, requires a trigger signal and an input source dedicated to that signal. You can only use delay with the edge trigger and certain classes of pulse triggers.

There are two different ways to delay the acquisition of waveforms: *delayed runs after main* and *delayed triggerable*. Only delayed triggerable uses the delayed trigger system.

Delayed runs after main looks for a main trigger, then waits a user-defined time, and then starts acquiring (see Figure 3-8).

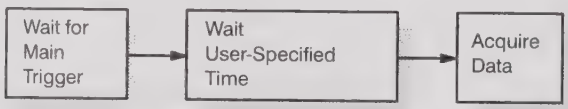


Figure 3-8: Delayed Runs After Main

Delayed triggerable looks for a main trigger and then, depending on the type of delayed trigger selected, makes one of the three types of delayed triggerable mode acquisitions listed below (see Figure 3-9).

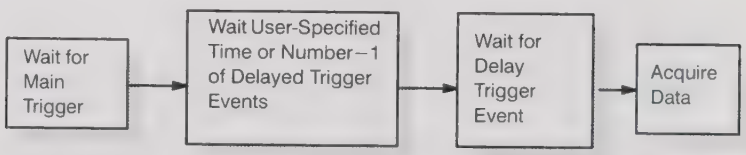

Wait for Main Trigger
Wait User-Specified Time or Number−1 of Delayed Trigger Events
Wait for Delay Trigger Event
Acquire Data

Figure 3-9: Delayed Triggerable

- *After Time* waits the user-specified time, then waits for the next delayed trigger event, then acquires.
- *After Events* waits for the specified number of delayed trigger events and then acquires.

The digitizing oscilloscope is always acquiring samples to fill the pretrigger part of the waveform record. When and if delay criteria are met, it takes enough posttrigger samples to complete the delayed waveform record and then displays it. Refer to Figure 3-10 for a more detailed look at how delayed records are placed in time relative to the main trigger.

Operation

You use the Horizontal menu to select and define either delayed runs after main or delayed triggerable. Delayed triggerable, however, requires further selections in the Delayed Trigger menu.

Delayed Runs After Main

1. Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Time Base** (main) → **Delayed Only** (side) → **Delayed Runs After Main** (side). Use the general purpose knob to set the delay time.

   If you press **Intensified** (side), you display an intensified zone on the main timebase record that shows where the delayed timebase record occurs relative to the main trigger. For Delayed Runs After Main mode, the start of the intensified zone corresponds to the start of the delayed timebase record. The end of the zone corresponds to the end of the delayed record.

   To learn how to define the intensity level of the normal and intensified waveform, see *Display Modes* on page 3-21.

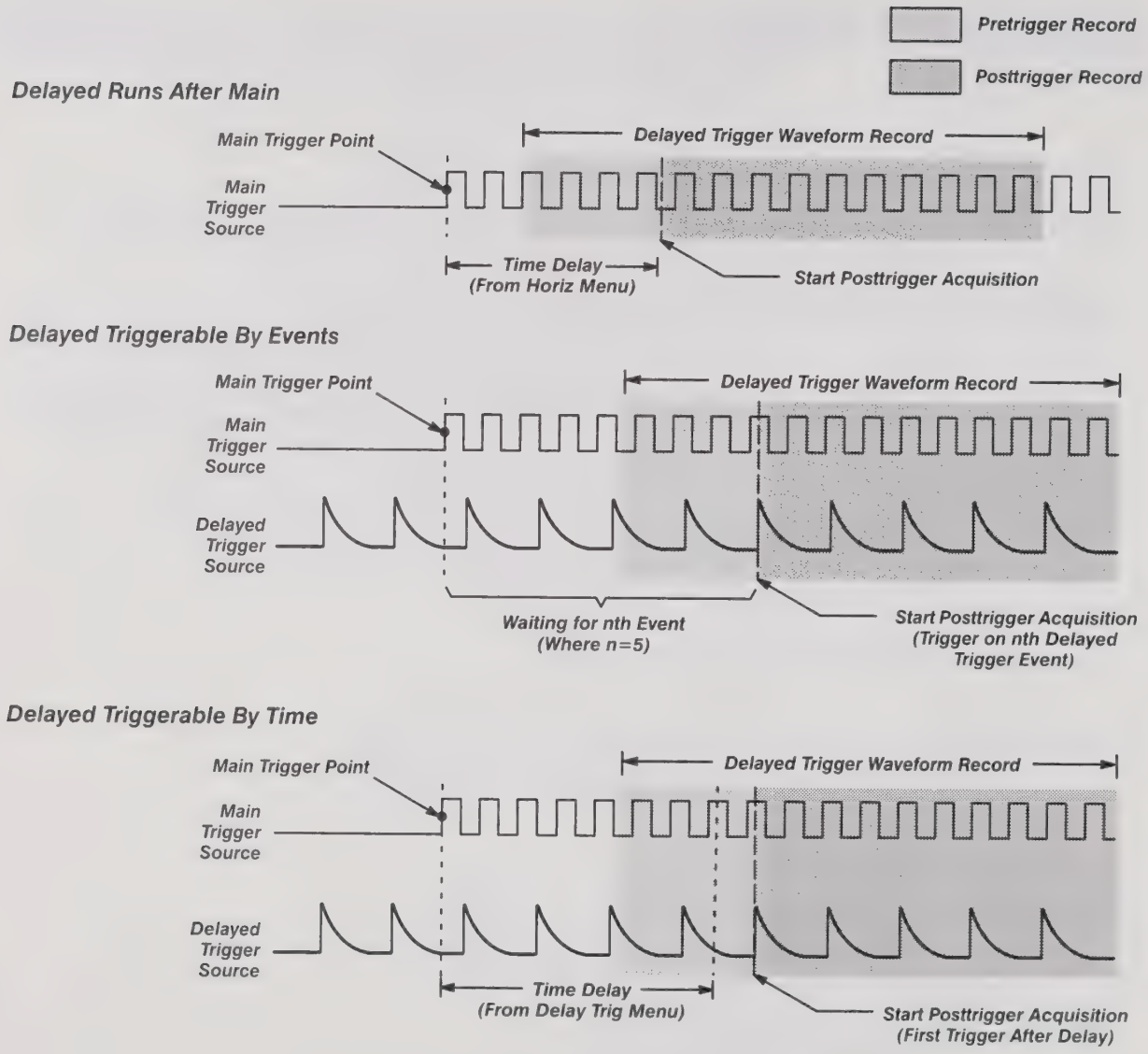

Pretrigger Record
Posttrigger Record
Delayed Runs After Main
Main Trigger Point
Delayed Trigger Waveform Record
Main Trigger Source
Time Delay (From Horiz Menu)
Start Posttrigger Acquisition
Delayed Triggerable By Events
Main Trigger Point
Delayed Trigger Waveform Record
Main Trigger Source
Delayed Trigger Source
Waiting for nth Event (Where n=5)
Start Posttrigger Acquisition (Trigger on nth Delayed Trigger Event)
Delayed Triggerable By Time
Main Trigger Point
Delayed Trigger Waveform Record
Main Trigger Source
Delayed Trigger Source
Time Delay (From Delay Trig Menu)
Start Posttrigger Acquisition (First Trigger After Delay)

Figure 3-10: How the Delayed Triggers Work

Delayed Triggerable

1. Press **HORIZONTAL MENU** → **Time Base** (main) → **Delayed Only** (side) → **Delayed Triggerable** (side).

By pressing **Intensified** (side), you can display an intensified zone that shows where the delayed timebase record *may* occur (a valid delay trigger event must be received) relative to the main trigger on the main timebase. For Delayed Triggerable After mode, the start of the intensified zone corresponds to the possible start point of the delayed timebase record. The end of the zone continues to the end of main timebase, since a delayed time base record may be triggered at any point after the delay time elapses.

To learn how to define the intensity level of the normal and intensified waveform, see *Display Modes* on page 3-21.

Now you need to bring up the Delayed Trigger menu so you can define the delayed trigger event.

2. Press **SHIFT DELAYED TRIG → Delay by** (main) → **Triggerable After Time** or **Events** (side) (Figure 3-11).

3. Enter the delay time or events using the general purpose knob.

   Hint: You can go directly to the Delayed Trigger menu (see step 2). By selecting either Triggerable After Time or Events, the oscilloscope automatically switches to Delayed Triggerable in the Horizontal menu. You will still need to display the Horizontal menu if you wish to leave Delayed Triggerable.

   The **Source** menu lets you select which input will be the delayed trigger source.

4. Press **Source** (main) → **Ch1, Ch2, Ch3**, or **Ch4** (side).

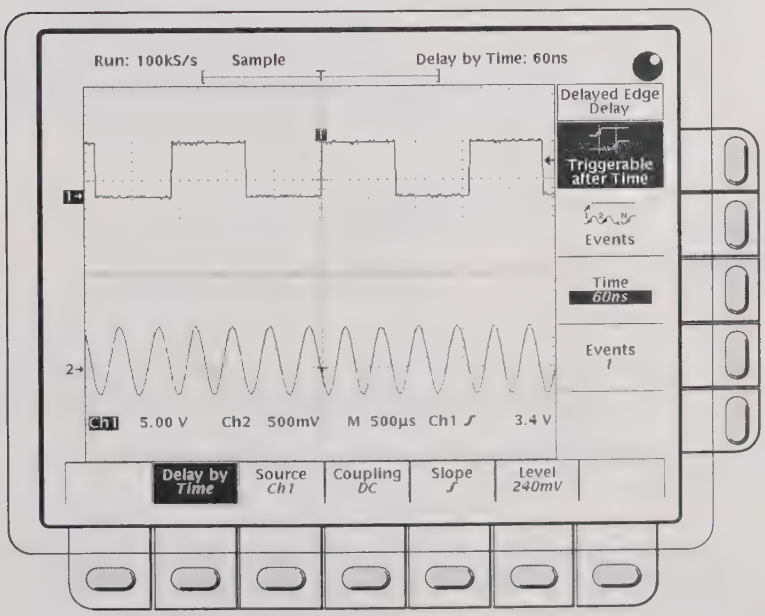


Figure 3-11: Delayed Trigger Menu

5. Press **Coupling** (main) → **DC, AC, HF Rej, LF Rej,** or **Noise Rej** (side) to define how the input signal will be coupled to the delayed trigger. For descriptions of these coupling types, see *Triggering* on page 2-11.

6. Press **Slope** (main) to select the slope that the delayed trigger will occur on. Choose between the rising edge and falling edge slopes.

   When using Delayed Triggerable mode to acquire waveforms, two trigger bars are displayed. One trigger bar indicates the level set by the main trigger system; the other indicates the level set by the delayed trigger system.

7. Press **Level** (main) → **Level**, **Set to TTL**, **Set to ECL**, or **Set to 50%** (side).

   - **Level** lets you enter the delayed trigger level using the general purpose knob.
   - **Set to TTL** fixes the trigger level at +1.4 V.
   - **Set to ECL** fixes the trigger level at −1.3 V.

NOTE

When you set the Vertical ***SCALE*** *smaller than 200 mV, the oscilloscope reduces the* ***Set to TTL*** *or* ***Set to ECL*** *trigger levels below standard TTL and ECL levels. That happens because the trigger level range is fixed at ±12 divisions from the center. At 100 mV (the next smaller setting after 200 mV) the trigger range is ±1.2 V which is smaller than the typical TTL (+1.4 V) or ECL (−1.3 V) level.*

   - **Set to 50%** fixes the delayed trigger level to 50% of the peak-to-peak value of the delayed trigger source signal.

For More Information

See *Triggering*, on page 2-11.

See *Triggering*, on page 3-93.

Display Modes

The digitizing oscilloscope can display waveform records in different ways. The Display menu lets you adjust the oscilloscope display style, intensity level, graticule, and format.

Operation

Press **DISPLAY** to show the Display menu.

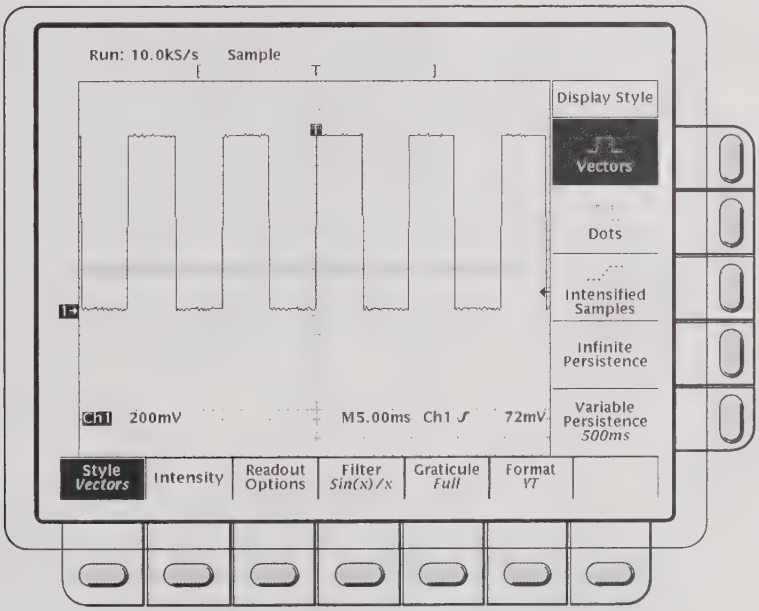


Figure 3-12: Display Menu—Style

Display Style

Press **DISPLAY → Style** (main) **→ Vectors**, **Intensified Samples**, **Dots**, **Infinite Persistence**, or **Variable Persistence** (side) (Figure 3-12).

- **Vectors** has the display draw vectors (lines) between the record points.
- **Dots** display waveform record points as dots.
- **Intensified Samples** also displays waveform record points as dots. However, the points actually sampled are displayed intensified relative to the interpolated points. (The contrast between real and interpolated points is set to a fixed value.)

In addition to choosing Intensified Samples in the side menu, the oscilloscope must be interpolating (equivalent time must be off) or Zoom must be on with its horizontal expansion greater that 1X. See interpolation on page 2-19; see Zoom beginning on page 3-109.

- **Variable Persistence** lets the record points accumulate on screen over many acquisitions and remain displayed only for a specific time interval. In that mode, the display behaves like that of an analog oscilloscope. You enter the time for that option with the general purpose knob.
- **Infinite Persistence** lets the record points accumulate until you change some control (such as scale factor) causing the display to be erased.

Intensity

Intensity lets you set overall, text/graticule, and waveform intensity (brightness) levels. To set the contrast intensity of the delay portion of a waveform:

Press **DISPLAY → Intensity** (main) **→ Overall**, **Text/Grat**, **Waveform**, or **Contrast** (side). Enter the intensity percentage values with the general purpose knob.

All intensity adjustments operate over a range from 20% (close to fully off) to 100% (fully bright).

Contrast operates over a range from 100% (no contrast) to 250% (intensified portion at full brightness).

NOTE

The Intensified setting for Timebase in the horizontal menu causes a zone on the waveform to be intensified relative to the rest of the waveform. If the contrast is set to 100%, you won't be able to distinguish the intensified portion from the rest of the waveform because both are the same brightness.

Display Readout

Readout options control whether the trigger indicator, trigger level bar, and current date and time appear on the display. The options also control what style trigger level bar, long or short, is displayed.

1. Press **DISPLAY → Readout** (main).
2. Toggle **Display 'T' @ Trigger Point** (side) to select whether or not to display 'T' indicating the trigger point. You can select **ON** or **OFF**. (The trigger point indicates the position of the trigger in the waveform record.)
3. Toggle **Trigger Bar Style** (side) to select either the short or the long trigger bar or to turn the trigger bar off. (See Figure 3-13. Note that both styles are shown for illustrating purposes, but you can only display one style at a time.)

The trigger bar is only displayed if the trigger source is an active, displayed waveform. Also, two trigger bars are displayed when delay triggerable acquisitions are displayed—one for the main and one for the delayed timebase. The trigger bar is a visual indicator of the trigger level.

Sometimes, especially when using the hardcopy feature, you may wish to display the current date and time on screen. For more information about displaying and setting date and time, see *Date/Time Stamping Your Hardcopy* on page 3-32.)

4. Press **Display Date/Time** (side) to turn it on or off. Push **Clear Menu** to see the current date and time. (Note that if the date and time have not been set since the oscilloscope was last powered on, a message will be displayed with instructions for setting date and time.)

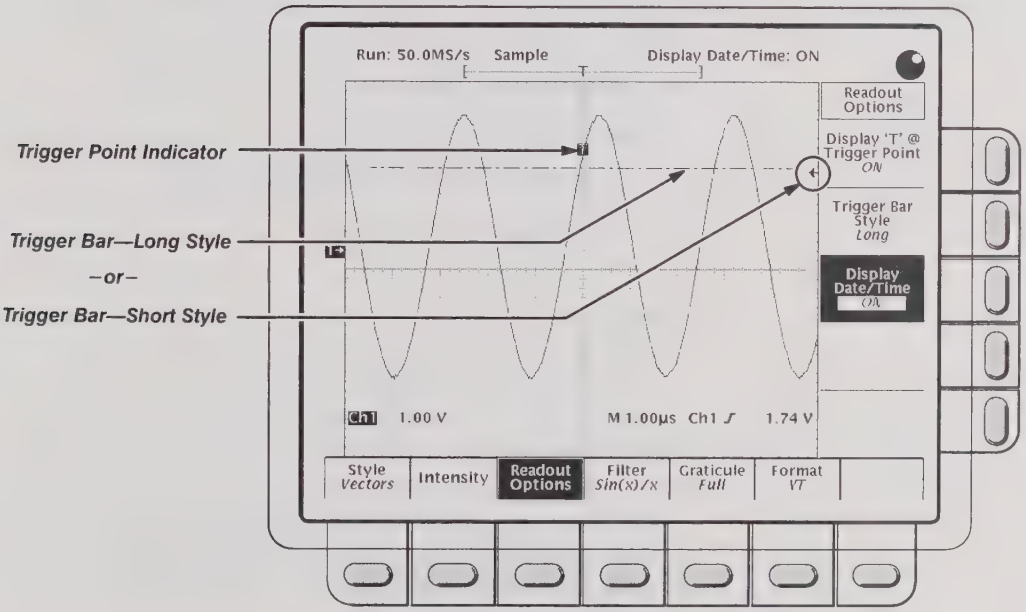


Figure 3-13: Trigger Point and Level Indicators

Filter Type

The display filter types are sin(x)/x interpolation and linear interpolation. For more information see page 2-19.

Press **DISPLAY → Filter** (main) **→ Sin(x)/x Interpolation** or **Linear Interpolation** (side).

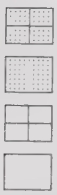
NOTE

When the horizontal scale is set to rates faster than 500 ns/div, or when using the ZOOM feature to expand waveforms horizontally, interpolation occurs. (The filter type, linear or sin(x)/(x), depends on which is set in the Display menu.) Otherwise, interpolation is not needed. See Sampling and Digitizing *on page 2-17 for a discussion of sampling including interpolation.*

Graticule Type

To change the graticule:

Press **DISPLAY** → **Graticule** (main) → **Full**, **Grid**, **Cross Hair**, or **Frame** (side).



- **Full** provides a grid, cross hairs and a frame.
- **Grid** displays a frame and a grid.
- **Cross Hair** provides cross hairs and a frame.
- **Frame** displays just a frame.

Format

There are two kinds of format: YT and XY.

YT is the conventional oscilloscope display format. It shows a signal voltage (the vertical axis) as it varies over time (the horizontal axis).

XY format compares the voltage levels of two waveform records point by point. That is, the digitizing oscilloscope displays a graph of the voltage of one waveform record against the voltage of another waveform record. This mode is particularly useful for studying phase relationships.

To set the display axis format:

Press **DISPLAY** → **Format** (main) → **XY** or **YT** (side).

When you choose the XY mode, the input you have selected is assigned to the X-axis and the digitizing oscilloscope automatically chooses the Y-axis input (see Table 3-3).

Table 3-3: XY Format Pairs

X-Axis Channel (User Selectable)	Y-Axis Channel (Fixed)
Ch 1	Ch 2
Ch 3	Ch 4

For example, if you press the **CH 1** button, the digitizing oscilloscope will display a graph of the channel 1 voltage levels on the X-axis against the channel 2 voltage levels on the Y-axis. That will occur whether or not you are displaying the channel 2 waveform in YT format. If you later press the **WAVEFORM OFF** button for either channel 1 or 2, the digitizing oscilloscope will delete the XY graph of channel 1 versus channel 2.

Since selecting **YT** or **XY** affects only the display, the horizontal and vertical scale and position knobs and menus control the same parameters regardless of the mode selected. Specifically, in XY mode, the horizontal scale will continue to control the time base and the horizontal position will continue to control which portion of the waveforms are displayed.

XY format is a dot-only display, although it can have persistence. The **Vector** style selection has no effect when you select XY format.

You cannot display Math waveforms in XY format. They will disappear from the display when you select XY.

For More Information

See *Acquisition* on page 2-17.

Edge Triggering

An *edge trigger* event occurs when the trigger source passes through a specified voltage level in a specified direction (the trigger slope). You will likely use edge triggering for most of your measurements.

You can select the edge source, coupling, slope, level, and mode (auto or normal).

Edge Trigger Readouts

The Trigger readout shows some key trigger parameters (Figure 3-14).

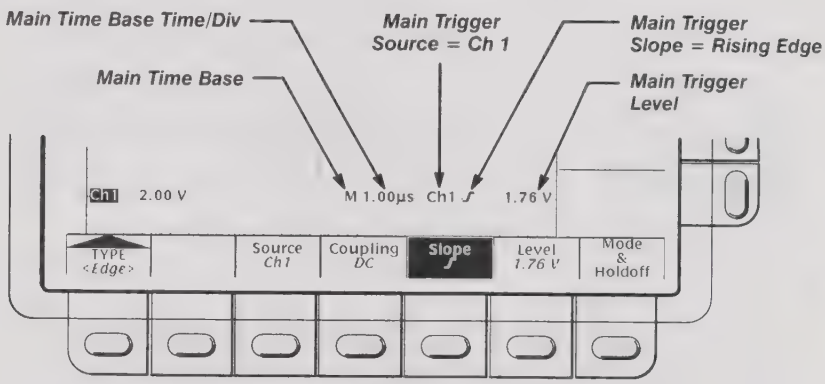


Figure 3-14: Edge Trigger Readouts

Operation

The Edge Trigger menu lets you select the source, coupling, slope, trigger level, mode, and holdoff.

To bring up the Edge Trigger menu:

Press **TRIGGER MENU** → **Type** (main) → **Edge** (pop-up) (see Figure 3-15).

Source

To select which source you want for the trigger:

Press **TRIGGER MENU** → **Type** (main) → **Edge** (pop-up) → **Source** (main) → **Ch1**, **Ch2**, **Ch3**, **Ch4**, **AC Line**, or **Auxiliary** (side).

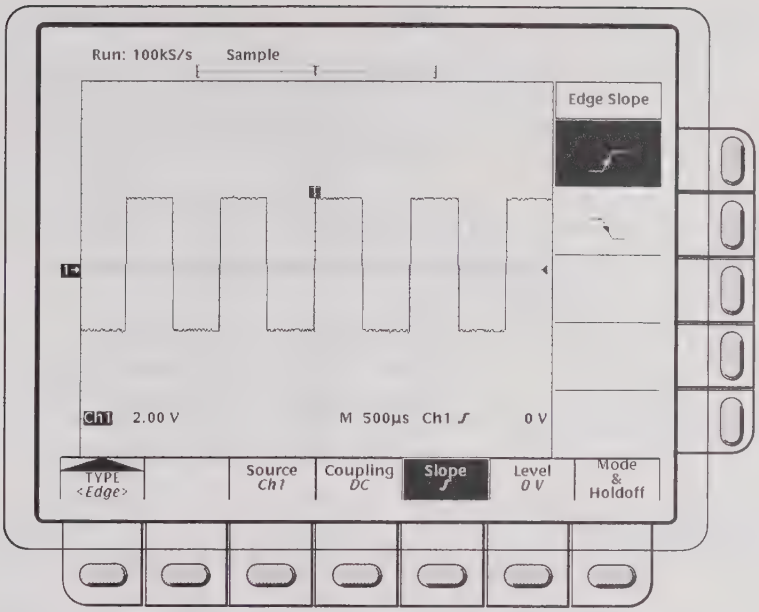


Figure 3-15: Main Trigger Menu—Edge Type

Coupling

To select the coupling you want:

Press **TRIGGER MENU → Type** (main) **→ Edge** (pop-up) **→ Coupling** (main) **→ DC**, **AC**, **HF Rej**, **LF Rej**, or **Noise Rej** (side).

DC

- **DC** passes all of the input signal. In other words, it passes both AC and DC components to the trigger circuit.

AC ∿

- **AC** passes only the alternating components of an input signal (above 30 Hz). It removes the DC component from the trigger signal.

- **HF Rej** removes the high frequency portion of the triggering signal. That allows only the low frequency components to pass on to the triggering system to start an acquisition. High frequency rejection attenuates signals above 30 kHz.

- **LF Rej** does the opposite of high frequency rejection. Low frequency rejection attenuates signals below 80 kHz.
- **Noise Rej** provides lower sensitivity. It requires additional signal amplitude for stable triggering, reducing the chance of falsely triggering on noise.

Slope

To select the slope that the edge trigger will occur on:

1. Press the **TRIGGER MENU** → **Type** (main) → **Edge** (pop-up) → **Slope** (main) to select the slope that the edge trigger will have.

2. Alternatives for slope are the rising and falling edges.

Level

Press the **TRIGGER MENU** → **Type** (main) → **Edge** (pop-up) → **Level** (main) → **Level**, **Set to TTL**, **Set to ECL**, or **Set to 50%** (side).

- **Level** lets you enter the trigger level using the general purpose knob.
- **Set to TTL** fixes the trigger level at +1.4 V.
- **Set to ECL** fixes the trigger level at −1.3 V.

NOTE

When you set the volts/div smaller than 200 mV, the oscilloscope reduces the ***Set to TTL*** *or* ***Set to ECL*** *trigger levels below standard TTL and ECL levels. That happens because the trigger level range is fixed at ±12 divisions from the center. At 100 mV (the next smaller setting after 200 mV) the trigger range is ±1.2 V, which is smaller than the typical TTL (+1.4 V) or ECL (−1.3 V) level.*

- **Set to 50%** fixes the trigger level to approximately 50% of the peak-to-peak value of the trigger source signal.

Mode & Holdoff

You can change the holdoff time and select the trigger mode using this menu item. See Triggering on page 2-11 for more details.

1. Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Mode & Holdoff** (main) → **Auto** or **Normal** (side).
   - In **Auto** mode the oscilloscope acquires a waveform after a specific time has elapsed even if a trigger does not occur. The amount of time the oscilloscope waits depends on the time base setting.
   - In **Normal** mode the oscilloscope acquires a waveform only if there is a valid trigger.
2. To change the holdoff time, press **Holdoff** (side). Enter the value in % using the general purpose knob.

If you want to enter a large number using the general purpose knob, press the **SHIFT** button before turning the knob. When the light the **SHIFT** button is on and the display says **Coarse Knobs** in the upper right corner, the general purpose knob speeds up significantly.

Holdoff is settable from 0% (minimum holdoff available) to 100% (maximum available). See *Holdoff, Variable, Main Trigger* on page A-22 of Appendix B for the typical minimum and maximum values.

Holdoff is automatically reset to 0% when you change the main time base time/division setting. However, it is not reset if you change the delayed time base time/division (that is, when the time base setting in the Horizontal menu is **Intensified** or **Delayed Only**).

For More Information

See *Triggering*, on page 2-11.

See *Triggering*, on page 3-93.

Hardcopy

You can get a copy of the digitizing oscilloscope display by using the hardcopy feature. Depending on the output format you select, you create either an image or a plot. Images are direct bit map representations of the digitizing oscilloscope display. Plots are vector (plotted) representations of the display.

Hardcopy Formats

Different hardcopy devices use different formats. The digitizing oscilloscope supports the following formats:

- HP Thinkjet
- HP Deskjet
- HP Laserjet
- Seiko DPU 411/412
- HPGL Color Plot
- Epson®
- Interleaf®
- Tag Image File Format (TIFF®)
- PC Paintbrush® (PCX®)
- Microsoft Windows® file format (BMP®)
- Encapsulated Postscript® (Image, Mono Plot, and Color Plot)

Some formats, particularly Interleaf, Postscript, TIFF, PCX, BMP, and HPGL, are compatible with various desktop publishing packages. That means you can paste files created from the oscilloscope directly into a document on any of those desktop publishing systems.

EPS Mono and Color formats are compatible with the Tektronix Phaser Color Printer, HPGL is compatible with the Tektronix HC100 Plotter, and Epson is compatible with the Tektronix HC200 Printer.

Operation

Before you make a hardcopy, you need to set up communications and hardcopy parameters. This discussion assumes that the hardcopy device is already connected to the GPIB port on the rear panel. If that is not the case see *Connection Strategies* on page 3-34.

Setting Communication Parameters

To set up the communication parameters:

1. Press **SHIFT UTILITY** → **System** (main) → **I/O** (pop-up) → **Configure** (main) (see Figure 3-16).
2. Press **Hardcopy (Talk Only)** (side).

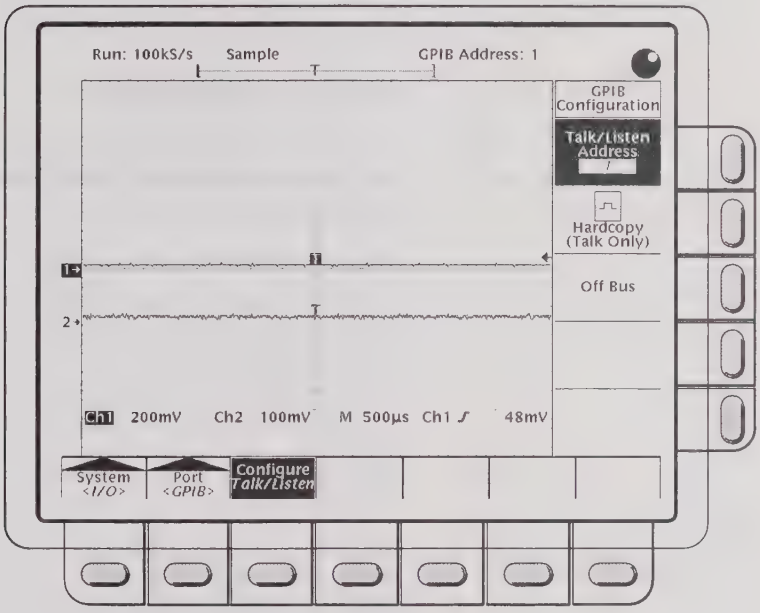


Figure 3-16: Utility Menu—System I/O

Setting Hardcopy Parameters

To specify the hardcopy format, layout, and type of port using the hardcopy menu:

1. Press **SHIFT HARDCOPY MENU** to bring up the Hardcopy menu.
2. Press **Format** (main) → **Thinkjet**, **Deskjet**, **Laserjet**, **Epson**, **Interleaf**, **TIFF**, **PCX**, **BMP**, **EPS Image**, **EPS Mono**, **EPS Color** (EPS stands for Encapsulated Postscript), or **HPGL** (side). (Press **–more–** (side) to see all of these format choices.)
3. Press **SHIFT HARDCOPY MENU** → **Layout** (main) → **Landscape** or **Portrait** (side) (see Figure 3-17).
4. Press **SHIFT HARDCOPY MENU** → **Port** (main) to specify the output channel to send your hardcopy through. Unless your instrument is equipped with Option 13, the only choice is **GPIB**. (If your instrument is equipped with Option 13, see the *TDS Family Option 13 Instruction Manual* for setting up hardcopy over the RS-232 and Centronics ports.)

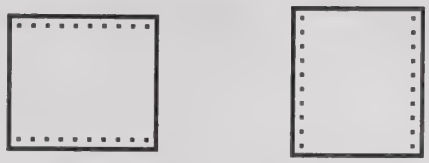


Figure 3-17: Hardcopy Formats

Printing the Hardcopy

You can print a single hardcopy or send additional hardcopies to the spool (queue) while waiting for earlier hardcopies to finish printing. To print your hardcopy(ies):

Press **HARDCOPY** to print your hardcopy.

While the hardcopy is being sent to the printer, the oscilloscope will display the message "Hardcopy in process—Press HARDCOPY to abort."

To stop and discard the hardcopy being sent, press **HARDCOPY** again *while* the hardcopy in process message is still on screen.

To add additional hardcopies to the printer spool, press **HARDCOPY** again *after* the hardcopy in process message is removed from the screen.

You can add hardcopies to the spool until it is full. When the spool is filled by adding a hardcopy, the message "Hardcopy in Process—Press HARDCOPY to abort" remains displayed. You can abort the *last* hardcopy sent by pressing the button while the message is still displayed. When the printer empties enough of the spool to finish adding the last hardcopy it does so and then removes the message.

To remove all hardcopies from the spool:

Press **SHIFT HARDCOPY MENU → Clear Spool** (main) **→ OK Confirm Clear Spool** (side).

The oscilloscope takes advantage of any unused RAM when spooling hardcopies to printers. The size of the spool is, therefore, variable. The number of hardcopies that can be spooled depends on three variables:

- the amount of unused RAM
- the hardcopy format chosen
- the complexity of the display

Date/Time Stamping Your Hardcopy

You can display the current date and time on screen so that it appears on the hardcopies you print. To date and time stamp your hardcopy:

1. Press **DISPLAY → Readout Options** (main) → **Display Date and Time** (side) to toggle the setting to **On**.
2. The date and time are backed up by a battery and need not be set each time you power up the oscilloscope. If the date and time are not set, a message instructing you to will be displayed. If that is the case, skip steps 3 and 4 and continue with step 5.
3. Press **Clear Menu** to remove the menu from the display so the date and time can be displayed. See Figure 3-18. (The date and time is removed from the display when menus are displayed.)
4. Press **HARDCOPY** to print your date/time stamped hardcopy.

   If you need to set the date and time of the oscilloscope:

5. Press **SHIFT UTILITY → Config** (pop-up) → **Set Date & Time** (main) → **Year**, **Day Month**, **Hour**, or **Minute**.

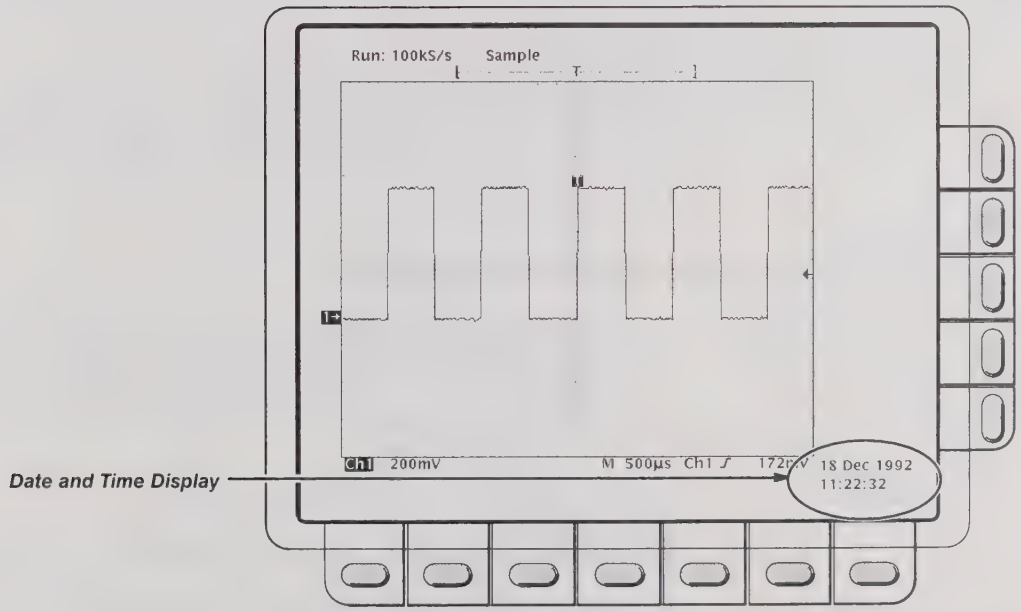


Figure 3-18: Date and Time Display

6. Use the general purpose knob to set the parameter you have chosen to the value desired.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to set other parameters as desired.
8. Press **OK Enter Date/Time** (side) to put the new settings into effect. This sets the seconds to zero.

NOTE

When setting the clock, you can set to a time slightly later than the current time and wait for it to catch up. When current time catches up to the time you have set, pressing ***Ok Enter Date/Time*** *(side) synchronizes the set time to the current time.*

9. Press **CLEAR MENU** to see the date/time displayed with the new settings.
10. Press **HARDCOPY** to print your date/time stamped hardcopy.

Connection Strategies

The ability of the digitizing oscilloscope to print a copy of its display in many formats (see page 3-30) gives you flexibility in choosing a hardcopy device. It also makes it easier for you to place oscilloscope screen copies into a desktop publishing system.

However, since the digitizing oscilloscope has only a GPIB interface port and many hardcopy devices have only RS-232 or Centronics ports, you need a connection strategy for sending the hardcopy data from the digitizing oscilloscope to the printer or plotter. Three such strategies exist:

NOTE

If your instrument is equipped with Option 13, your oscilloscope has an RS-232 port and a Centronics port in addition to the GPIB port. See the TDS Family Option 13 Instruction Manual for setting up to hardcopy directly through the RS-232 and Centronics ports.

- Use a printer/plotter with a GPIB connector.
- Use a GPIB-to-Centronics or GPIB-to-RS-232 converter box.
- Send the data to a computer with both GPIB and RS-232 or Centronics ports.

Using a GPIB-Based Hardcopy Device

You can connect the digitizing oscilloscope directly to a GPIB-based hardcopy device (see Figure 3-19). An example of a GPIB hardcopy device is the Tektronix HC100 Plotter.

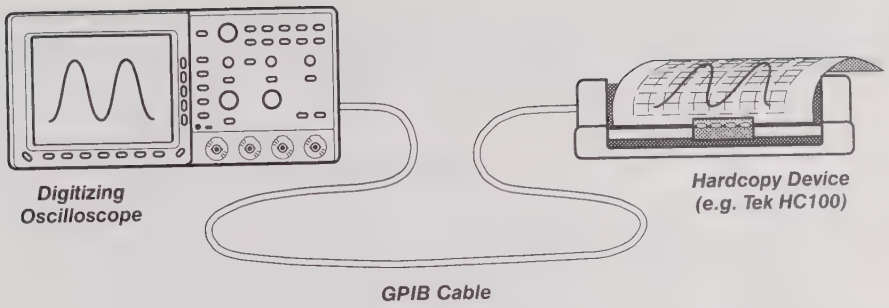


Figure 3-19: Connecting the Digitizing Oscilloscope Directly to the Hardcopy Device

Using a GPIB-to-Centronics or GPIB-to-RS-232 Converter

You can put a GPIB-to-Centronics or GPIB-to-RS-232 interface converter box between the digitizing oscilloscope and the RS-232 or Centronics hardcopy device (see Figure 3-20). For example, a National Instruments GPIB-PRL (a GPIB-to-Centronics converter) will permit you to make screen prints on a Tektronix HC200 Dot Matrix printer with just a Centronics port.

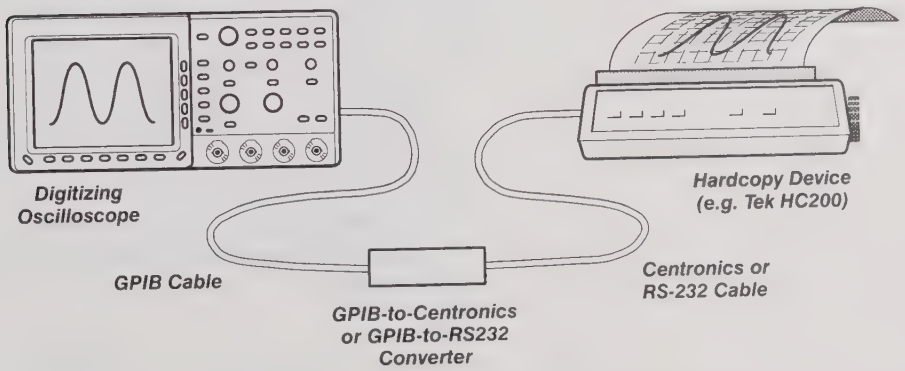


Figure 3-20: Connecting the Digitizing Oscilloscope and Hardcopy Device Via a Converter

Using a Controller

You can put a controller with two ports between the digitizing oscilloscope and the hardcopy device (see Figure 3-21). One port must be a GPIB and the other must be either an RS-232 or a Centronics port.

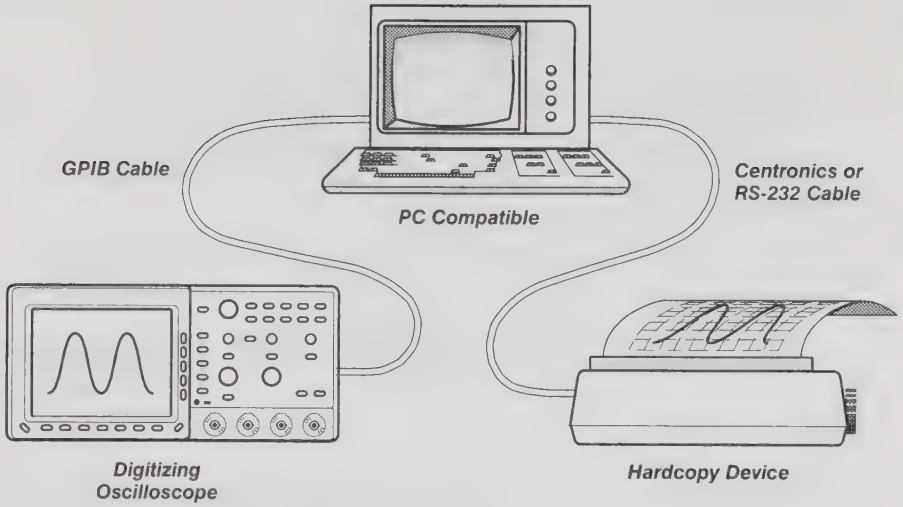


Figure 3-21: Connecting the Digitizing Oscilloscope and Hardcopy Device Via a PC

If your controller is PC-compatible and it uses the Tektronix GURU or S3FG210 (National Instruments GPIB-PCII/IIA) GPIB package, you can operate this setup as follows:

1. Use the MS-DOS *cd* command to move to the directory that holds the software that came with your GPIB board. For example, if you installed the software in the GPIB-PC directory, type: **cd GPIB-PC**
2. Run the IBIC program that came with your GPIB board. Type: **IBIC**
3. Type: **IBFIND DEV1** where "DEV1" is the name for the digitizing oscilloscope you defined using the IBCONF.EXE program that came with the GPIB board.

NOTE

If you defined another name then, of course, use it instead of "DEV1". Also, remember that the device address of the digitizing oscilloscope *as set with the IBCONF.EXE program should match the address set in the* digitizing oscilloscope *Utility menu (typically, use "1").*

4. Type: **IBWRT "HARDCOPY START"** Be sure the digitizing oscilloscope Utility menu is set to **Talk/Listen** and not **Hardcopy (Talk Only)** or you will get an error message at this step. Setting the digitizing oscilloscope Utility menu was described in the start of this Hardcopy section under the heading *Setting Communication Parameters*.

5. Type: **IBRDF <Filename>**where <Filename> is a valid DOS file name you want to call your hardcopy information. It should be ≤8 characters long with up to a 3 character extension. For example, you could type *"ibrdf screen1"*.
6. Exit the IBIC program by typing: **EXIT**
7. Type: **COPY <Filename> <Output port> </B>** where <Filename> is the name you defined in step 5 and <Output port> is the PC output port your hardcopy device is connected to (such as LPT1 or LPT2). Copy the data from your file to your hardcopy device. First, ensure your printer or plotter is properly attached to your PC. Then copy the file. For example, if your file is called *screen1* and your printer is attached to the *lpt1* parallel port, type *"copy screen1 lpt1: /B"*.

Your hardcopy device should now print a picture of the digitizing oscilloscope screen.

For More Information

See *Remote Communication*, on page 3-75.

See the *TDS Family Option 13 Instruction Manual* (Option 13 equipped instruments only).

Help

The on-line help system provides brief information about each of the digitizing oscilloscope controls.

Operation

To use the on-line help system:

Press **HELP** to provide on-screen information on any front panel button, knob or menu item (see Figure 3-22).

When you press that button, the instrument changes mode to support on-line help. Press **HELP** again to return to regular operating mode. Whenever the oscilloscope is in help mode, pressing any button (except **HELP** or **SHIFT**), turning any knob, or pressing any menu item displays help text on the screen that discusses that control.

The menu selections that were displayed when **HELP** was first pressed remain on the screen. On-line help is available for each menu selection displayed at the time the **HELP** button was first pressed. If you are in help mode and want to see help on selections from non-displayed menus, you first exit help mode, display the menu you want information on, and press **HELP** again to re-enter help mode.

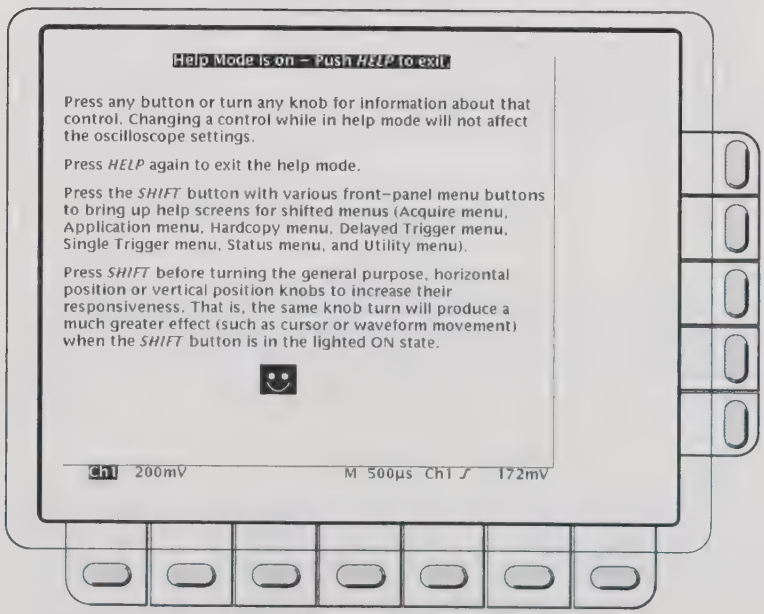

Help Mode is on – Push HELP to exit.
Press any button or turn any knob for information about that control. Changing a control while in help mode will not affect the oscilloscope settings.
Press HELP again to exit the help mode.
Press the SHIFT button with various front-panel menu buttons to bring up help screens for shifted menus (Acquire menu, Application menu, Hardcopy menu, Delayed Trigger menu, Single Trigger menu, Status menu, and Utility menu).
Press SHIFT before turning the general purpose, horizontal position or vertical position knobs to increase their responsiveness. That is, the same knob turn will produce a much greater effect (such as cursor or waveform movement) when the SHIFT button is in the lighted ON state.
Ch1 200mV
M 500µs Ch1 ƒ 172mV

Figure 3-22: Initial Help Screen

Horizontal Control

You can control the horizontal part of the display (the time base) using the horizontal menu and knobs.

Horizontal Knobs

By changing the horizontal scale, you can focus on a particular portion of a waveform. By adjusting the horizontal position, you can move the waveform right or left to see different portions of it. That is particularly useful when you are using larger record sizes and cannot view the entire waveform on one screen.

To change the horizontal scale and position, use the horizontal **POSITION** and horizontal **SCALE** knobs (see Figure 3-23). These knobs manage the time base and horizontal waveform positioning on the screen. When you use either the horizontal **SCALE** or **POSITION** knobs, you will affect all the waveform records displayed.

When you use either the horizontal **SCALE** or **POSITION** knobs, you will affect all the waveform records displayed. If you want the **POSITION** knob to move faster, press the **SHIFT** button. When the light above the shift button is on and the display says **Coarse Knobs** in the upper right corner, the **POSITION** knob speeds up significantly.

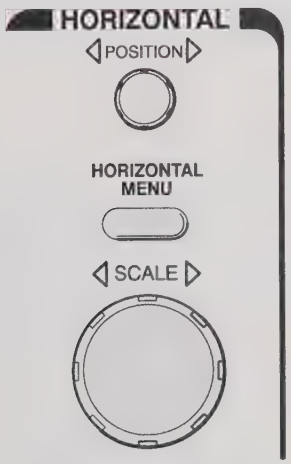


Figure 3-23: Horizontal Controls

Horizontal Readouts

At the top of the display, the *Record View* shows the size and location of the waveform record and the location of the trigger relative to the display (see Figure 3-24). The *Time Base readout* at the lower right of the display shows the time/division settings and the time base (main or delayed) being referred to (see Figure 3-24).

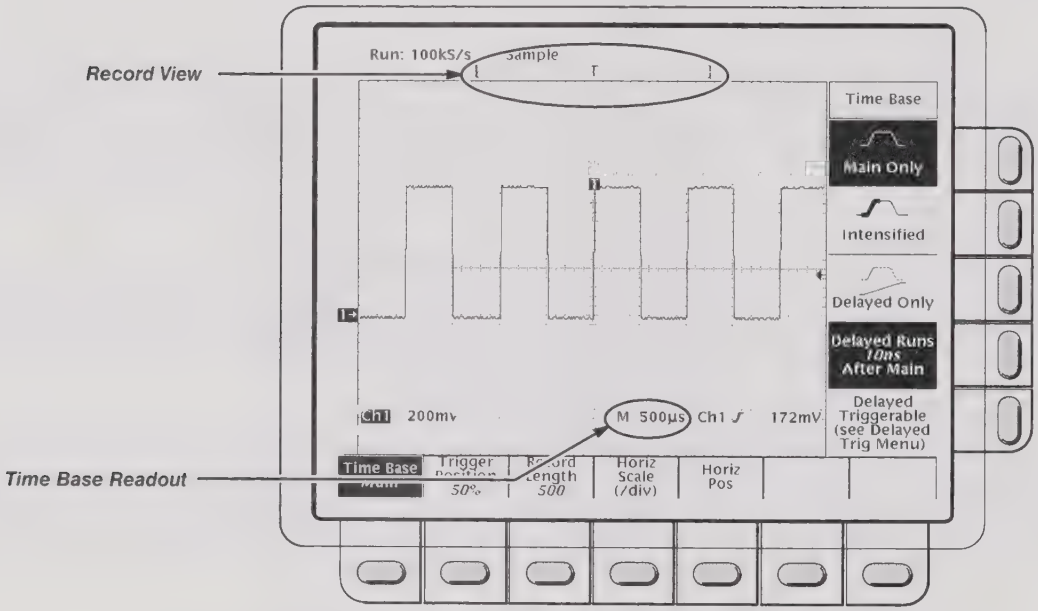


Figure 3-24: Record View and Time Base Readouts

Horizontal Menu

The Horizontal menu lets you select either a main or delayed view of the time base for acquisitions. It also lets you set the record length, set the trigger position, and change the position or scale.

Main and Delayed Time Base

To select between the Main and Delayed views of the time base:

Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Time Base** (main) **→ Main Only**, **Intensified**, or **Delay Only** (side).

By pressing **Intensified**, you display an intensified zone that shows where the delayed trigger record length could occur relative to the main trigger. The start of the intensified zone corresponds to the possible start point of the delayed trigger. The end of the zone corresponds to the end of the waveform record.

To learn how to change the intensity of the normal and intensified waveform, see *Display Modes* on page 3-21.

You also can select **Delayed Runs After Main** or **Delayed Triggerable**. For more information on how to use the these two menu items, see *Delayed Triggering* on page 3-16.

Trigger Position

To define how much of the record will be pretrigger and how much posttrigger information using the **Trigger Position** menu item:

Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Trigger Position** (main) → **Set to 10%**, **Set to 50%**, or **Set to 90%** (side), or press **Pretrigger** (side) and use the general purpose knob.

Record Length

To set the waveform record length, press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Record Length** (main). The side menu lists various discrete record length choices.

NOTE

If you selected the longest record length available in the Horizontal menu, then you cannot select Hi Res as your acquisition mode. This is because Hi Res mode uses twice the acquisition memory that the other acquisition modes use. If Hi Res and the longest horizontal record length were allowed to be selected at the same time, the oscilloscope would run out of memory.

Horizontal Scale

To change the horizontal scale (time per division) numerically in the menu instead of using the Horizontal **SCALE** knob:

Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Horiz Scale** (main) → **Main Scale** or **Delayed Scale** (side) and use the general purpose knob to change the scale values.

NOTE

*When you set the Horizontal **SCALE** to 50 ms or slower the oscilloscope enters Roll mode. You can read about Roll mode beginning on page 3-79.*

Horizontal Position

You can set the horizontal position to specific values in the menu instead of using the Horizontal **POSITION** knob.

Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Horiz Pos** (main) **→ Set to 10%**, **Set to 50%** or **Set to 90%** (side) to choose how much of the waveform will be displayed to the left of the display center.

You can also control whether changing the horizontal position setting affects all displayed waveforms, just the live waveforms, or only the selected waveform. The Horizontal Lock setting in the Zoom menu determines which waveforms the horizontal position knob adjusts whether zoom is on or not. Specifically, it acts as follows:

- **None**—only the waveform currently selected can be zoomed and positioned horizontally
- **Live**—all channels can be zoomed and positioned horizontally at the same time
- **All**—all waveforms displayed (channels, math, and/or reference) can be zoomed and positioned horizontally at the same time

See *Zoom,* on page 3-109 for the steps to set the horizontal lock feature.

For More Information

See *Scaling and Positioning Waveforms,* on page 2-22.

See *Delayed Triggering*, on page 3-16.

See *Zoom,* on page 3-109.

Limit Testing

Limit testing provides a way to automatically compare each incoming waveform against a template waveform. You set an envelope of limits around a waveform and let the digitizing oscilloscope find waveforms that fall outside those limits. When it finds such a waveform, the digitizing oscilloscope can generate a hardcopy, ring a bell, stop and wait for your input, or any combination of these actions.

When you use the limit testing feature, the first task is to create the limit test template from a waveform. Next, specify the channel to compare to the template. Then you specify the action to take if incoming waveform data exceeds the set limits. Finally, turn limit testing on so that the parameters you have specified will take effect.

Operation

To access limit testing:

Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU** to bring up the Acquire menu.

Create Limit Test Template

To use an incoming or stored waveform to create the limit test template, first select a source.

1. Press **Create Limit Test Template** (main) → **Template Source** (side) → **Ch1**, **Ch2**, **Math1**, **Math2**, **Math3**, **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, or **Ref4** (side). (See Figure 3-25).

NOTE

The template will be smoother if you acquire the template waveform using **Average** *acquisition mode. If you are unsure how to do this, see* Acquisition Modes *on page 3-6.*

Once you have selected a source, select a destination for the template.

2. Press **Template Destination** (side) → **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, or **Ref4**.

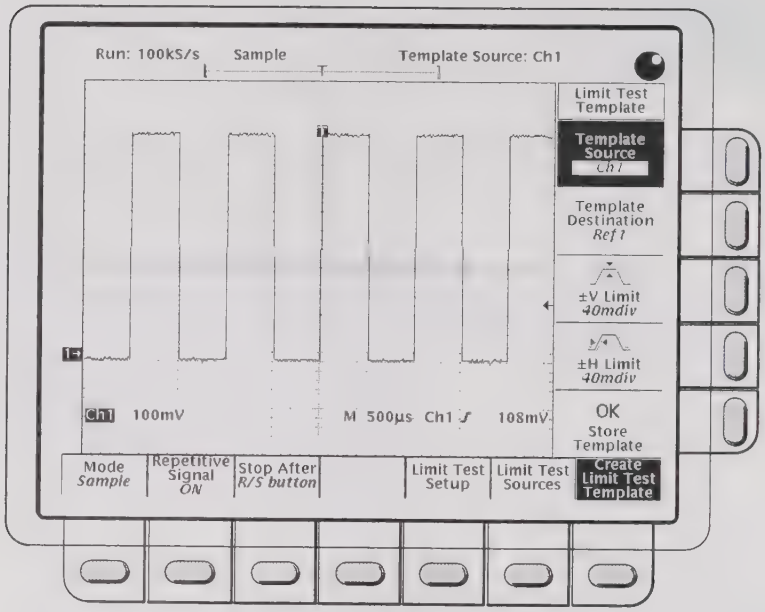


Figure 3-25: Acquire Menu—Create Limit Test Template

Now create the envelope by specifying the amount of variation from the template that you will tolerate. Tolerance values are expressed in fractions of a major division. They represent the amount by which incoming waveform data can deviate without having exceeded the limits set in the limit test. The range is from 0 (the incoming waveform must be exactly like the template source) to 5 major divisions of tolerance.

3. Press **±V Limit** (side). Enter the vertical (voltage) tolerance value using the general purpose knob.

4. Press **±H Limit** (side). Enter the horizontal (time) tolerance value using the general purpose knob.

5. When you have specified the limit test template as you wish, press **OK Store Template** (side). This action stores the specified waveform in the specified destination, using the specified tolerances. Until you have done so, the template waveform has been defined but not created.

   If you wish to create another limit test template, store it in another destination to avoid overwriting the template you have just created.

   If you wish to view the template you have created, press the **MORE** button. Then press the button corresponding to the destination reference memory you have used. The waveform appears on the display.

NOTE

To view the waveform data as well as the template envelope, use the **Dots** *display style (see* Display Modes *on page 3-21).*

Limit Test Sources

Now specify the channel that will acquire the waveforms to be compared against the template you have created.

1. Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Limit Test Sources** (main) → **Compare Ch1 to**, **Compare Ch2 to**, **Compare Ch3 to**, or **Compare Ch4 to** (side).
2. Once you have selected one of the four channels as a waveform source from the side menu, press the same side menu button to toggle to one of the reference memories in which you have stored a template (or use the general purpose knob).

   Valid selections are any of the four reference waveforms **Ref1** through **Ref4** or **None**. Choosing **None** turns limit testing off for the specified channel.

   NOTE

   Specify the same reference memory you chose as the template destination if you wish to use the template you just created.

   If you have created more than one template, you can compare one channel to one template and the other channel to another template.

Limit Test Setup

Now specify the action to take if waveform data exceeds the limits set by the limit test template.

1. Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Limit Test Setup** (main) to bring up a side menu of possible actions.
2. Ensure that the side button corresponding to the desired action reads **ON**.
   - If you want to send a hardcopy command when waveform data exceeds the limits set, toggle **Hardcopy if Condition Met** (side) to **ON**. (Don't forget to set up the hardcopy system. See *Hardcopy* on page 3-30 for details.)
   - If you want the bell to ring when waveform data exceeds the limits set, toggle **Ring Bell if Condition Met** (side) to **ON.**
   - If you want the digitizing oscilloscope to stop when waveform data exceeds the limits set, toggle **Stop After Limit Test Condition Met** (side) to **ON.**

NOTE

The button labeled **Stop After Limit Test Condition Met** *corresponds to the* **Limit Test Condition Met** *menu item in the* **Stop After** *main menu. You can turn this button on in the* **Limit Test Setup** *menu, but you cannot turn it off. In order to turn it off, press* **Stop After** *and specify one of the other choices in the* **Stop After** *side menu.*

Now that you have set the instrument up for limit testing, you must turn limit testing on in order for any of these actions to take effect.

3. Ensure that **Limit Test** (side) reads **ON**. If it reads **OFF**, press **Limit Test** (side) once to toggle it to **ON**.

   When you set **Limit Test** to **ON**, the digitizing oscilloscope compares incoming waveforms against the waveform template stored in reference memory according to the settings in the **Limit Test Sources** side menu.

Single and Multiple Waveforms

You can compare a single waveform against a single template, more than one waveform against a single template, or more than one waveform with each one compared against its own template. How Limit Test operates depends on which type of these comparisons you choose.

Single Waveform Comparisons

When making a single waveform versus a single template comparison, consider the following operating characteristics:

- The waveform will be repositioned horizontally to move the first sample in the waveform record that is outside of template limits to center screen.
- The position of the waveform template will track that of the waveform.

Multiple Waveform Comparisons

When comparing one or more waveforms, each against a common template or against its own template, consider the following operating characteristics:

- You should set **Horizontal Lock** to **None** in the Zoom side menu (push **ZOOM** and toggle **Horizontal Lock** to **None**).
- With horizontal lock set as just described, the oscilloscope will reposition each waveform horizontally to move the first sample in the waveform record that is outside of template limits to center screen.
- If you are comparing each waveform to its own template, the position of each waveform template will track that of its waveform.

- If you are comparing two or more waveforms to a common template, that template will track the position of the failed waveform. If more than one waveform fails *during the same acquisition*, the template will track the position of the waveform in the highest numbered channel (CH 4 or Aux 2, depending on the TDS model number of your digitizing oscilloscope).

For More Information

See *Acquisition,* on page 2-17.

See *Acquisition Modes,* on page 3-2.

See *Display Modes,* on page 3-21.

See *Zoom,* on page 3-109.

Measurement System

There are various ways to measure properties of waveforms. You can use graticule, cursor, or automatic measurements. This section describes *automatic measurements*; cursors and graticules are described elsewhere. (See *Cursor Measurements* on page 3-11 and *Measurements* on page 2-26.)

Automatic measurements are generally more accurate and quicker than, for example, manually counting graticule divisions. The oscilloscope will continuously update and display these measurements. (There is also a way to display all the measurements at once—see *Snapshot of Measurements* on page 3-57.)

Automatic measurements calculate waveform parameters from acquired data. Measurements are performed over the entire waveform record or the region specified by the vertical cursors, if gated measurements have been requested. (See page 3-53 for a discussion of gated measurements.) They are not performed just on the displayed portions of waveforms.

The TDS 400 Series Digitizing Oscilloscopes provide you with 25 automatic measurements (see Table 3-4).

Definitions

The following are brief definitions of the automated measurements in the digitizing oscilloscope (for more details see *Appendix C: Algorithms*, page A-25).

Table 3-4: Measurement Definitions

Name	Definition
Amplitude	Voltage measurement. The high value less the low value measured over the entire waveform or gated region. *Amplitude = High − Low*
Area	Voltage over time measurement. The area over the entire waveform or gated region in volt-seconds. Area measured above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.
Cycle Area	Voltage over time measurement. The area over the first cycle in the waveform, or the first cycle in the gated region, in volt-seconds. Area measured above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.
Burst Width	Timing measurement. The duration of a burst. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Cycle Mean	Voltage measurement. The arithmetic mean over the first cycle in the waveform, or the first cycle in the gated region.
Cycle RMS	Voltage measurement. The true Root Mean Square voltage over the first cycle in the waveform, or the first cycle in the gated region.

Table 3-4: Measurement Definitions (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Delay	Timing measurement. The time between the MidRef crossings of two different traces, or the gated region of the traces.
Fall Time	Timing measurement. Time taken for the falling edge of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region to fall from a High Ref value (default = 90%) to a Low Ref value (default =10%) of its final value.
Frequency	Timing measurement for the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The reciprocal of the period. Measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.
High	The value used as 100% whenever High Ref, Mid Ref, and Low Ref values are needed (as in fall time and rise time measurements). Calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. The *min/max* method uses the maximum value found. The *histogram* method uses the most common value found above the mid point. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Low	The value used as 0% whenever High Ref, Mid Ref, and Low Ref values are needed as in fall time and rise time measurements. May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method it is the minimum value found. With the histogram method, it refers to the most common value found below the mid point. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Maximum	Voltage measurement. The maximum amplitude. Typically the most positive peak voltage. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Mean	Voltage measurement. The arithmetic mean over the entire waveform or gated region.
Minimum	Voltage measurement. The minimum amplitude. Typically the most negative peak voltage. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region.
Negative Duty Cycle	Timing measurement of the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage. $$NegativeDutyCycle = \frac{NegativeWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$$
Negative Overshoot	Voltage measurement. Measured over the entire waveform or gated region. $$NegativeOvershoot = \frac{Low - Min}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$
Negative Width	Timing measurement of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region. The distance (time) between MidRef (default 50%) amplitude points of a negative pulse.
Peak to Peak	Voltage measurement. The absolute difference between the maximum and minimum amplitude in the entire waveform or gated region.
Phase	Timing measurement. The amount one waveform leads or lags another in time. Expressed in degrees, where 360° comprise one waveform cycle.

Table 3-4: Measurement Definitions (Cont.)

Name	Definition
Period	Timing measurement. Time it takes for the first complete signal cycle to happen in the waveform or gated region. The reciprocal of frequency. Measured in seconds.
Positive Duty Cycle	Timing measurement of the first cycle in the waveform or gated region. The ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage. $PositiveDutyCycle = \frac{PositiveWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$
Positive Overshoot	Voltage measurement over the entire waveform or gated region. $PositiveOvershoot = \frac{Max - High}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$
Positive Width	Timing measurement of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region. The distance (time) between MidRef (default 50%) amplitude points of a positive pulse.
Rise time	Timing measurement. Time taken for the leading edge of the first pulse in the waveform or gated region to rise from a Low Ref value (default = 10%) to a High Ref value (default = 90%) of its final value.
RMS	Voltage measurement. The true Root Mean Square voltage over the entire waveform or gated region.

Measurement Display

The readout area for measurements is on the right side of the waveform window. You can display and continuously update as many as four measurements at any one time. When menus are displayed, the readouts appear in the graticule area. If the menu area is empty, then the readouts are displayed to the far right (see Figure 3-26).

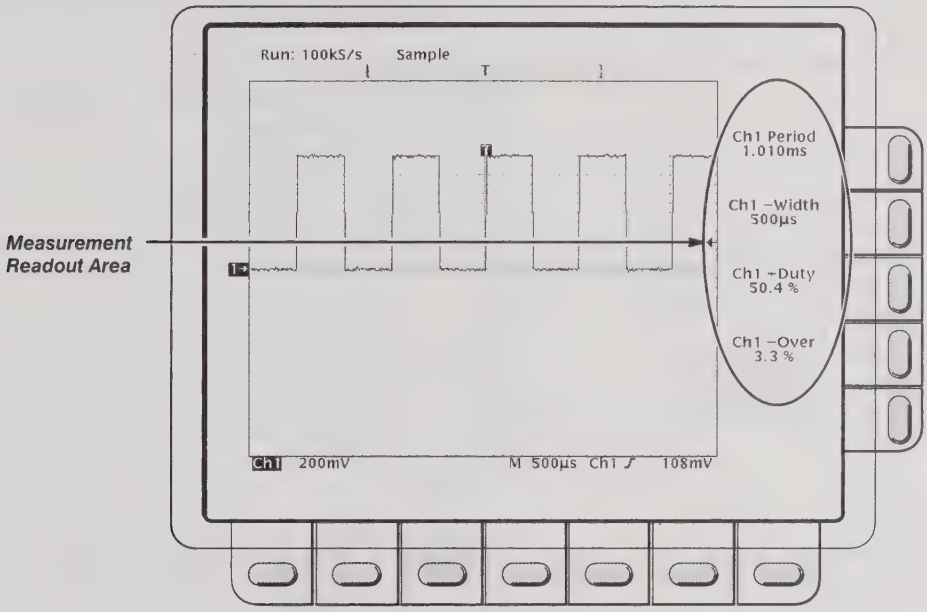


Figure 3-26: Measurement Readouts

Operation

To use the automatic measurements you first need to obtain a stable display of the waveform to be measured. Pressing **AUTOSET** may help. Once you have a stable display, press **MEASURE** to bring up the Measure menu (Figure 3-27).

Selecting a Measurement

Measurements are made on the selected waveform. The measurement display tells you the channel the measurement is being made on.

1. Press **MEASURE → Select Measrmnt** (main).
2. Select a measurement from the side menu.

   The following are hints on making automatic measurements:

   - You can only take a maximum of four measurements at a time. To add a fifth, you must remove one or more of the existing measurements.

- To vary the source for measurements, simply select the other channel and then choose the measurements you want.
- Be careful when taking automatic measurements on noisy signals. You might measure the frequency of the noise and not the desired waveform.

Your digitizing oscilloscope helps identify such situations by displaying a *low signal amplitude* or *low resolution* warning message.

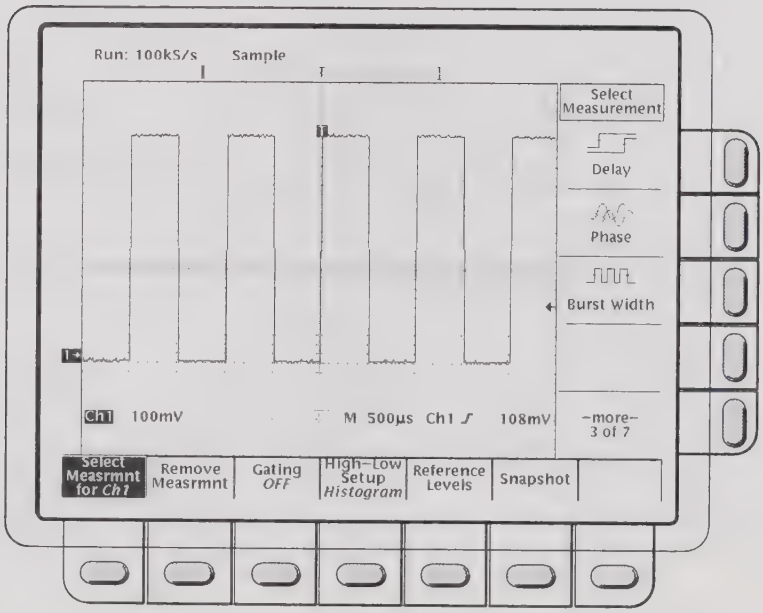


Figure 3-27: Measure Menu

Removing Measurements

The **Remove Measrmnt** selection provides explicit choices for removing measurements from the display according to their readout position.

Measurement 1 is the top readout. Measurement 2 is below it, and so forth. Once a measurement readout is displayed in the screen area, it stays in its position even when you remove any measurement readouts above it. To remove measurements:

1. Press **MEASURE → Remove Measrmnt** (main).
2. Select the measurement to remove from the side menu. If you want to remove all the measurements at one time, press **All Measurements** (side).

Gated Measurements

The gating feature lets you limit measurements to a specified portion of the waveform. When gating is **Off**, the oscilloscope makes measurements over the entire waveform record.

When gating is activated, vertical cursors are displayed. Use these cursors to define the section of the waveform you want the oscilloscope to measure. This is called the *gated region*.

1. Press **MEASURE → Gating** (main) → **Gate with V Bar Cursors** (side) (see Figure 3-28).

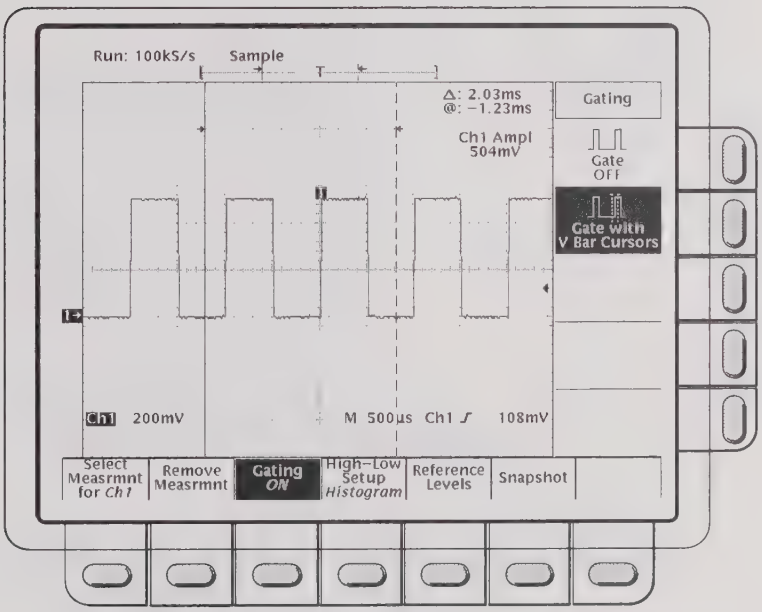


Figure 3-28: Measure Menu—Gating

2. Using the general purpose knob, move the selected (the active) cursor. Press **TOGGLE** to change which cursor is active.

   Displaying the cursor menu and turning V Bar cursors off will *not* turn gating off. (Gating arrows remain on screen to indicate the area over which the measurement is gated.) You must turn gating off in the Gating side menu.

NOTE

Cursors are displayed relative to the selected waveform. If you are making a measurement using two waveforms, this can be a source of confusion. If you turn off horizontal locking and adjust the horizontal position of one waveform independent of the other, the cursors appear at the requested position with respect to the selected waveform. Gated measurements remain accurate, but the displayed positions of the cursors change when you change the selected waveform.

High-Low Setup

The **High-Low Setup** item provides two choices for how the oscilloscope determines the High and Low levels of waveforms. These are *histogram* and *min-max*.

- Histogram sets the values statistically. It selects the most common value either above or below the mid point (depending on whether it is defining the high or low reference level). Since this statistical approach ignores short term aberrations (overshoot, ringing, etc.), histogram is the best setting for examining pulses.
- Min-max uses the highest and lowest values of the waveform record. This setting is best for examine waveforms that have no large, flat portions at a common value, such as sine wave and triangle waves—almost any waveform except for pulses.

To use the high-low setup:

Press **MEASURE → High-Low Setup** (main) **→ Histogram** or **Min-Max** (side). If you select **Min-Max**, you may also want to check and/or revise values using the Reference Levels main menu.

Reference Levels

Once you define the reference levels, the digitizing oscilloscope will use them for all measurements requiring those levels. To set the reference levels:

1. Press **MEASURE → Reference Levels** (main) **→ Set Levels** (side) to choose whether the References are set in % relative to High (100%) and Low (0%) or set explicitly in the units of the selected waveform (typically volts). See Figure 3-29. Use the general purpose knob to enter the values.
   - **%** is the default selection. It's useful for general purpose applications.
   - **Units** is helpful for setting precise values. For example, if you're trying to measure specifications on an RS-232-C circuit, you can set the levels precisely to RS-232-C specification voltage values by defining the high and low references in units.

2. Press **High Ref**, **Mid Ref**, **Low Ref**, or **Mid2 Ref** (side).

   - **High Ref**—Sets the high reference level. The default is 90%.
   - **Mid Ref**—Sets the middle reference level. The default is 50%.
   - **Low Ref**—Sets the low reference level. The default is 10%.
   - **Mid2 Ref**—Sets the middle reference level used on the second waveform specified in the Delay or Phase Measurements. The default is 50%.

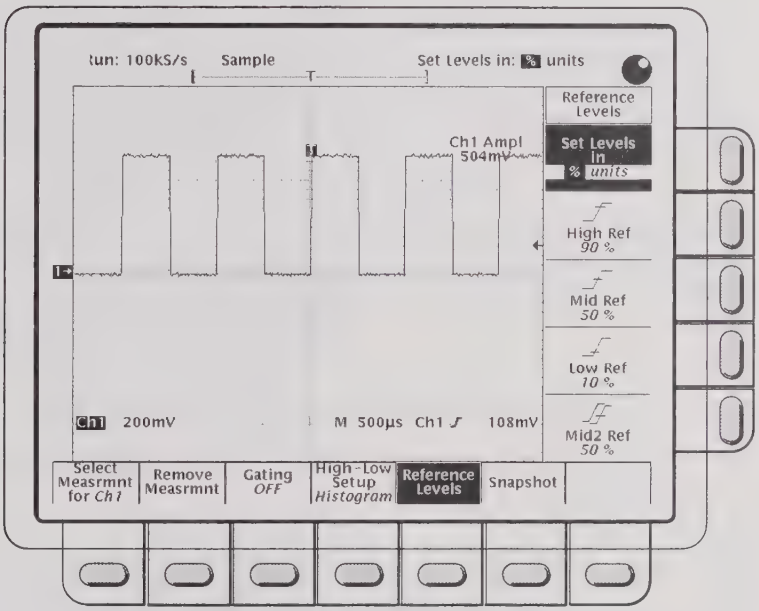


Figure 3-29: Measure Menu—Reference Levels

Delay Measurement

The delay measurement lets you measure from an edge on the selected waveform to an edge on another waveform. You access the Delay Measurement menu through the Measure main menu:

Press **MEASURE → Select Measrmnt** (main) → **Delay** (side). This brings up the Measure Delay main menu (Figure 3-30).

Delay to—To select the waveform you want to measure *to*, use the main menu item **Delay to.** The waveform you are measuring *from* is the selected waveform.

1. Press **MEASURE → Select Measrmnt** (main) → **Delay** (side) → **Delay To** (main) → **Measure Delay to**.

2. Press **Measure Delay to** (side) repeatedly or turn the general purpose knob to choose the delay *to* waveform. The choices are **Ch1**, **Ch2**, **Ch3, Ch4; and Math1**, **Math2**, **Math3**, **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, and **Ref4**.

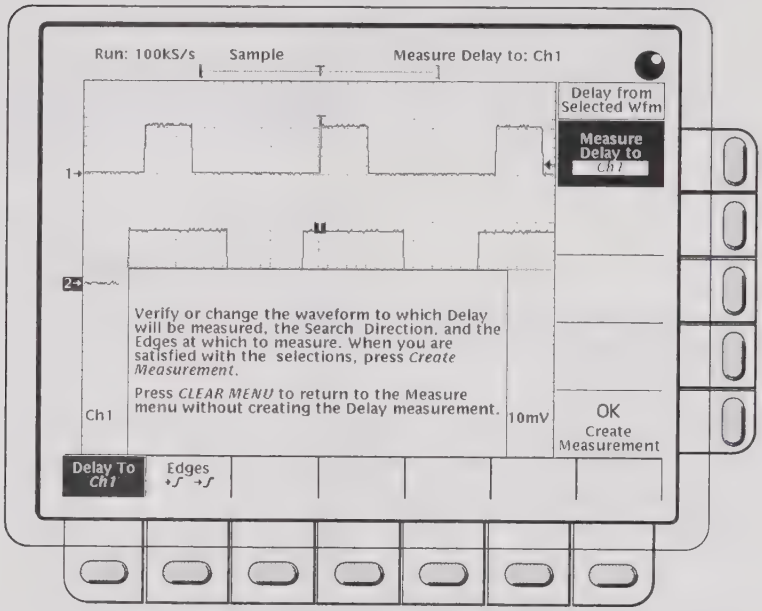

Run: 100kS/s Sample
Measure Delay to: Ch1
Delay from Selected Wfm
Measure Delay to Ch1
Verify or change the waveform to which Delay will be measured, the Search Direction, and the Edges at which to measure. When you are satisfied with the selections, press Create Measurement.
Press CLEAR MENU to return to the Measure menu without creating the Delay measurement.
Ch1
10mV
OK Create Measurement
Delay To Ch1
Edges

Figure 3-30: Measure Delay Menu—Delay To

Delay Edges—The main menu item **Edges** lets you specify which edges you want the delayed measurement to be made between.

Press **MEASURE → Select Measrmnt** (main) → **Delay** (side) → **Edges** (main). A side menu of delay edges and directions will appear. Choose from one of the combinations displayed on the side menu.

The upper waveform on each icon represents the *from* waveform and the lower one represents the *to* waveform.

The direction arrows on the choices let you specify a forward search on both waveforms or a forward search on the *from* waveform and a backwards search on the *to* waveform. The latter choice is useful for isolating a specific pair of edges out of a stream.

Creating the Delay Measurement—Once you have specified the waveforms you are measuring between and which edges to use, you need to notify the digitizing oscilloscope to proceed with the measurement.

Press **Delay To** (main) → **OK Create Measurement** (side).

To exit the Measure Delay menu without creating a delay measurement, press **CLEAR MENU**, which returns you to the Measure menu.

Snapshot of Measurements

Sometimes you may want to see all of the automated measurements on screen at the same time. To do so, use Snapshot. Snapshot executes all of the single waveform measurements available on the selected waveform *once* and displays the results. (The measurements are not continuously updated.) All of the measurements listed in Table 3-4 on page 3-48 except for Delay and Phase are displayed. (Delay and Phase are dual waveform measurements and are not available with Snapshot.)

The readout area for a snapshot of measurements is a pop up display that covers about 80% of the graticule area when displayed (see Figure 3-31). You can display a snapshot on any channel or ref memory, but only one snapshot can be displayed at a time.

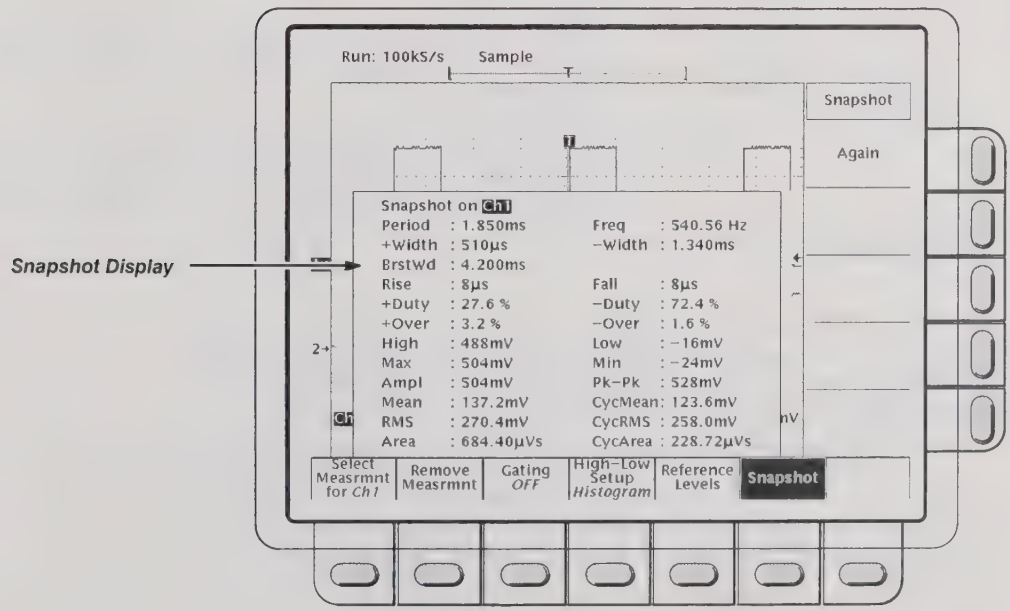


Figure 3-31: Snapshot Menu and Readout

To use snapshot, obtain a stable display of the waveform to be measured. Pressing **AUTOSET** may help.

1. Press **MEASURE** → **SNAPSHOT** (main).

2. Press either **SNAPSHOT** (main) or **AGAIN** (side) to take another snapshot.

   Note the snapshot display tells you the channel that the snapshot is being made on.

3. Push **Remove Measrmnt**.

Considerations When Taking Snapshots

Be aware of the following items when using snapshot:

- Be sure to display the waveform properly before taking a snapshot. Snapshot does not warn you if a waveform is improperly scaled (clipped, low signal amplitude, low resolution, etc.).
- To vary the source for taking a snapshot, simply select another channel, math, or ref memory waveform and then execute snapshot again.
- A snapshot is taken on a single waveform acquisition (or acquisition sequence). The measurements in the snapshot display are not continuously updated.
- Be careful when taking automatic measurements on noisy signals. You might measure the frequency of the noise and not the desired waveform.
- Note that pushing any button in the main menu (except for Snapshot) or any front panel button that displays a new menu removes the snapshot from display.
- Use High-Low Setup (page 3-54), Reference Levels (page 3-54), and Gated Measurements (page 3-53) with snapshot exactly as you would when you display individual measurements from the **Select Measrmnt** menu.

For More Information

See *Appendix c: Algorithms*, on page A-25.

See *Measurements*, on page 2-26.

See *Example 3: Automated Measurements*, on page 1-19.

Probe Accessories

The probe you use and how you connect it to a signal source affect the oscilloscope acquisition of the waveform record. Two important factors are ground lead inductance (introduced by the probe) and the physical layout of your circuit and component devices.

Ground Lead Inductance

For an amplitude measurement to be meaningful, you must give the measurement some point of reference. The probe offers you the capability for referencing the voltage at its tip to ground. To make your measurement as accurate as possible, the probe ground lead should be connected to the ground reference.

However, when you touch your probe tip to a circuit, you are introducing new resistance, capacitance, and inductance into the circuit (Figure 3-32).

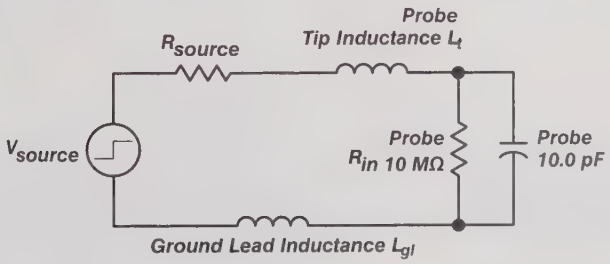


Figure 3-32: A Probe Adds Resistance, Capacitance, and Inductance

For most circuits, the high input resistance of a passive probe has a negligible effect on the signal. The series inductances represented by the probe tip and ground lead, however, can result in a parasitic resonant circuit that may "ring" within the bandwidth of the oscilloscope. Figure 3-33 shows the effect of the same signal through the same probe with different ground leads.

Ringing and rise time degradation may be hidden if the frequency of the induced ringing is beyond the bandwidth of the oscilloscope. If you know the self-inductance (*L*) and capacitance (*C*) of your probe and ground lead, you can calculate the approximate resonant frequency (f_0) at which that parasitic circuit will resonate:

$$f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi \times \sqrt{LC}}$$

Reducing the ground lead inductance will raise the resonant frequency. Ideally, the inductance is low enough that the resulting frequency is above the frequency at which you want to take measurements. For that purpose, the probes include several accessories to help reduce ground lead inductance.

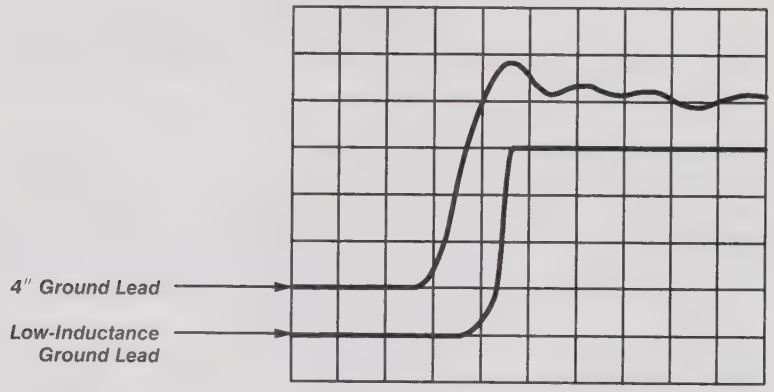


Figure 3-33: Signal Variation Introduced by Probe Ground Lead (1 ns/division)

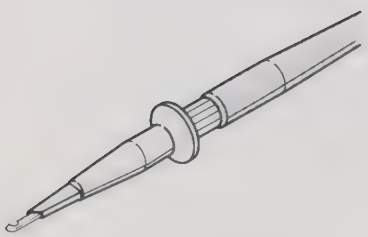
Standard Probe Accessories

The following descriptions explain how to use many of the accessories that came with your probe. Figure 3-34 shows both standard and optional probe accessories and how they attach to your probe.

These accessories either reduce ground lead inductance or make it physically easier to probe different kinds of circuits.

Standard probe accessories include the following items.

Retractable Hook Tip



The retractable hook tip attaches to your signal test point for hands-free operation of the probe. The hook tip attaches to components having leads, such as resistors, capacitors, and discrete semiconductors. You can also grip stripped wire, jumpers, busses, and test pins with the retractable hook.

For maximum flexibility with the hook tip, use one of the six-inch ground leads. For precise measurements at high frequency, however, long ground leads may have too much inductance. In these cases you can use one of the low-inductance probe tip configurations instead.

To remove the hook tip, simply pull it off the probe. Reinstall it by pushing it firmly onto the ribbed ferrule of the probe tip (see Figure 3-34).

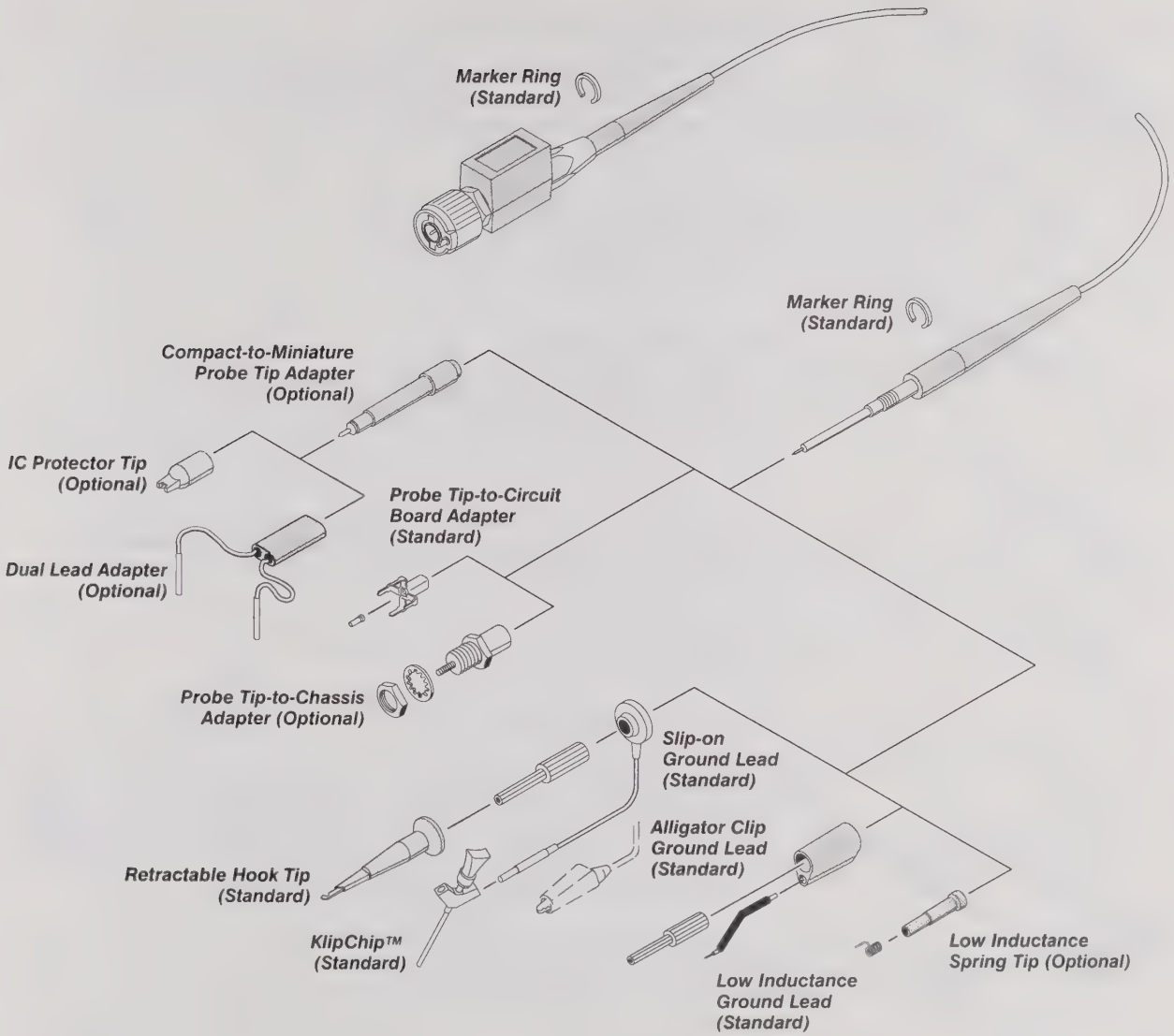
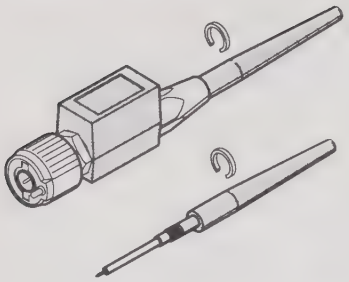
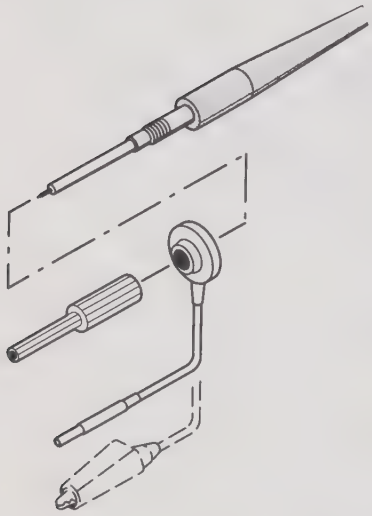


Figure 3-34: Probe Accessories



Marker Rings

The marker rings help you keep track of individual probes and signal sources when you have a complicated test setup. Use the marker rings whenever you want to identify a particular probe.

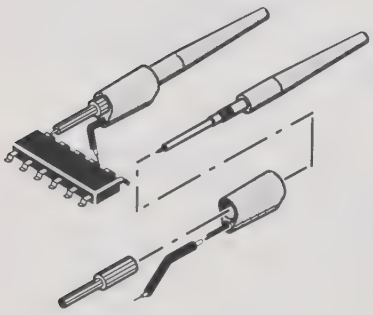


Long Ground Leads

Use long ground leads when a long reach is important and high-frequency information is not. Long ground leads are ideal for quick troubleshooting when you are looking for the presence or absence of a signal and are not concerned with the precision of the measurement.

Because of the high inductance associated with long ground leads, you should not use them for precise measurements above approximately 30 MHz (or for pulses with rise times less than about 11 ns).

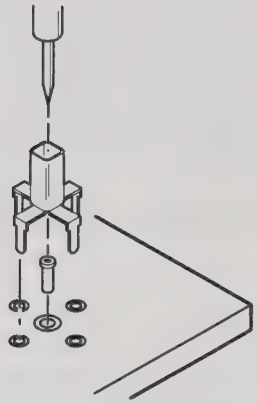
You can choose between a ground lead terminated with an alligator clip and a lead terminated with a square-pin receptacle.



Low-Inductance Ground Lead

Low-inductance ground leads reduce ground lead inductance. Compared to a typical six-inch ground lead with an inductance of approximately 140 nH, the low-inductance tip assembly has an inductance of approximately 32 nH. That means that your measurements will be relatively free of probe-related high-frequency degradation up to approximately 250 MHz.

The low-inductance tip has a partially insulated flexible ground pin that allows you to ground the probe and still have a limited amount of reach with the probe tip. Because the ground lead simply contacts the ground reference (instead of clipping onto it) you can move the probe around your device under test with ease. The assembly is well-suited to densely populated circuit boards and multi-pin connectors.

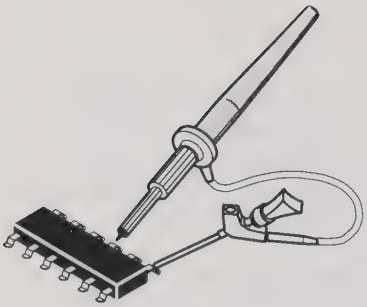


Probe-Tip-to-Circuit Board Adapters

The probe-tip-to-circuit board adapters let you design minimum inductance test points into your next circuit board. That adapter provides maximum performance for the probe, because it virtually eliminates the probe's ground inductance effects.

Instructions for installing the probe tip-to-circuit board adapters are packaged with the adapters. For the best performance and ease of testing, Tektronix strongly recommends that you incorporate the probe tip-to-circuit board adapters (or the probe tip-to-chassis adapters described below) into your next design.

To use your probe with these adapters, unscrew and remove the ribbed ferrule. Use the probe tip directly with the adapter.



SMT KlipChip™

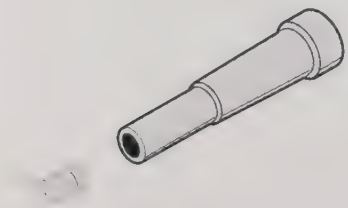
The SMT KlipChip provides hands-free attachment to a physically small signal or ground source. The low profile of the KlipChip allows you to grasp surface-mounted devices that the full-size retractable hook tip can't grip.

You can use the KlipChip as a ground attachment, as a signal attachment, or to attach both to a ground and a signal.

- For a ground attachment, use the long ground lead (described on page 3-62) terminated with a pin receptacle and connect the termination to the pin in one of the KlipChip shoulders.
- For a signal attachment, use a single-lead adapter (similar to the dual-lead adapter described on page 3-65) and connect the termination to the pin in one of the KlipChip shoulders.
- For both ground and signal attachment, combine two KlipChips with a dual-lead adapter, or use a single-lead adapter and a long ground lead.

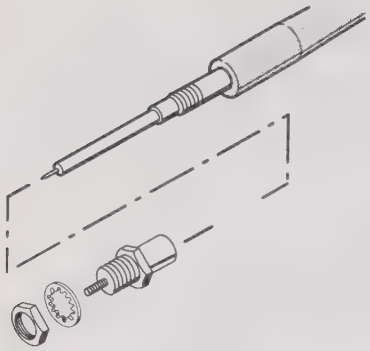
Optional Probe Accessories

Optional probe accessories that you can order include the following:



Low-Inductance Spring Tips

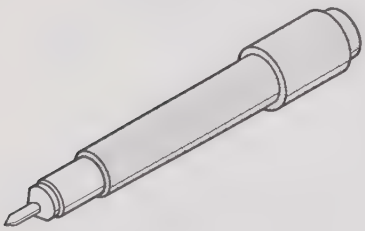
The low-inductance spring tips can be used whenever you are measuring devices with fixed spacings. The spring-tip is ideal for repetitive production use. Select different length springs to match device spacings on a variety of components. Because the spring-tip ground lead simply contacts the ground reference (instead of clipping onto it) you can move the probe around your device-under-test with ease.



Probe-Tip-to-Chassis Adapter

The probe-tip-to-chassis adapter makes your test point accessible without removing instrument covers or panels. It provides an easy-access, low-inductance test point anywhere on your circuit. The probe-tip-to-chassis adapter has the same low inductance properties as the probe-tip-to-circuit board adapter described previously.

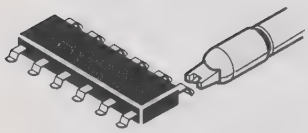
To use your probe with these adapters, unscrew and remove the ribbed ferrule.



Compact-to-Miniature Probe Tip Adapter

The compact-to-miniature probe tip adapter allows you to use accessories that are designed to accept a larger probe tip. These accessories include the IC protector tip, single- and dual-lead adapters, and others.

To install the adapter, unscrew and remove the ribbed ferrule and screw the adapter on in its place. (The IC protector tip discussed below is installed on the adapter tip when shipped. Remove the protector tip by pulling it off before using the adapter with other accessories.)



IC Protector Tip

The IC protector tip simplifies probing inline IC packages. The shape of the IC protector guides the probe tip to the IC pin and prevents accidental shorting of pins by the probe tip. It is used with the compact-to-miniature probe tip adapter. When using that tip, the spacing (pitch) between leads should be greater than or equal to 0.100 inches (100 mils).

Because the IC protector tip prevents you from using the low-inductance tips, you will have to use one of the longer ground leads. For that reason you should take into account ground lead inductance effects on measurements at frequencies greater than about 30 MHz.

Dual-Lead Adapter

The dual-lead adapter makes an easy connection to 0.025 diameter connector pins (Figure 3-35). One lead connects to a ground reference pin, and the other to the signal pin. The adapter prevents burring and pin damage that can result when a retractable hook tip is used on soft pins. A single-lead adapter is also available. These adapters can also be used with the SMT KlipChip to provide access to very small signal and ground test points.

Although the dual-lead adapter is an improvement over the long ground leads in terms of added inductance, measurements at frequencies greater than 30 MHz may require using one of the low-inductance ground leads. Because of the length of the signal lead, the dual-lead configuration is also more susceptible to signal crosstalk than other tip configurations.

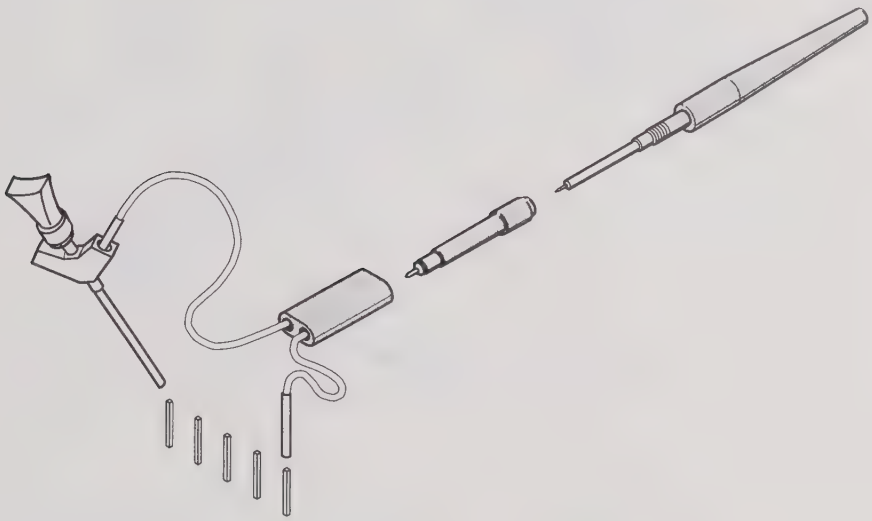


Figure 3-35: Dual-Lead Adapter

Probe Compensation

Passive probes require compensation to ensure maximum distortion-free input to the digitizing oscilloscope and to avoid high frequency amplitude errors (see Figure 3-36).

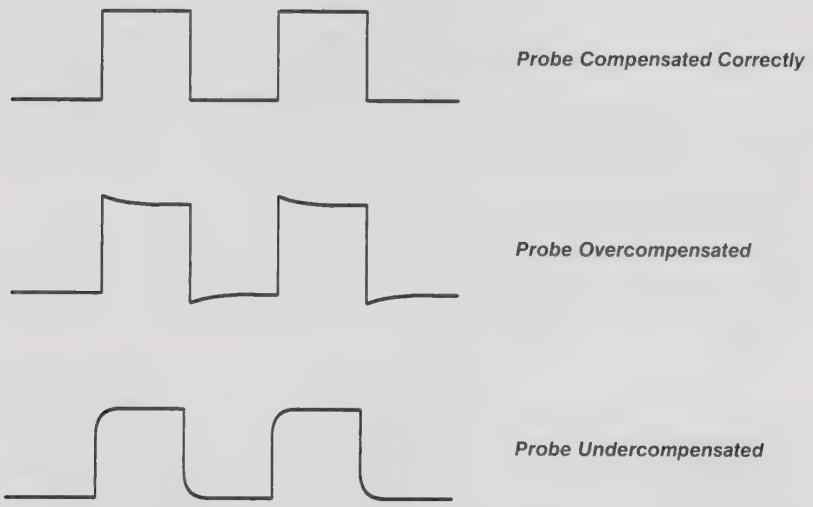


Figure 3-36: How Probe Compensation Affects Signals

Operation

To compensate your probe:

1. Connect the probe to the probe compensation signal on the front panel.
2. Press **AUTOSET**.

NOTE

When you connect an active probe to the oscilloscope (such as the P6205), the input impedance of the oscilloscope automatically becomes 50 Ω. If you then connect a high resistance passive probe (like the P6138) you need to set the input impedance back to 1 MΩ. Step 4 explains how to change the input impedance.

You now need to limit the bandwidth.

3. Press **VERTICAL MENU → Bandwidth** (main) **→ 20 MHz** (side).

4. If you need to change the input impedance, press **Coupling** (main). Then toggle the side menu selection Ω to get the correct impedance.
5. Press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Mode** (main) → **Hi Res** (side).
6. Adjust the probe until you see a perfectly flat top square wave on the display. Figure 3-37 shows where the adjustment is located.

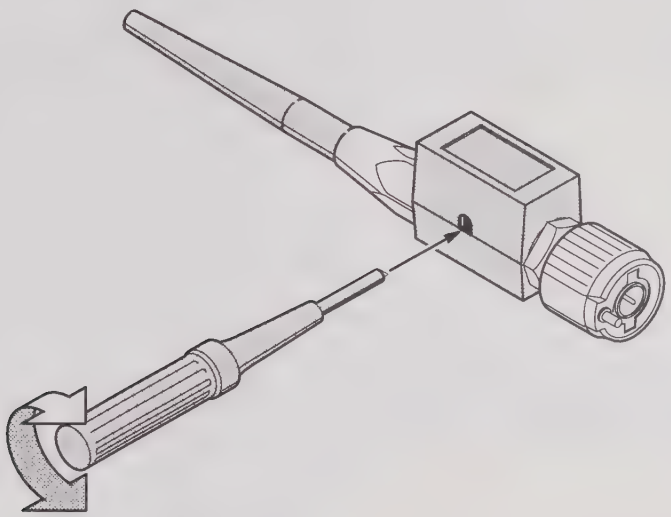


Figure 3-37: P6138 Probe Adjustment

For More Information

See *Probe Accessories*, on page 3-59.

See *Probe Selection*, on page 3-68.

Probe Selection

The probes included with your digitizing oscilloscope are useful for a wide variety of tasks. However, for special measurement situations you sometimes need different probes. This section helps you select the right probe for the job.

Once you have decided the type of probe you need, use Table 3-5 (page 3-5) to determine the specific probe compatible with your TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscope. Or use Table 3-6 (page 3-6) if you want to select the probe by application.

There are five major types of probes: passive, active, current, optical, and time-to-voltage probes. Most of these types are discussed here; see your Tektronix Products Catalog for more information.

Passive Voltage Probes

Passive voltage probes measure voltage. They employ passive circuit components such as resistors, capacitors, and inductors. There are three common classes of passive voltage probes:

- *General purpose (high input resistance)*
- *Low impedance (Zo)*
- *High voltage*

General Purpose (High Input Resistance) Probes

High input resistance probes are considered "typical" oscilloscope probes. The P6138 probes included with the digitizing oscilloscope are passive probes. The high input resistance of passive probes (typically 10 MΩ) provides negligible DC loading and makes them a good choice for accurate DC amplitude measurements.

However, their 8 pF to 12 pF (over 60 pF for 1X) capacitive loading can distort timing and phase measurements. Use high input resistance passive probes for measurements involving:

- Device characterization (above 15 V, thermal drift applications)
- Maximum amplitude sensitivity using 1X high impedance
- Large voltage range (between 15 and 500 V)
- Qualitative or go/no-go measurements

Low Impedance (Zo) Probes

Low impedance probes measure frequency more accurately than general purpose probes, but they make less accurate amplitude measurements. They offer a higher bandwidth to cost ratio.

These probes must be terminated in a 50 Ω scope input. Input capacitance is much lower than high Z passive probes, typically 1 pF, but input resistance is also lower (500 to 5000 Ω typically). Although that DC loading degrades amplitude accuracy, the lower input capacitance reduces high frequency loading to the circuit under test. That makes Zo probes ideal for timing and phase measurements when amplitude accuracy is not a major concern.

Zo probes are useful for measurements up to 40 V.

High Voltage Probes

High voltage probes have attenuation factors in the 100X to 1000X range. The considerations that apply to other passive probes apply to high voltage probes with a few exceptions. Since the voltage range on high voltage probes varies from 1 kV to 20 kV (DC + peak AC), the probe head design is mechanically much larger than for a passive probe. High voltage probes have the added advantage of lower input capacitance (typically 2-3 pF).

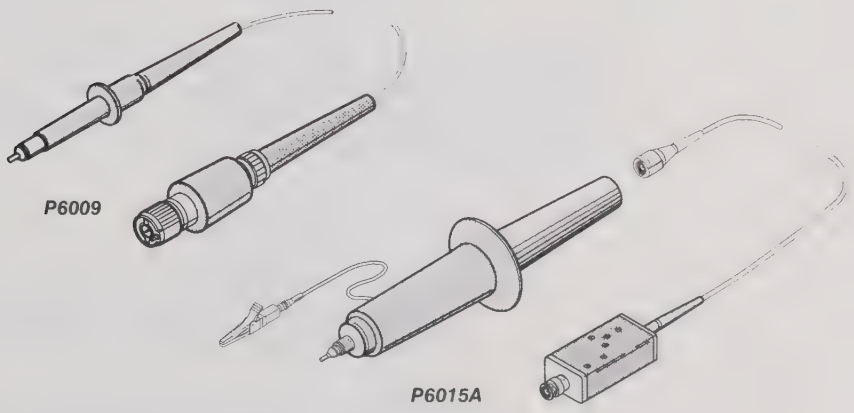


Figure 3-38: The P6009 and P6015A High Voltage Probes

Active Voltage Probes

Active voltage probes, sometimes called "FET" probes, use active circuit elements such as transistors. There are three classes of active probes:

- *High speed active*
- *Differential active*
- *Fixtured active*

Active voltage measuring probes use active circuit elements in the probe design to process signals from the circuit under test. All active probes require a source of power for their operation. Power is obtained either from an external power supply or from the oscilloscope itself.

NOTE

When you connect an active probe to the oscilloscope (such as the P6205), the input impedance of the oscilloscope automatically becomes 50 Ω. If you then connect a passive probe (like the P6138) *you need to set the input impedance back to 1 MΩ.* Vertical Control *on page 3-97 explains how to change the input impedance.*

High Speed Active Probes

Active probes offer low input capacitance (1 to 2 pF typical) while maintaining the higher input resistance of passive probes (10 kΩ to 10 MΩ). Like Zo probes, active probes are useful for making accurate timing and phase measurements. However, they do not degrade the amplitude accuracy. Active probes typically have a dynamic range of ±10 to ±15 V.

Differential Probes

Differential probes determine the voltage drop between two points in a circuit under test. Differential probes let you simultaneously measure two points and to display the difference between the two voltages.

Active differential probes are stand-alone products designed to be used with 50 Ω inputs. The same characteristics that apply to active probes apply to active differential probes.

Fixtured Active Probes

In some small-geometry or dense circuitry applications, such as surface mounted devices (SMD), a hand-held probe is too big to be practical. You can instead use fixtured (or probe card mounted) active probes (or buffered

amplifiers) to precisely connect your instrument to your device-under-test. These probes have the same electrical characteristics as high speed, active probes but use a smaller mechanical design.

Current Probes

Current probes enable you to directly observe and measure current waveforms, which can be very different from voltage signals. Tektronix current probes are unique in that they can measure from DC to 1 GHz.

Two types of current probes are available: one that measures AC current only and AC/DC probes that utilize the Hall effect to accurately measure the AC and DC components of a signal. AC-only current probes use a transformer to convert AC current flux into a voltage signal to the oscilloscope and have a frequency response from a few hundred Hertz up to 1 GHz. AC/DC current probes include Hall effect semiconductor devices and provide frequency response from DC to 50 MHz.

Use a current probe by clipping its jaws around the wire carrying the current that you want to measure. (Unlike an ammeter which you must connect in series with the circuit.) Because current probes are non-invasive, with loading typically in the milliohm to low Ω range, they are especially useful where low loading of the circuit is important. Current probes can also make differential measurements by measuring the results of two opposing currents in two conductors in the jaws of the probe.

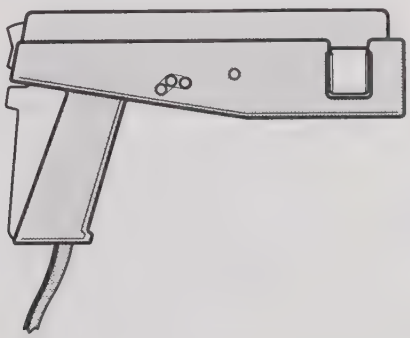


Figure 3-39: A6303 Current Probe Used in the AM 503S Opt. 03

Optical Probes

Optical probes let you blend the functions of an optical power meter with the high-speed analog waveform analysis capability of an oscilloscope. You have the capability of acquiring, displaying, and analyzing optical and electrical signals simultaneously.

Applications include measuring the transient optical properties of lasers, LEDs, electro-optic modulators, and flashlamps. You can also use these probes in the development, manufacturing, and maintenance of fiber optic control networks, local area networks (LANs), fiber-based systems based on the FDDI and SONET standard, optical disk devices, and high-speed fiber optic communications systems.

NOTE

When you connect an optical probe to the oscilloscope, the input impedance of the oscilloscope automatically becomes 50 Ω. If you then connect a high input resistance passive probe you need to set the input impedance back to 1 MΩ. Vertical Control *on page 3-97 explains how to change the input impedance.*

Time-to-Voltage Converter

The instantaneous time-interval to voltage converter (TVC) continuously converts consecutive timing measurements to a time-interval versus time waveform.

Timing variations typically appear as left-to-right motion, or jitter, on an oscilloscope. Time base or trigger holdoff adjustments may improve display stability, but they do not show timing dynamics. The TVC untangles the often confusing waveforms and delivers a coherent real-time view.

The TVC adds three measurement functions to the voltage versus time capability of your oscilloscope: time delay versus time, pulse-width versus time, and period versus time.

Probes by Type

Table 3-5 lists TDS 400 compatible probes classified by type.

Table 3-5: TDS 400 Compatible Probes

Probe Type	Tektronix Model	Description
Passive, high impedance voltage	P6138 (std.) P6101A	10X, 350 MHz 1X, 15 MHz
Passive, low impedance Zo (low capacitance)	P6156 P6562	10X, 3.5 GHz, for 50 Ω inputs (1X, 20X, 100X optional) SMT, 350 MHz
Passive, high voltage	P6009 P6015A	100X,1.5 kV, DC + peak AC 1000X, 20 kV, DC + peak AC
Active, high speed voltage	P6205	DC to 750 MHz FET
Active, differential voltage	P6046	1X/10X, DC to 100 MHz
Active, fixtured voltage	A6501 P6501 Opt. 02	Buffer Amplifier, 1 GHz, 1 MΩ, 10X Microprobe with TekProbe Power Cable, 750 MHz, 1 MΩ, 10X
Current	AM 503S AM 503S Opt. 03 P6021 P6022 CT-1/CT-2 CT-4	AC/DC. Uses A6302 Current Probe. AC/DC. Uses A6303 Current Probe. AC. 120 Hz to 60 MHz. AC. 935 kHz to 120 MHz. Designed for permanent or semi-permanent in-circuit installation CT-1: 25 kHz to 1 GHz, 50 Ω input CT-2: 1.2 kHz to 200 MHz, 50 Ω input Current Transformer for use with AM 503S and P6021. Peak pulse 1 kA, 0.5Hz to 20 MHz with AM 503S
Optical (Opto-Electronic Converters)	P6701A P6703A P6711 P6713	500 to 950 nm, DC to 850 MHz, 1 V/mW 1100 to 1700 nm, DC to 1 GHz, 1 V/mW 500 to 950 nm, DC to 250 MHz, 5 V/mW 1100 to 1700 nm, DC to 300 MHz, 5 V/mW
Time-to-Voltage Converter	TVC 501	Time delay, pulse width and period measurements

Probes by Application

Another way to classify probes is by application. Different applications demand different probes. Use Table 3-6 to select a probe for your application.

Table 3-6: Probes by Application

Probe Type	Telecommunications & High-Speed Logic	Industrial Electronics	Consumer/ Computer Electronics	High Energy Pulsed Power	Certification, Regulatory, & Compliance Testing
Passive, high-impedance voltage	P6138[1] P6101A[1]	P6138[1,2] P6101A[1,2]	P6138[1,2,3] P6101A[1]	P6138[1,2,3] P6101A[1,2]	P6138[1,2,3] P6101A[1,2]
Active, high-speed digital voltage	P6205[2,3]	P6205[2,3]	P6205[2,3]	P6205[2,3]	P6205[2,3]
Low impedance Zo (low capacitance)	P6156[1,2,3]		P6156[1,2,3]		
Passive, high voltage	P6009[1,2]	P6009[1,2,3] P6015A[1,2,3]	P6009[1,2]	P6009[1,2,3] P6015A[1,2,3]	P6009[1,2,3] P6015A[1,2,3]
Active, differential voltage	P6046[2,3]	P6046[2,3]	P6046[2,3]		
Current	AM 503S[2,3] P6021[1,2]	AM 503S[2,3] P6021[1,2] CT4[1,2]	AM 503S[2,3] P6021[1,2]	AM 503S[2,3] P6021[1,2]	AM 503S[2,3] P6021[1,2] CT1/2[2,3] CT4[1,2]
Fixtured	A6501[2,3] P6501[2,3]		A6501[2,3] P6501[2,3]		
Optical	P6701A[2,3] P6703A[2,3] P6711[2,3] P6713[2,3]		P6701A[2,3] P6703A[2,3] P6711[2,3] P6713[2,3]		P6701A[2,3] P6703A[2,3] P6711[2,3] P6713[2,3]
Time-to-voltage converter	TVC 501[2,3]	TVC 501[2,3]	TVC 501[2,3]	TVC 501[2,3]	

[1]*Qualitative signal evaluation*—use when a great deal of accuracy is not required, such as when making go/no go measurements.
[2]*Functional testing*—use when the device under test is being compared to some standard.
[3]*Quantitative Signal Evaluation*—use when detailed evaluation is needed.

Remote Communication

You may want to integrate your oscilloscope into a system environment and remotely control your oscilloscope or exchange measurement or waveform data with a computer. You can control your oscilloscope remotely via the IEEE Std 488.2-1987 (GPIB) interface.

GPIB Protocol

GPIB enables data transfers between instruments that support the GPIB protocols. It provides:

- Remote instrument control
- Bidirectional data transfer
- Device compatibility
- Status and event reporting

Besides the base protocols, Tektronix has defined codes and formats for messages to travel over GPIB. Each device that follows these codes and formats, such as the TDS 420 and TDS 460, supports standard commands. Use of instruments that support these commands can greatly simplify development of GPIB systems.

GPIB Interface Requirements

You can connect GPIB networks in many configurations if you follow these rules:

- No more than 15 devices, including the controller, can be on a single bus.
- Connect one device load every two meters (about six feet) of cable length to maintain bus electrical characteristics. (Generally, each instrument represents one device load on the bus.)
- The total cumulative cable length must not exceed 20 meters (about 65 feet).
- At least two-thirds of the device loads must be turned on when you use your network.
- There must be only one cable path from each device to each other device on your network (see Figure 3-40) and you must not create loop configurations.

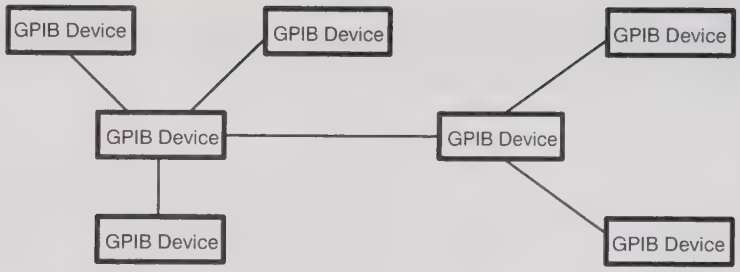


Figure 3-40: Typical GPIB Network Configuration

Cables—An IEEE Std 488.1-1987 GPIB cable (available from Tektronix, part number 012–0991–00) is required to connect two GPIB devices.

Connector—A 24-pin GPIB connector is located on the oscilloscope rear panel. The connector has a D-type shell and conforms to IEEE Std 488.1-1987. You can stack GPIB connectors on top of each other (see Figure 3-41).

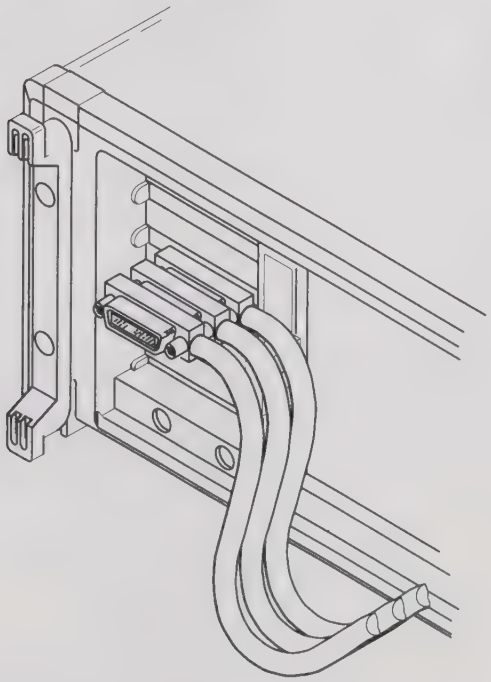


Figure 3-41: Stacking GPIB Connectors

GPIB Parameters

In the Utility menu you need to define two important GPIB parameters: *mode* and *address*. You need to set the mode to talker/listener, talk only, or off the bus. You also need to specify the primary communication address.

Operation

To set up remote communications, ensure that your oscilloscope is physically cabled to the controller and that the oscilloscope parameters are correctly set. Plug an IEEE Std 488.2-1987 GPIB cable into the GPIB connector on the oscilloscope rear panel and into the GPIB port on your controller (see Figure 3-42).

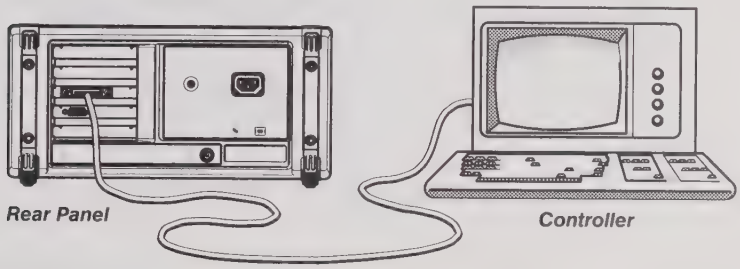


Figure 3-42: Connecting the Digitizing Oscilloscope to a Controller

To set remote communications parameters:

Press **SHIFT UTILITY** → **System** (main) → **I/O** (pop-up).

Port Selection

Now you need to configure the port to match the controller (see Figure 3-43).

Press **SHIFT UTILITY** → **System** (main) → **I/O** (pop-up) → **Port** (main) → **GPIB** (pop-up) → **Configure** (main) → **Talk/Listen Address**, **Hardcopy (Talk Only)**, or **Off Bus** (side)

- Choose **Talk/Listen Address** for normal, controller-based system operation. Use the general purpose knob to define the address.
- Use **Hardcopy (Talk Only)** to use the hardcopy port of your digitizing oscilloscope. Once the port is configured this way, the oscilloscope will send the hardcopy data to any listeners on the bus when the **HARDCOPY** button is pressed.

  If the port is configured any other way and the **HARDCOPY** button is pressed, an error will occur and the digitizing oscilloscope will display a message saying the selected hardcopy port is currently unavailable.
- Use **Off Bus** to disconnect the digitizing oscilloscope from the bus.

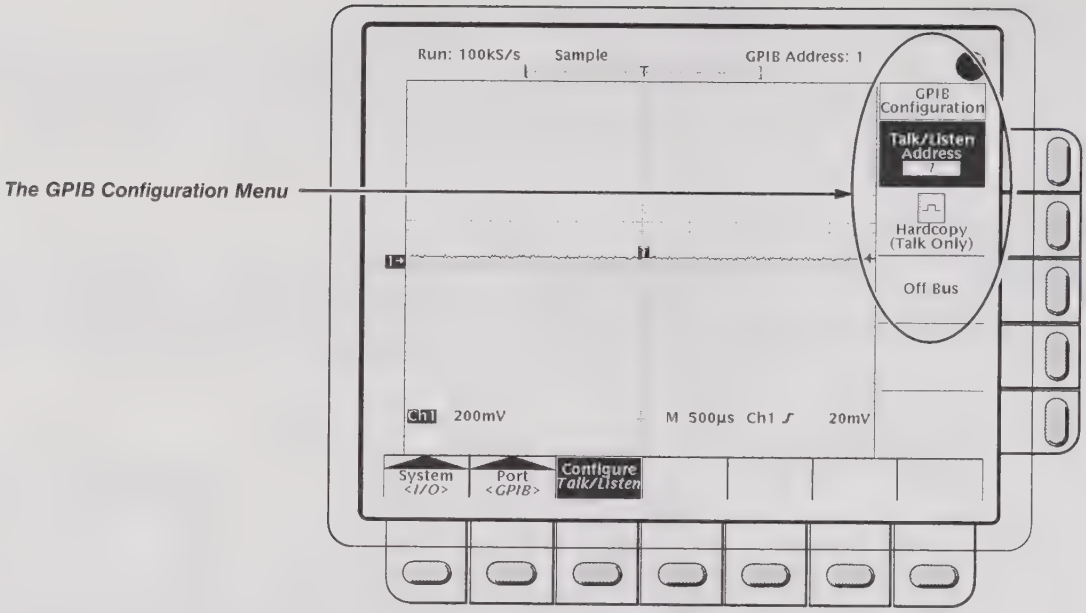


Figure 3-43: Utility Menu

For More Information

See *Hardcopy,* on page 3-30.

See the *TDS Family Programmer Manual*.

See the *TDS Family Option 13 Instruction Manual* (Option 13 equipped instruments only).

Roll

Roll mode lets you see acquired data points without waiting for the acquisition of a complete waveform record. Roll mode gives you interactive feedback. For example, when a sweep is 10 divisions long and the sweep rate is 1 second per division 10 seconds are required to fill the waveform record. Without roll mode you must wait 10 seconds to see that the position control is set wrong. With roll mode you can start seeing results almost immediately.

Roll Modes

There are four roll modes (see Figure 3-44).

- Untriggered roll
- Untriggered roll with single sequence
- Triggered roll
- Triggered roll with single sequence

Untriggered Roll

Untriggered roll mode displays newly acquired data points at the right edge of the waveform record while moving older waveform data points to the left. To stop acquiring data press **RUN/STOP**.

Use untriggered roll to continuously observe a slow process, knowing that you can always see the most recent view of what is happening.

Untriggered Roll with Single Sequence

Untriggered roll mode with single sequence displays newly acquired data points at the right edge of the waveform record while moving older waveform data points to the left. Acquisitions automatically stop after a complete waveform record is acquired.

Use untriggered roll with single sequence to observe the first portion of an experiment for later viewing. For example, at 20 seconds per division at 30K record length there are 60 screens or 600 divisions or 12000 seconds of acquired data points. Untriggered roll with single sequence would capture an experiment over a lunch hour and hold it for later viewing.

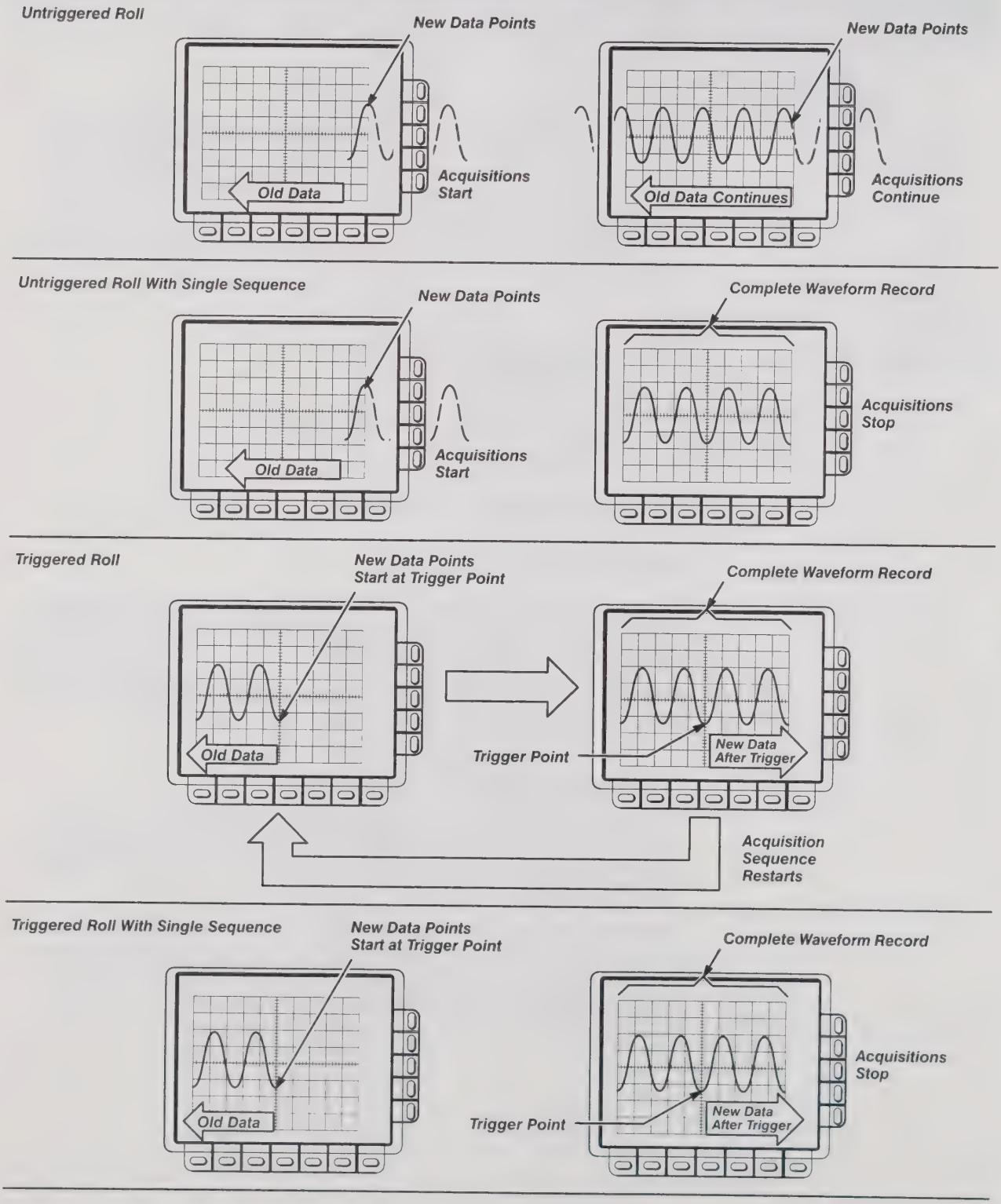


Figure 3-44: Roll Mode (500 Point Record Length)

Triggered Roll

Triggered roll mode displays newly acquired data points at the selected trigger position and moves older waveform data points to the left. When the pretrigger portion of the waveform record is filled and a valid trigger is received, the waveform stops moving left and new data points are displayed to the right of old data points. When a complete waveform record is acquired, the sequence restarts.

Use triggered roll to capture a succession of triggered events in normal interactive debugging.

Triggered Roll with Single Sequence

Triggered roll mode with single sequence displays newly acquired data points at the selected trigger position and moves older waveform data points to the left. When the pretrigger portion of the waveform record is filled the waveform stops moving left and new data points are displayed to the right of old data points. When the waveform record is full acquisitions stop.

Use triggered roll with single sequence to capture one triggered event.

Operation

To turn on roll mode:

1. Set the Horizontal **SCALE** to 50 ms per division or slower.

NOTE

Envelope, Average (acquisition modes), or any of the persistence modes (display modes) inhibit roll mode.

2. If you want an untriggered roll mode, press **TRIGGER MENU** → **Mode** (main) → **Auto** (side). If you want a triggered roll mode, press **TRIGGER MENU** → **Mode** (main) → **Normal** (side). (See Figure 3-45.)
3. If you want a single sequence roll mode, press **SHIFT** → **ACQ MENU** → **Stop After** (main) → **Single Sequence** (side).

To stop acquisitions in roll mode:

If you are not in **Single Sequence**, you must press **RUN/STOP** to stop roll mode. If you are in **Single Sequence**, roll mode acquisitions stop automatically when a complete record is acquired.

To turn off roll mode:

1. Set the Horizontal **SCALE** to 20 ms per division or faster.

NOTE

Envelope, Average (acquisition modes), or any of the persistence modes (display modes) will also turn off roll mode.

2. If you are in a single sequence roll mode and want to leave single sequence mode, press **SHIFT → ACQ MENU → Stop After** (main) → **RUN/STOP** (side).

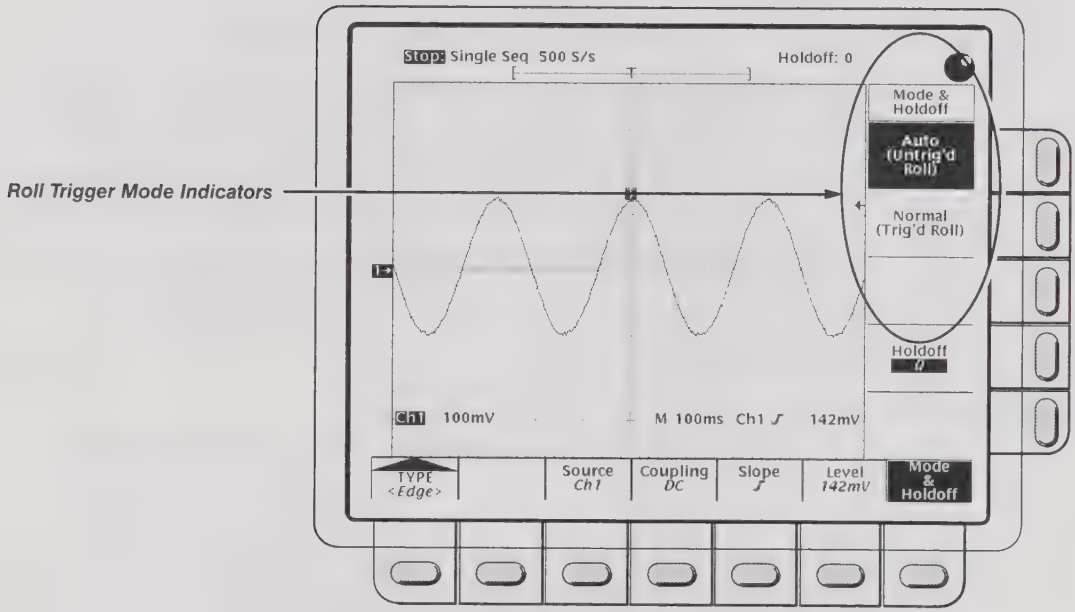


Figure 3-45: Trigger Mode Menu

For More Information

See *Trigger Modes,* on page 2-13.

Saving and Recalling Setups

You may want to save and reuse setups for many reasons. For example, after changing the setting during the course of an experiment, you may want to quickly return to your original setup. You can save and recall up to ten instrument setups from internal oscilloscope memory. The information is retained even when you turn the oscilloscope off or unplug it.

Operation

To save the current setup of the digitizing oscilloscope:

1. Press **SETUP → Save Current Setup** (main).

STOP

Before doing step 2 that follows, note that if you choose a setup location labeled ***user***, you will overwrite the user setup previously stored there. You can store setups in setup locations labeled ***factory*** without disturbing previously stored setups.

2. Choose one of the ten storage locations from the side menu **To Setup 1**, **To Setup 2**, ... (see Figure 3-46). Now the current setup is stored in that location.

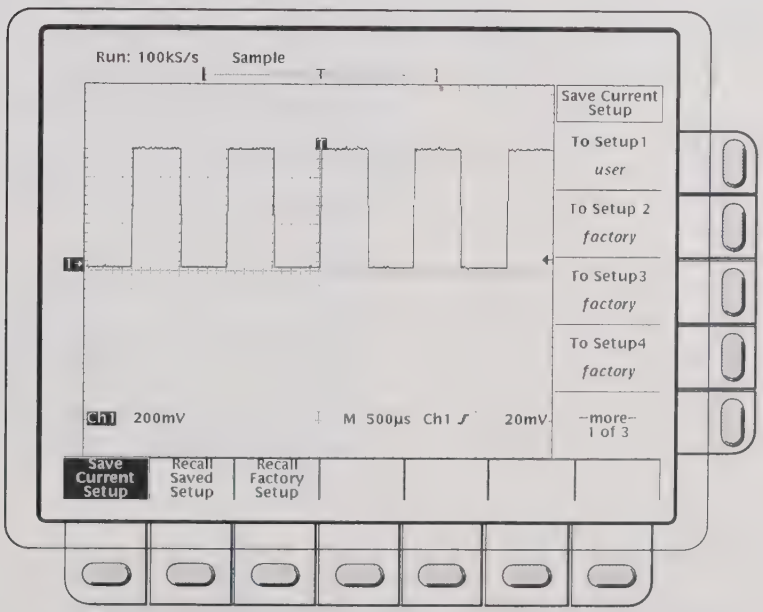


Figure 3-46: Save/Recall Setup Menu

Recalling a Setup

To recall a setup, press **SETUP → Recall Saved Setup** (main) → (**Recall Setup 1**, **Recall Setup 2** ... (side).

Recalling a setup will not change the menu that is currently displayed. If you recall a setup that is labeled ***factory*** in the side menu, you will recall the factory setup. (The conventional method for recalling the factory setup is described below.)

Recalling the Factory Setup

To reset your oscilloscope to the factory defaults:

Press **SETUP → Recall Factory Setup** (main) → **OK Confirm Factory Init** (side).

See *Factory Initialization Settings* on page A-39 for a list of the factory defaults.

Deleting All Setups and Waveforms—Tek Secure®

Sometimes you might use the digitizing oscilloscope to acquire waveforms that are confidential. Furthermore, before returning the oscilloscope to general usage, you might want to remove all such waveforms and any setups used to acquire them. (Be sure you *want* to remove *all* waveforms and setups, because once they are removed, you cannot retrieve them.) To use Tek Secure to remove all stored setups and waveforms:

Press **SHIFT UTILITY → System** (main) → **Config** (pop-up) → **Tek Secure Erase Memory** (main) → **OK Erase Ref & Panel Memory** (side).

Executing Tek Secure accomplishes the following tasks:

- Replaces all waveforms in reference memories with zero sample values.
- Replaces the current front panel setup and all setups stored in setup memory with the factory setup.
- Calculates the checksums of all waveform memory and setup memory locations to verify successful completion of setup and waveform erasure.
- If the checksum calculation is unsuccessful, displays a warning message; if the checksum calculation is successful, displays a confirmation message.

For More Information

See *Example 4: Saving Setups*, on page 1-24.

See *Factory Initialization Settings*, on page A-39.

Saving and Recalling Waveforms

You can store a waveform in any of the four internal reference memories of the digitizing oscilloscope. That information is retained even when you turn the oscilloscope off or unplug it. You can save any combination of different size waveform records as long as they total no more than 60,000 record points.

The digitizing oscilloscope can display up to 11 waveforms at one time. That includes waveforms from the four input channels, four reference waveforms, and three math waveforms.

You will find saving waveforms useful when working with many waveforms and channels. If you have more waveforms than you can display, you can save one of the waveforms and then stop acquiring it. That lets you display another waveform without forcing you to loose the first one.

Operation

To save a waveform, do the following steps:

1. Select the channel that has the waveform you want to save.

Before doing step 2 that follows, note that if you choose a reference memory location labeled ***active*** (see Figure 3-47), you will overwrite the waveform that was previously stored there. You can store waveforms in reference locations labeled ***empty*** without disturbing previously stored waveforms.

2. Press save/recall **WAVEFORM → Save Waveform** (main) → **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, or **Ref4** (side).

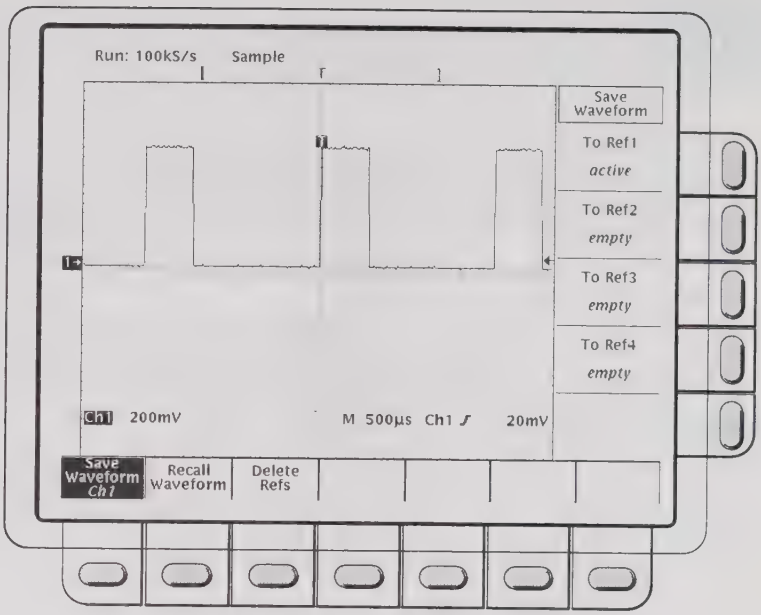


Figure 3-47: Save Waveform Menu

Deleting Waveforms

Deleting All Waveforms and Setups

The simultaneous removal of all stored waveforms and setups using the feature called Tek Secure is described under *Saving and Recalling Setups.* See "Deleting All Setups and Waveforms" on page 3-84.

Recalling a Waveform

To recall a waveform:

Press **MORE** → **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, or **Ref4** (main).

Note that in Figure 3-48, the main menu item **Ref2**, **Ref3**, and **Ref4** appear shaded while **Ref1** does not. References that are empty appear shaded in the More main menu.

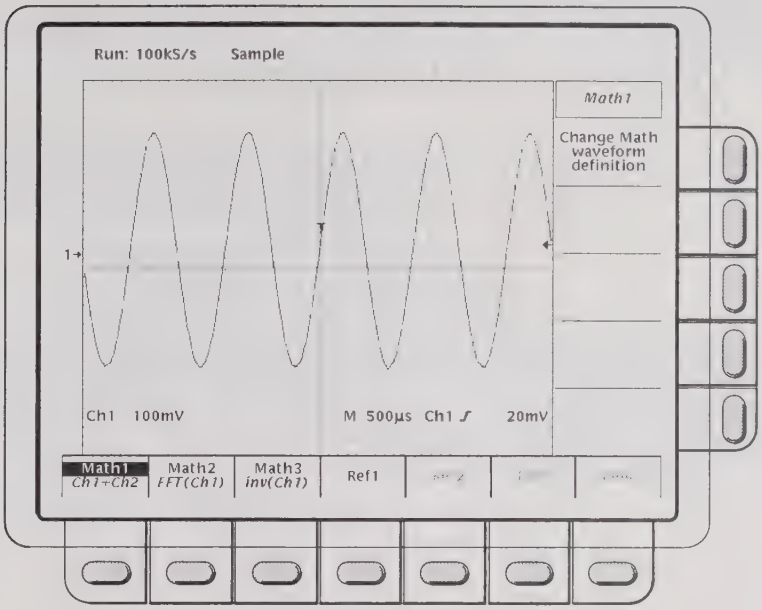


Figure 3-48: More Menu

For More Information

See *Selecting Channels*, on page 3-88.

Selecting Channels

The *selected channel* is the channel that the digitizing oscilloscope applies all waveform-specific activities to (such as measurements or vertical scale and position).

Channel Readout and Reference Indicator

The channel readout shows the selected channel in inverse video in the lower left corner of the display. The channel reference indicator for the selected channel appears along the left side of the display. See Figure 3-49.

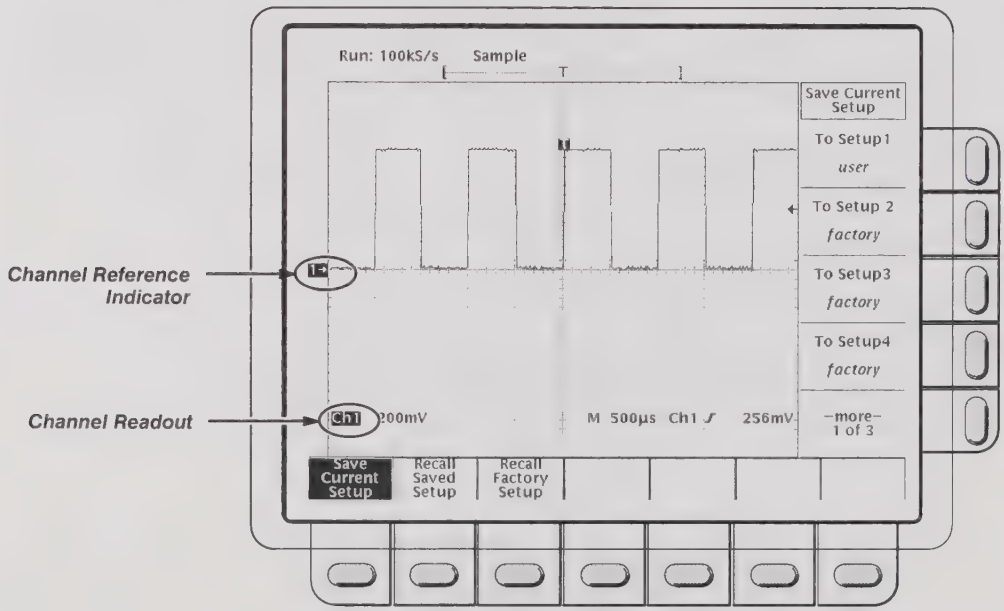


Figure 3-49: The Channel Readout

Channel Selection Buttons

Selecting channels on the TDS 400 series oscilloscopes is straightforward and easy.

The *channel selection* buttons are on the right of the display and are labeled **CH 1**, **CH 2**, **CH 3**, **CH 4**, and **MORE**. They determine which channel is selected. The **MORE** button allows you to select internally stored *Math* and *Ref* waveforms for display and manipulation.

The selected channel is indicated by the lighted LED above each button.

Operation

To selecting a channel:

Pressing **CH 1, CH 2, CH 3**, or **CH 4** turns the channel on if it is not already on.

You do not use the channel selection buttons when triggering. Instead you select the trigger source in the Main Trigger menu or Delayed Trigger menu.

Removing Waveforms From the Display

The **WAVEFORM OFF** button turns OFF the display of the selected channel waveform. It will also remove from the display any automated measurements being made on that waveform.

When you turn off a waveform, the digitizing oscilloscope automatically selects the next highest priority waveform. Figure 3-50 shows how the oscilloscope prioritizes waveforms.

1. CH1
2. CH2
3. CH3
4. CH4

5. MATH1
6. MATH2
7. MATH3

8. REF1
9. REF2
10. REF3
11. REF4

Figure 3-50: Waveform Selection Priority

If you are turning off more than one waveform and you start by turning off a channel waveform, all channels will be turned off before going to the MORE waveforms. If you start by turning off the MORE waveforms, all the MORE waveforms will be turned off before going to the channel waveforms.

If you turn off a channel that is a trigger source, it continues to be the trigger source even though the waveform is not displayed.

For More Information

See *Saving and Recalling Waveforms,* on page 3-85.

See *Waveform Math,* on page 3-106.

Signal Path Compensation

Signal Path Compensation (SPC) minimizes electrical offsets in the vertical, horizontal, and trigger amplifiers caused by changes in ambient temperature and component aging. This allows you to make accurate measurements over a wide ambient temperature range.

You should run an SPC anytime you wish to ensure that the measurements you make are made with the most accuracy possible. You should also run an SPC if the temperature has changed more than 5°C since the last SPC was performed. Also, run SPC before performing the *Performance Verification* and the *Adjustment Procedures*.

NOTE

When making measurements at volts/division settings less than or equal to 5 mV, you must run SPC at least once per week. Failure to do so may result in the oscilloscope not meeting warranted performance levels at those volts/div settings. (Warranted characteristics are listed in Appendix B.)

Operation

1. Power on the digitizing oscilloscope and allow a 20 minute warm-up before doing this procedure.
2. Disconnect any input signals you may have connected from all four input channels.

When doing steps 3 and 4, do not turn off the oscilloscope until signal-path compensation completes. If you interrupt (or lose) power to the instrument while signal-path compensation is running, a message is stored in the oscilloscope error log. If such a case occurs, rerun signal-path compensation (The error message remains in the error log until cleared using special service software).

3. Press **SHIFT UTILITY** → **System** (main) → **Cal** (pop-up) → **Signal Path** (main) → **OK Compensate Signal Paths** (side).

4. Wait for signal path compensation to complete (one to three minutes). While it progresses, a "clock" icon (shown at left) is displayed on-screen. When compensation completes, the status message will be updated to *Pass* or *Fail* in the main menu.
5. Verify the word ***Pass*** appears under **Signal Path** in the main menu. (See Figure 3-51.)

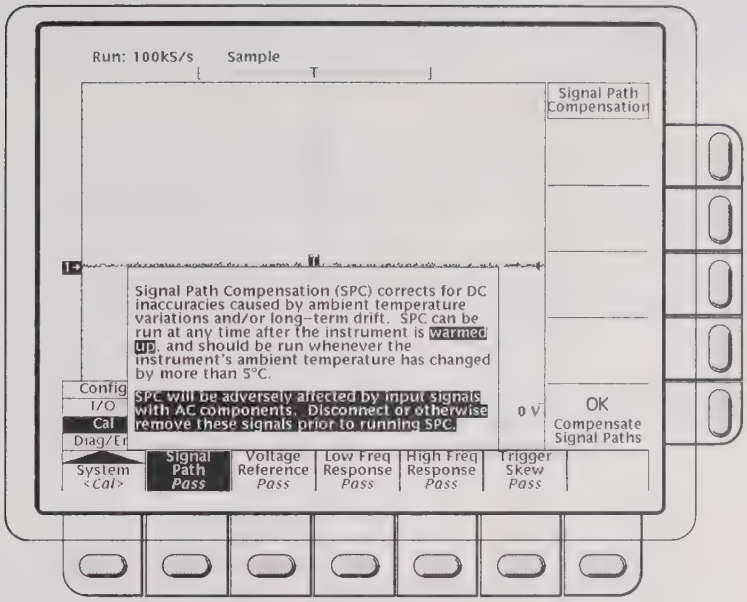

Run: 100kS/s Sample
Signal Path Compensation
Signal Path Compensation (SPC) corrects for DC inaccuracies caused by ambient temperature variations and/or long-term drift. SPC can be run at any time after the instrument is warmed up, and should be run whenever the instrument's ambient temperature has changed by more than 5°C.
SPC will be adversely affected by input signals with AC components. Disconnect or otherwise remove these signals prior to running SPC.
0 V
OK
Compensate Signal Paths
Config
I/O
Cal
Diag/Er
System <Cal>
Signal Path Pass
Voltage Reference Pass
Low Freq Response Pass
High Freq Response Pass
Trigger Skew Pass

Figure 3-51: Performing a Signal Path Compensation

Status

The Status menu lets you see information about the oscilloscope state.

Operation

To operate the Status menu:

Press **SHIFT STATUS** → **System**, **Trigger**, **Waveforms**, or **I/O** (side).

- **System** displays information about the Horizontal, Zoom, Acquisition, Display, Measure, and Hardcopy systems (Figure 3-52). This display also tells you the firmware version.
- **Trigger** displays parameter information about the triggers.
- **Waveforms** displays information about the various waveforms, including live, math, and reference.
- **I/O** displays information about the I/O port(s).

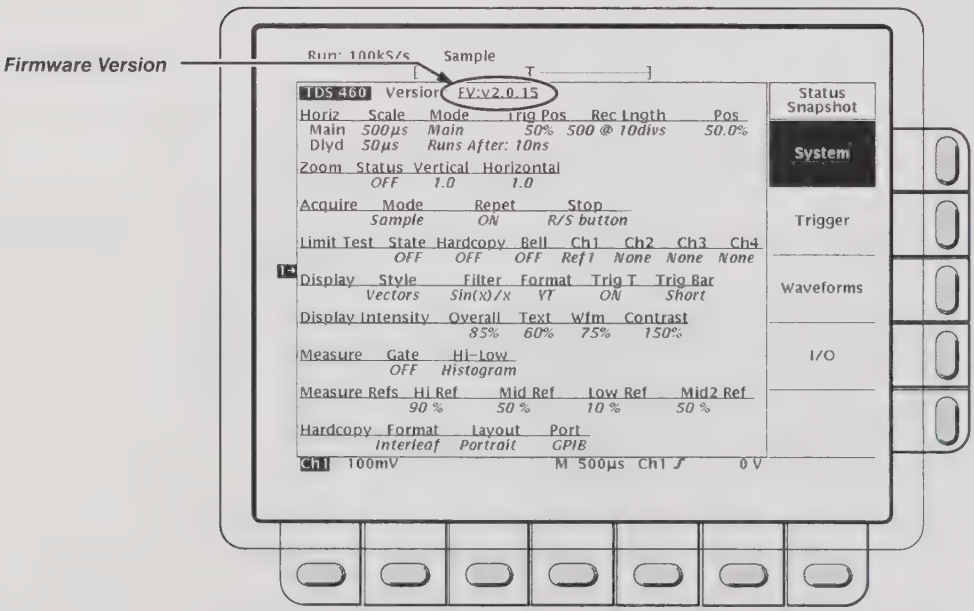

Firmware Version
Run: 100kS/s Sample
TDS 460 Version FV:v2.0.15
Horiz Scale Mode Trig Pos Rec Lngth Pos
Main 500µs Main 50% 500 @ 10divs 50.0%
Dlyd 50µs Runs After: 10ns
Zoom Status Vertical Horizontal
OFF 1.0 1.0
Acquire Mode Repet Stop
Sample ON R/S button
Limit Test State Hardcopy Bell Ch1 Ch2 Ch3 Ch4
OFF OFF OFF Ref1 None None None
Display Style Filter Format Trig T Trig Bar
Vectors Sin(x)/x YT ON Short
Display Intensity Overall Text Wfm Contrast
85% 60% 75% 150%
Measure Gate Hi-Low
OFF Histogram
Measure Refs Hi Ref Mid Ref Low Ref Mid2 Ref
90 % 50 % 10 % 50 %
Hardcopy Format Layout Port
Interleaf Portrait GPIB
Ch1 100mV M 500µs Ch1 ƒ 0 V
Status Snapshot
System
Trigger
Waveforms
I/O

Figure 3-52: Status Menu—System

Triggering

Triggers determine when the digitizing oscilloscope starts acquiring and displaying a waveform. The TDS 400 series has two types of triggers: edge and video.

Although these two triggers are unique, they have some common characteristics that can be defined and modified using the Trigger menu, buttons, and knob. This article discusses these common characteristics.

To learn about the general concept of triggering, see *Triggering* in the *Concepts* section. To learn more about using specific triggers and using the delayed trigger system, see *For More Information* on page 3-96.

Trigger Button and Knobs

The trigger buttons and knob let you quickly adjust the trigger level or force a trigger (see Figure 3-53).

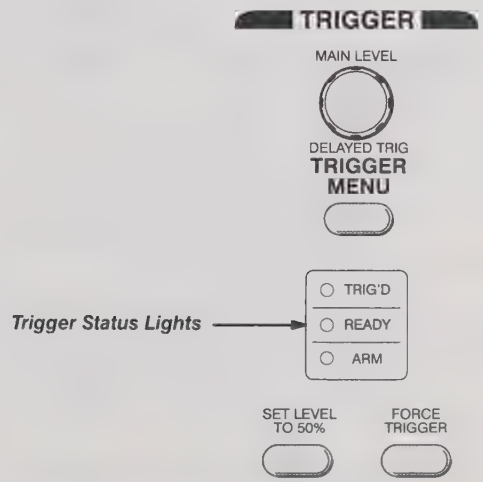


Figure 3-53: TRIGGER Controls and Status Lights

MAIN LEVEL Knob

The **MAIN LEVEL** knob lets you manually change the trigger level when triggering in Edge mode. It adjusts the trigger level (or threshold level) instantaneously no matter what menu, if any, is displayed.

To Set to 50%

You can quickly obtain an edge trigger by pressing **SET LEVEL TO 50%.** The oscilloscope sets the trigger level to the halfway point between the peaks of the trigger signal.

You can also set the level to 50% in the Trigger menu under the main menu item **Level** if Edge is selected.

Note that the **MAIN LEVEL** knob and menu items apply only to the main trigger level. To modify the delayed trigger level, use the **Level** item in the Delayed Trigger menu.

Force Trigger

By pressing the **FORCE TRIG** front panel button you can force the oscilloscope to immediately start acquiring a waveform record even without a trigger event. Forcing a trigger is useful when in normal trigger mode and the input signal is not supplying a valid trigger. By pressing **FORCE TRIG**, you can quickly confirm that there is a signal present for the oscilloscope to acquire. Once that is established, you can determine how to trigger on it (press **SET LEVEL TO 50%**, check trigger source setting, etc.).

The oscilloscope recognizes and acts upon **FORCE TRIG** even when you press it before the end of pretrigger holdoff. However, the button has no effect if the acquisition system is stopped.

Single Trigger

If your goal is to act on the next valid trigger event and then stop, press **SHIFT FORCE TRIG**. Now you can initiate the single sequence of acquisitions by pressing the **RUN/STOP** button.

To leave Single Trig mode, press **SHIFT ACQUIRE MENU → Stop After** (main) → **RUN/STOP Button Only** (side).

See the description under "Stop After" on page 3-6 for further discussion of single sequence acquisitions.

Readouts

The digitizing oscilloscope has display readouts and status lights dedicated to monitoring the trigger circuitry.

Trigger Status Lights

There are three status lights in the Trigger control area (Figure 3-53) indicating the state of the trigger circuitry. The lights are labeled **TRIG'D**, **READY**, and **ARM**.

- When **TRIG'D** is lighted, it means the digitizing oscilloscope has recognized a valid trigger and is filling the posttrigger portion of the waveform.

- When **READY** is lighted, it means the digitizing oscilloscope can accept a valid trigger event and it is waiting for that event to occur.
- When **ARM** is lighted, it means the trigger circuitry is filling the pretrigger portion of the waveform record.
- When both **TRIG'D** and **READY** are lighted, it means the digitizing oscilloscope has recognized a valid main trigger and is waiting for a delayed trigger. When it recognizes a delayed trigger it will fill in the posttrigger portion of the delayed waveform.

Trigger Display Readout

At the bottom of the display, the Trigger readout shows some of the key trigger parameters (Figure 3-54). The readouts are different for edge and video triggers.

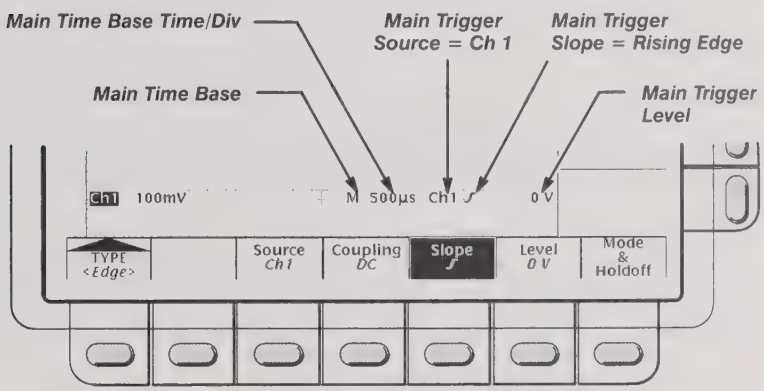


Figure 3-54: Example Trigger Readouts

The record view at the top of the display shows the location of the trigger signal in the waveform record and with respect to the display (see Figure 3-55).

Trigger Position and Level Indicators

In addition to the numerical readouts of trigger level, there are also graphic indicators of trigger position and level which you can optionally display. These indicators are the trigger point indicator, the long trigger level bar, and the short trigger level bar. Figure 3-55 shows the trigger point indicator and short-style trigger level bar.

The trigger point indicator shows position. It can be positioned horizontally off screen, especially with long record length settings. The trigger level bar shows only the trigger level, and it remains on screen regardless of the horizontal position as long as the channel providing the trigger source is displayed.

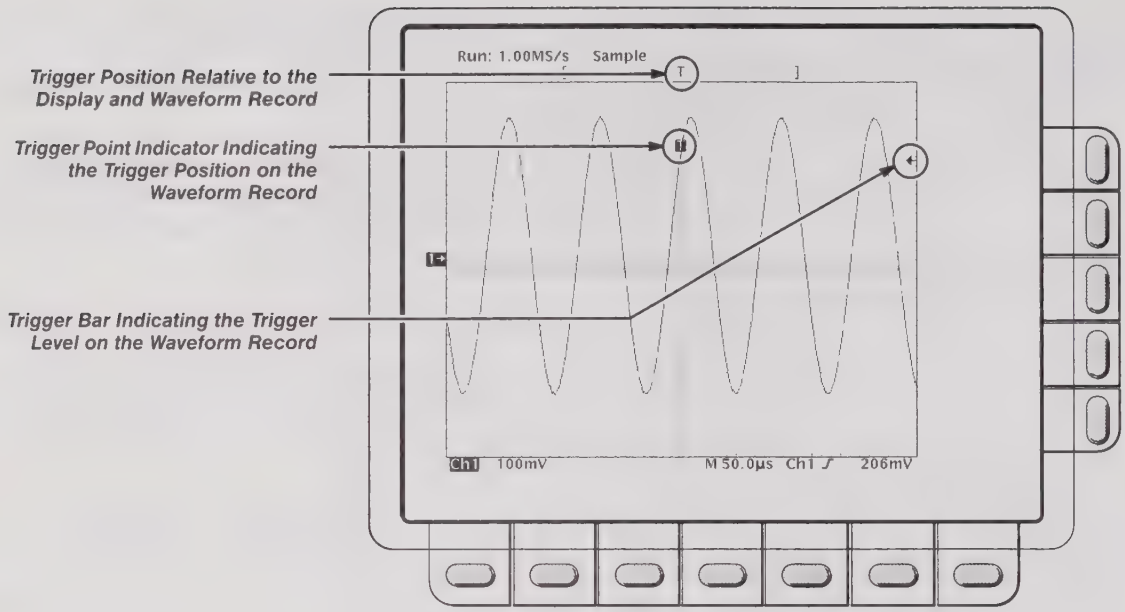

Trigger Position Relative to the Display and Waveform Record
Trigger Point Indicator Indicating the Trigger Position on the Waveform Record
Trigger Bar Indicating the Trigger Level on the Waveform Record
Run: 1.00MS/s Sample
Ch1 100mV
M 50.0µs Ch1 ƒ 206mV

Figure 3-55: Record View, Trigger Position, and Trigger Level Bar Readouts

Both the trigger point indicator and level bar are displayed from the Display menu. See *Display Readout* on page 3-22 for more information.

Trigger Menu

Each trigger type (edge and video) has its own main trigger menu, which is described in a separate part of this section (see *For More Information*).

To select the trigger type, press **TRIGGER MENU → Type** (main) **→ Edge**.

For More Information

See *Delay Triggering*, on page 3-16.

See *Edge Triggering*, on page 3-26.

See *Video Triggering*, on page 3-100.

See *Triggering*, on page 2-11.

Vertical Control

You can control the vertical position and scale of the selected waveform using the vertical menu and knobs.

Vertical Knobs

By changing the vertical scale, you can focus on a particular portion of a waveform. By adjusting the vertical position, you can move the waveform up or down on the display. That is particularly useful when you are comparing two or more waveforms.

To change the vertical scale and position, use the vertical **POSITION** and vertical **SCALE** knobs. The vertical controls only affect the selected waveform.

The **POSITION** knob simply adds screen divisions to the reference point of the selected waveform. Adding divisions moves the waveform up and subtracting them moves the waveform down. You also can adjust the waveform position using the offset option in the Vertical menu (discussed later in this article).

If you want the **POSITION** knob to move faster, press the **SHIFT** button. When the light next to the **SHIFT** button is on and the display says **Coarse Knobs** in the upper right corner, the **POSITION** knob speeds up significantly.

Vertical Readouts

The *Vertical readout* at the lower part of the display shows each displayed channel (the selected channel is in inverse video), and its volts/division setting (see Figure 3-56).

Vertical Menu

The Vertical menu (Figure 3-56) lets you select the coupling, bandwidth, and offset for the selected waveform. It also lets you numerically change the position or scale instead of using the vertical knobs.

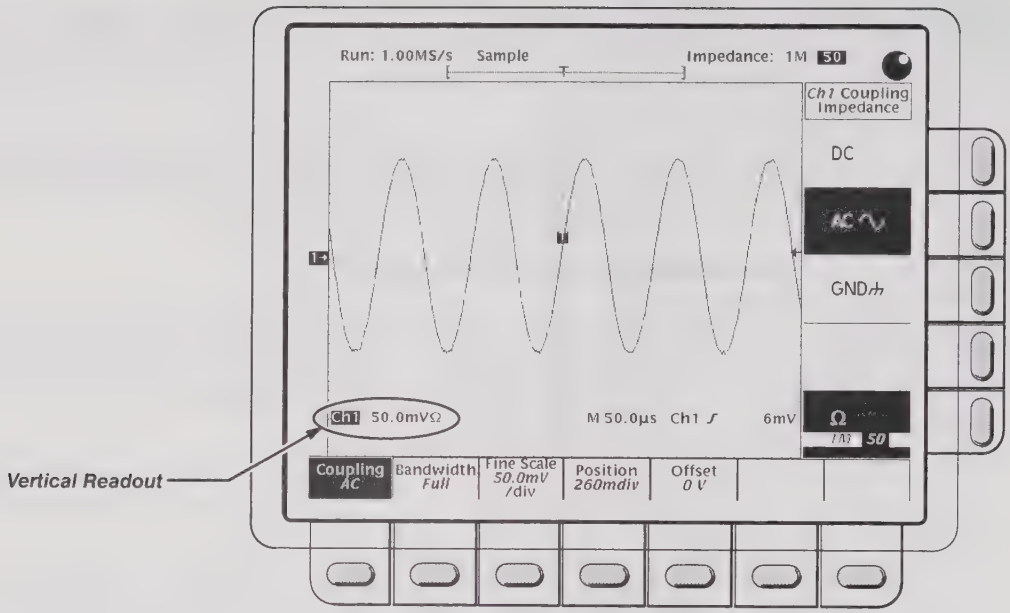


Figure 3-56: Vertical Readouts and Channel Menu

Coupling

To choose the type of coupling for attaching the input signal to the vertical attenuator for the selected channel and to set its input impedance:

Press **VERTICAL MENU → Coupling** (main) → **DC**, **AC**, **GND**, or Ω (side).

DC
- **DC** coupling shows both the AC and DC components of an input signal.

AC ∿
- **AC** coupling shows only the alternating components of an input signal.

GNDh
- Ground (**GND**) coupling disconnects the input signal from the acquisition.

Ω
- Input impedance lets you select either 1 MΩ or 50 Ω impedance.

NOTE

If you select 50 Ω impedance with AC coupling, the digitizing oscilloscope will not accurately display frequencies under 200 kHz.

Also, when you connect an active probe to the oscilloscope (such as the P6205), the input impedance of the oscilloscope automatically becomes 50 Ω. If you then connect a passive probe (like the P6138) you need to set the input impedance back to 1 MΩ.

Bandwidth

To eliminate eliminate the higher frequency components, change the bandwidth of the selected channel:

Press **VERTICAL MENU → Bandwidth** (main) →

Fine Scale

Press **VERTICAL MENU → Fine Scale** (main) to make fine adjustments to the vertical scale using the general purpose knob.

Position

Press **VERTICAL MENU → Position** (main) to let the general purpose knob control the vertical position. Press **Set to 0 divs** (side) if you want to reset the reference point of the selected waveform to the center of the display.

Offset

Offset lets you subtract DC bias from the waveform, so the oscilloscope can acquire the exact part of the waveform you are interested in.

Offset is useful when you want to examine a waveform with a DC bias. For example, you might be trying to look at a small ripple on a power supply output. It may be a 100 mV ripple on top of a 15 V supply. With offset range you can display the ripple and scale it to meet your needs.

To use offset, press **VERTICAL MENU → Offset** (main). Use the general purpose knob to control the vertical offset. Press **Set to 0 V** (side) if you want to reset the offset to zero.

For More Information

See *Acquisition*, on page 2-17.

See *Scaling and Positioning Waveforms*, on page 2-22.

Video Triggering

The optional Video Trigger menu gives you a variety of selections for triggering on a video signal.

A *video trigger* event occurs when a video signal generates a horizontal or vertical sync pulse. For more information, see *Triggering* on page 2-11.

Operation

The Video Trigger menu lets you select the source, polarity, class, mode, and holdoff. It also gives you the option to delay by lines or time and lets you trigger on the first field, second field, or both.

To bring up the Video Trigger menu:

Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Type** (main) → **Video** (side) (see Figure 3-57).

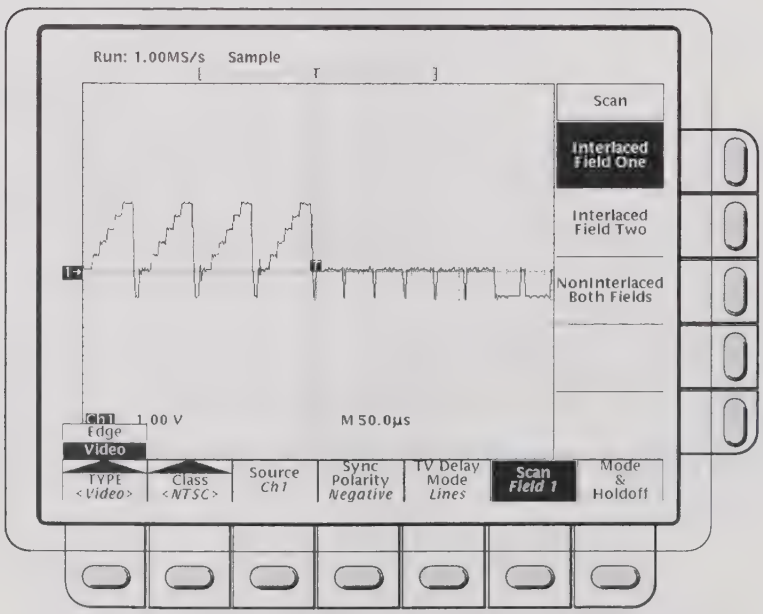


Figure 3-57: Main Trigger Menu—Video Type

Video Class

Using the Class option you can select predefined setups (NTSC, PAL, or SECAM) or customize the setup.

Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Type** (main) → **Video** (pop-up)**Class**, (main) → **NTSC**, **PAL**, **SECAM**, or **Custom** (pop-up) (Figure 3-58).

- **NTSC** has a line rate of 525 lines per frame and a field rate of 60 Hz.
- **PAL** has a line rate of 625 lines per frame and a field rate of 50 Hz.
- **SECAM** has a line rate of 625 lines per frame and a field rate of 50 Hz.
- **Custom** lets you specify the frequency range of the video signal. The different ranges are listed in the Scan Parameter side menu (discussed further on in this article).

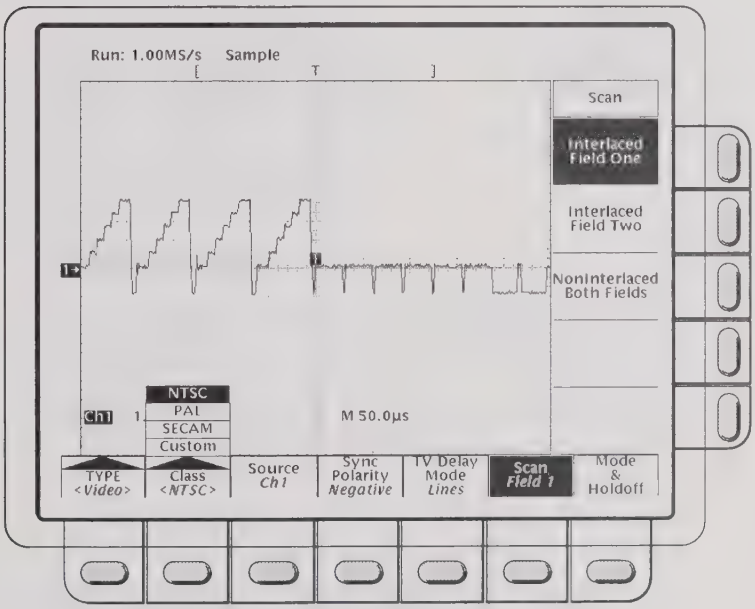


Figure 3-58: Video Trigger Menu—Class

Source

You need to select which source you want the trigger to come from.

Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Source** (main) → **Ch1**, **Ch2**, **Ch3**, or **Ch4** (side).

Sync Polarity

Negative polarity is the standard for horizontal and vertical synch pulses. However, you may want to trigger on a positive polarity pulse when probing circuitry that inverts the video signal. You can easily change the polarity by using the **Sync Polarity** option.

Press the **TRIGGER MENU** → **Sync Polarity** (main) → **Neg Sync** or **Pos Sync** (side).

TV Delay Mode

You specify the delay for a video trigger with the **TV Delay Mode** option. Since video signals are composed of line information and other time specified components, the **TV Delay Mode** option lets you delay by lines or time (see Figure 3-59).

Press the **TRIGGER MENU** → **TV Delay Mode** (main) → **Delay by Lines** or **Delay by Time** (side). Use the general purpose knob to enter the value.

If you want to enter a large number using the general purpose knob, press the **SHIFT** button before turning the knob. When the light next to the **SHIFT** button is on and the display says **Coarse Knobs** in the upper right corner, the general purpose knob speeds up significantly.

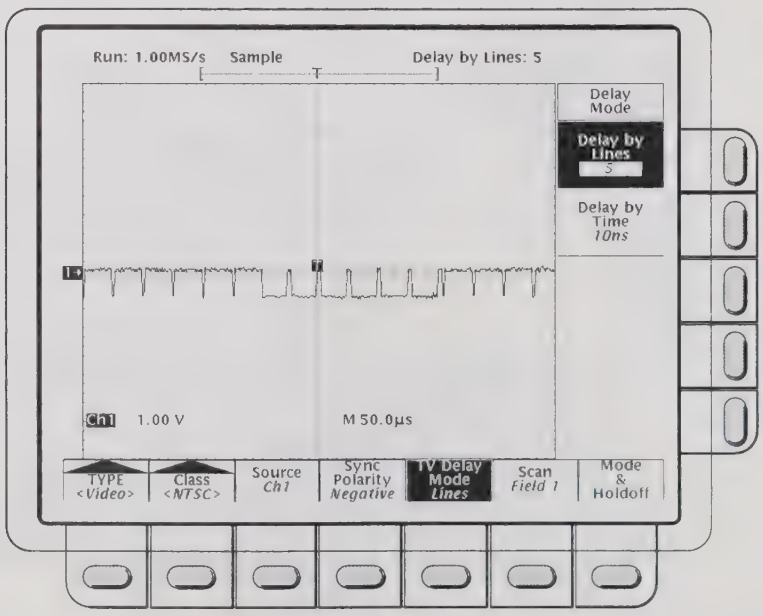


Figure 3-59: Video Trigger Menu—TV Delay Mode

Scan

If you selected **NTSC**, **PAL**, or **SECAM** in the Class menu, there is a Scan menu that lets you choose between triggering on the first field, the second field, or both.

Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Scan** (main) → **Interlaced Field One**, **Interlaced Field Two**, or **NonInterlaced Both Fields** (side) (see Figure 3-60).

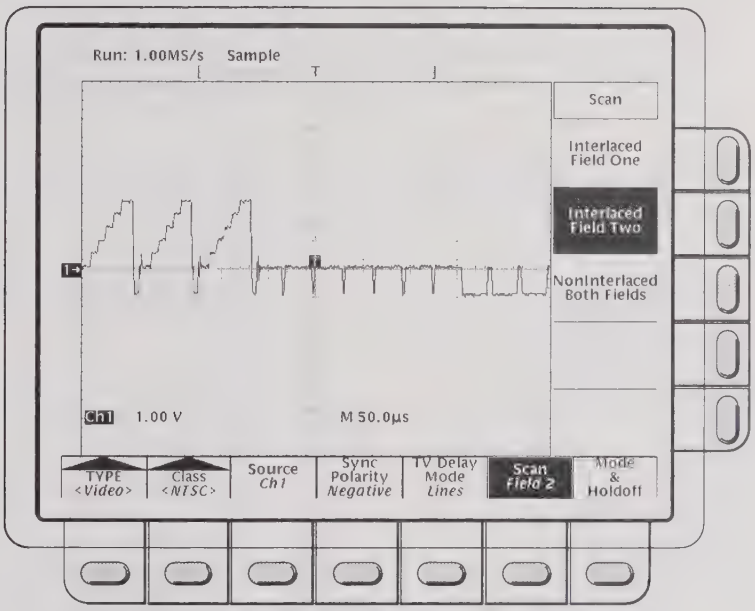


Figure 3-60: Video Trigger—Scan Parameter

- If you choose **Interlaced Field One**, the digitizing oscilloscope will always trigger on the start of the first field in an interlaced frame.
- If you choose **Interlaced Field Two**, the digitizing oscilloscope will always trigger on the first line of the second field in an interlaced frame.
- If you choose **NonInterlaced Both Fields**, the digitizing oscilloscope alternates between triggering on the start of field one and field two.

Scan Rate & Interlace

If you selected **Custom** in the Class menu, the Scan Rate & Interlace option will list several frequency range options (see Figure 3-61).The options are: **Rate 1** (15–20 kHz), **Rate 2** (20–25 kHz), **Rate 3** (25–35 kHz), and **Rate 4** (35–64 kHz).

By toggling the button next to the **Interlaced** option, you can trigger on interlaced field one, interlaced field two, or both fields noninterlaced.

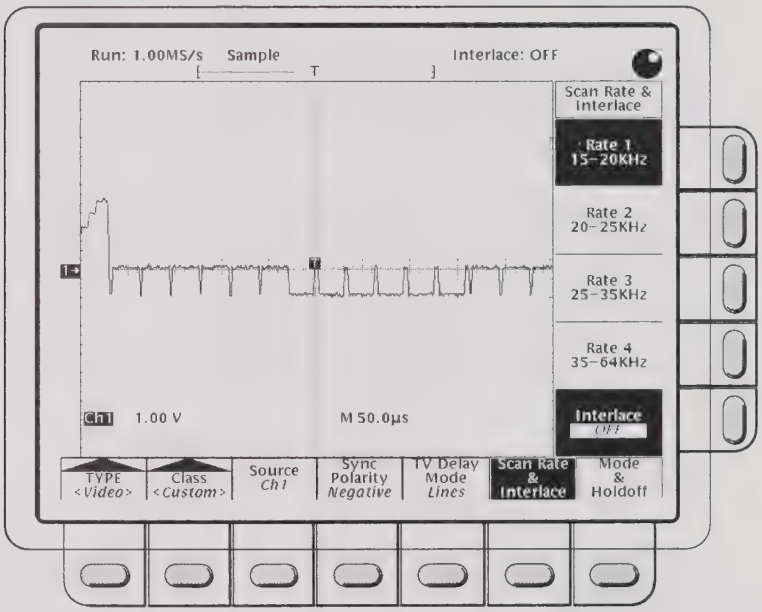


Figure 3-61: Video Trigger—Scan Rate & Interlace

Mode & Holdoff

You can change the holdoff time and select the trigger mode using this menu item. See Triggering on page 2-11 for more details on mode and holdoff.

Press the **TRIGGER MENU → Mode & Holdoff** (main) → **Auto** or **Normal** (side) (see Figure 3-62).

- In **Auto** mode the oscilloscope acquires a waveform even if a trigger doesn't occur.
- In **Normal** mode the oscilloscope acquires a waveform only if there is a valid trigger.

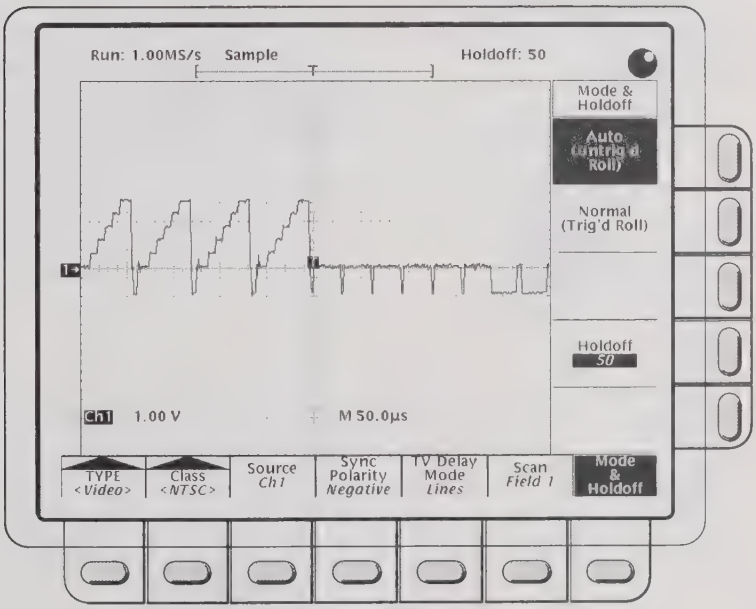


Figure 3-62: Video Trigger Menu—Mode & Holdoff

To change the holdoff time, press the **Holdoff** (side). Enter the value using the general purpose knob. If you want to enter a large number, press the **SHIFT** button before turning the knob. When the light next to the **SHIFT** button is on and the display says **Course Knobs** in the upper right corner, the general purpose knob speeds up significantly.

There are different default values for holdoff to insure a stable color burst in the sync pulse. These holdoff values depend on whether you select **NTSC**, **PAL**, or **SECAM** and if you trigger on interlaced field one or two.

For More Information

See *Triggering*, on page 2-11.

Waveform Math

You can mathematically manipulate your waveforms. For example, you might have a waveform clouded by background noise. You can obtain a cleaner waveform by subtracting the background noise from your original waveform.

This manual describes the standard waveform math features (invert, add, subtract, and multiply). See the *TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual,* if your oscilloscope is equipped with that option.

Operation

To perform waveform math, press the **MORE** button to bring up the More menu (Figure 3-63). The More menu allows you to display, define, and manipulate math functions.

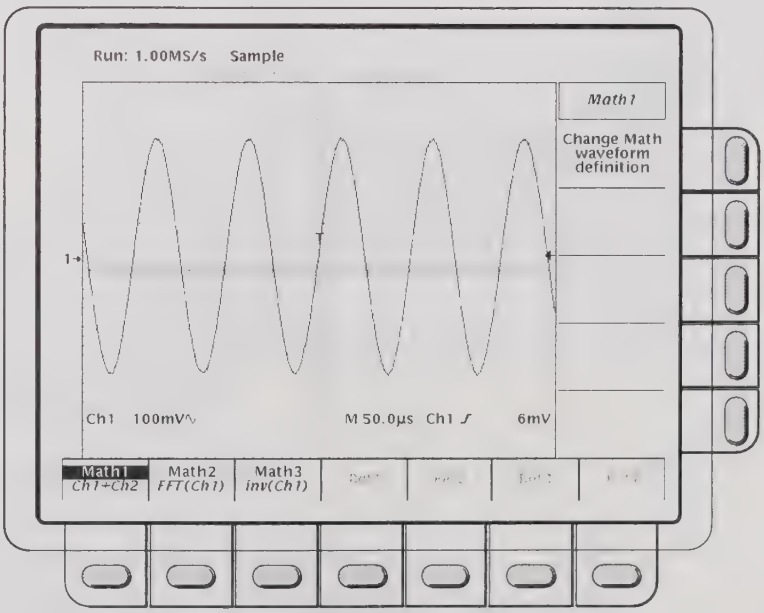


Figure 3-63: More Menu

Math1, Math2, and Math3

1. Press **MORE → Math1**, **Math2**, or **Math3** (main) to select the waveform that you want to display or change.

NOTE

If your digitizing oscilloscope *is equipped with Option 2F, Advanced DSP Math, the menu item* ***FFT*** *will be at the same brightness* as the menu items **Single Wfm Math and Dual Wfm Math**; otherwise, **FFT** will be dimmed. *See the* TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual *for information on FFTs and other advanced math waveforms.*

2. Press **Change Math waveform definition** (side) → **Single Wfm Math** or **Dual Wfm Math** (main) to alter the present math waveform definition (see Figure 3-64).

   The single and dual waveform operations are described separately in the following topics.

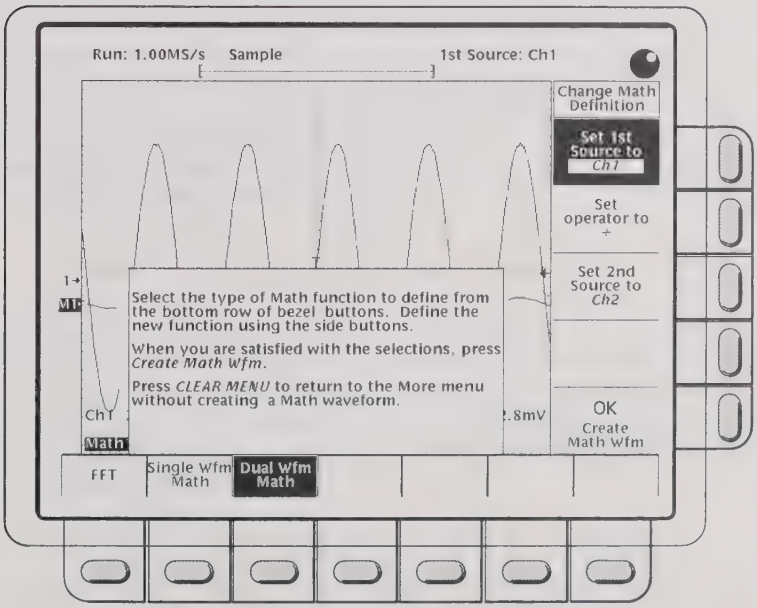

Run: 1.00MS/s Sample
1st Source: Ch1
Change Math Definition
Set 1st Source to Ch1
Set operator to +
Set 2nd Source to Ch2
OK Create Math Wfm
Select the type of Math function to define from the bottom row of bezel buttons. Define the new function using the side buttons.
When you are satisfied with the selections, press Create Math Wfm.
Press CLEAR MENU to return to the More menu without creating a Math waveform.
Ch1
Math
FFT
Single Wfm Math
Dual Wfm Math

Figure 3-64: Dual Waveform Math Main and Side Menus

Single Wfm Math

1. Press **MORE** → **Math1**, **Math2**, or **Math3** (main) → **Set Function to** (side) → **inv** (invert).
2. To define the source waveform toggle **Set Single Source to** (side) or select that item and use the general purpose knob.
3. When you are ready to perform the function, press **OK Create Math Wfm** (side).

Dual Wfm Math

1. Select the sources with **MORE → Math1**, **Math2**, or **Math3** (main) **→ Set 1st Source to** and **Set 2nd Source to** (side). Enter the sources by toggling the appropriate channel selection button or by using the general purpose knob.
2. To enter the math operator press **Set operator to** (side). Toggle the button or use the general purpose knob. Supported operators are +, −, and *.
3. Press **OK Create Math Wfm** (side) to perform the function.

NOTE

*If you select *****, for multiply, in step 2, the cursor feature will measure amplitude in the units volts squared* **VV** *rather than in volts* **V**.

For More Information

If your oscilloscope is equipped with option 2F, you can also create integrated, differentiated, and Fast Fourier Transform waveforms. If your oscilloscope is equipped with that option, see the *TDS Family Option 2F Instruction Manual*.

Zoom

At times, you may want to expand or compress a waveform on the display without changing the acquisition parameters. You can do that with the zoom feature.

Zoom and Interpolation

When you zoom in on a waveform on the display, you expand a portion of it. The digitizing oscilloscope may need to show more points for that portion than it has acquired. If it needs to do this, it interpolates. The instrument can interpolate in either of two ways: *linear* or *sin(x)/x*. (The interpolation methods are described on page 2-19.)

When you zoom, the display redraws the waveforms using the interpolation method you selected in the Display menu (linear interpolation or sin(x)/x). If you selected sin(x)/x (the default), it may introduce some overshoot or undershoot to the waveform edges. If that happens, change the interpolation method to linear, following the instructions on page 3-110.

To differentiate between the real and interpolated samples, set the display style to **Intensified Samples.**

Operation

When you turn on the zoom feature, the vertical and horizontal scale and vertical position knobs now control the displayed size and position of waveforms, allowing them to be expanded and repositioned on screen. They cease to affect waveform acquisition, but you can alter acquisition by using the corresponding menu items. Zoom mode does not change the way horizontal position operates.

To use zoom, do the following steps:

1. Press **ZOOM → ON** (side). The **ZOOM** front-panel button should light up.
2. Choose which waveforms to zoom by toggling **Horizontal Lock** (side) or by using the general purpose knob.
   - **None**—only the waveform currently selected can be magnified and positioned horizontally (Figure 3-65).
   - **Live**—all channels can be magnified and positioned horizontally at the same time. (Waveforms displayed from an input channel are live; math and reference waveforms are not live.)
   - **All**—all waveforms displayed (channels, math, and/or reference) can be magnified and positioned horizontally at the same time.

NOTE

Although zoom must be turned on to control which waveforms zoom affects, the setting for ***Horizontal Lock*** *affects which waveforms the horizontal control positions whether zoom is on or off. The rules for the three settings are as is listed in step 2.*

Only the selected waveform (the top one) changes size.

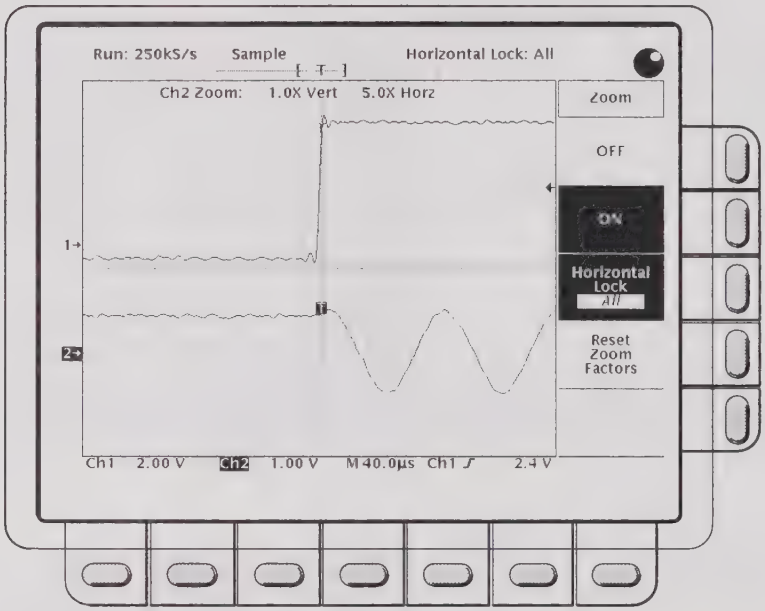


Figure 3-65: Zoom Mode with Horizontal Lock Set to None

Setting Interpolation

To change the interpolation method used:

Press **DISPLAY → Filter** (main) **→ Sin(x)/x Interpolation** or **Linear Interpolation** (side).

Reset Zoom

To reset all zoom factors to their defaults (Table 3-7), press **ZOOM → Reset Zoom Factors** (side).

Table 3-7: Zoom Defaults

Parameter	Setting
Zoom Vertical Position	0
Zoom Vertical Gain	1X
Zoom Horizontal Position	Tracking Horizontal Position
Zoom Horizontal Gain	1X

Press **ZOOM → Off** (side) to return to normal oscilloscope (non-zoom) operation.

For Further Information

See *Acquisition*, on page 2-17.

See *Display Modes*, on page 3-21.

Appendix A: Options and Accessories

This section describes the various options as well as the standard and optional accessories that are available for the TDS 420 and TDS 460 Digitizing Oscilloscopes.

Options

Options include:

Option 02: Front Cover and Pouch

With this option, Tektronix ships a front cover and pouch with the instrument.

Option 05: Video Trigger

This option provides a video trigger. It lets you trigger on positive or negative sync pulses. It also lets you select interlaced field one, interlaced field two, or both fields noninterlaced. You can define the signal's class to be NTSC, PAL, SECAM, or you can customize the class.

Option 13: RS-232/Centronics Hardcopy Interface

With this option, Tektronix ships the oscilloscope equipped with a RS-232 and a Centronics interface that can be used to obtain hardcopies of the oscilloscope screen.

Option 2F: Advanced DSP Math

With this option, the oscilloscope can compute and display three advanced math waveforms: integral of a waveform, differential of a waveform, and an FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) of a waveform.

Option 3P: Printer Pack

With this option, Tektronix ships a Seiko DPU-411 thermal printer, cables, manual, and an accessory pouch mounted to the top of the oscilloscope. Hardcopies of the screen are produced on four inch thermal paper. The pouch holds the printer and has additional room for accessories.

Option 2A: 60,000 Point Record Length and Video Trigger

This option combines Option 1M (60,000 point records) and Option 05 (Video Trigger).

Option 2B: 60,000 Point Record Length, Video Trigger, and Advanced DSP Math

This option combines Option 1M (60,000 point records), Option 05 (Video Trigger), and Option 2F (Advanced DSP Math).

Options A1–A5: International Power Cords

Besides the standard North American, 110 V, 60 Hz power cord, Tektronix ships any of five alternate power cord configurations with the oscilloscope when ordered by the customer.

Table A-1: International Power Cords

Option	Power Cord
A1	Universal European—220 V, 50 Hz
A2	UK—240 V, 50 Hz
A3	Australian—240 V, 50 Hz
A4	North American—240 V, 60 Hz
A5	Switzerland—220 V, 50 Hz

Option B1: Module Level Service Manual

When Option B1 is ordered, Tektronix ships a module level service manual with the oscilloscope.

Option 1M: 60,000 Point Record Length

This option provides a maximum record length of 60,000 points per acquisition (60,000/channel).

Warranty-Plus Service Options

The following options add to the services available with the standard warranty. (The standard warranty appears on the back side of the title page in this manual.)

- **Option M2:** When Option M2 is ordered, Tektronix provides five years of warranty/remedial service.
- **Option M3:** When Option M3 is ordered, Tektronix provides five years of warranty/remedial service and four oscilloscope calibrations.
- **Option M8:** When Option M8 is ordered, Tektronix provides four calibrations and four performance verifications, one of each in the second through the fifth years of service.

Option 1K: K212 Instrument Cart

With this option, Tektronix ships a three tray instrument cart (the K212).

Option 1P: HC100 4 Pen Plotter

With this option, Tektronix ships a four-color plotter designed to make waveform plots directly from the digitizing oscilloscope without requiring an external controller. It handles A4 and US letter size media.

Option 1R: Rackmounted Digitizing Oscilloscope

Tektronix ships the digitizing oscilloscope, when ordered with Option 1R, configured for installation in a 19 inch wide instrument rack. Customers with instruments not configured for rackmounting can order a rackmount kit (016-1166-00) for field conversions.

Instructions for rackmounting the digitizing oscilloscope are shipped with the option 1R.

Option 22: Additional Probes

With this option, Tektronix ships two additional probes identical to the two standard-accessory P6138 probes normally shipped with the instrument. This provides one probe for each front-panel input.

Option 23: Active Probes

With this option, Tektronix ships two active high speed voltage probes (the P6205 10X FET).

Option 29: TD100 Data Manager

With this option, Tektronix ships a 2402A Data Manager, which provides a 44 MByte hard drive, 3.5 inch floppy drive, and TDS Data Manager software..

Option 9C: Certificate of Calibration and Test Data Report

Tektronix ships a Certificate of Calibration which states this instrument meets or exceeds all warranted specifications and has been calibrated using standards and instruments whose accuracies are traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology, an accepted value of a natural physical constant or a ratio calibration technique. The calibration is in compliance with US MIL-STD-45662A. This option also includes a test data report for the instrument.

Standard Accessories

The following standard accessories are included with the digitizing oscilloscope:

Table A-2: Standard Accessories

Accessory	Part Number
User Manual	070-8034-01
Programmer Manual	070-8318-05
Reference	070-8035-01
Performance Verification	070-8721-00
U.S. Power Cord	161-0230-01
Probes (qty. two) P6138 10X Passive	P6138 (single unit)

Probe Accessories

These are accessories to the standard probe listed previously (P6138). Except for the probe-tip-to-circuit board adapter, they can also be ordered separately.

Table A-3: Probe Accessories

Accessory	Part Number
Retractable Hook Tip	013-0107-06
Body Shell, tip cover	204-1049-00
Probe-Tip-to-Circuit Board Adapter (qty. two standard, optionally available in package of 25 as 131-5031-00)	No customer orderable part number for double unit
6-Inch Slip-On Ground Lead	196-3113-02
Low Inductance Ground Lead	195-4240-00
Marker Rings Set (qty. eighteen rings which includes two each of nine colors)	016-0633-00
Ground Collar	343-1003-01
6-Inch Alligator Clip Ground Lead	196-3305-00
Screwdriver: adjustment tool, metal tip	003-1433-00
SMT KlipChip™	206-0364-00
Accessory Pouch	016-0708-00

Optional Accessories

You can also order the following optional accessories:

Table A-4: Optional Accessories

Accessory	Part Number
TDS 420 & 460 Service Manual	070-8036-01
Plotter (GPIB and Centronics Standard)	HC100
Plotter (Centronics Standard)	HC200
Oscilloscope Cart	K212
Rackmount Kit (for field conversion)	016-1166-00
Oscilloscope Camera	C9
Oscilloscope Camera Adapter	016-1154-00
Soft-Sided Carrying Case	016-1158-00
Transit Case	016-1157-00
GPIB Cable (1 meter)	012-0991-01
GPIB Cable (2 meter)	012-0991-00
Security Cable	012-1388-00
Front Cover	200-3232-00
Pouch	016-1159-00
VGA Cable	73893013 (NEC part number)

Accessory Probes

The following optional accessory probes are recommended for use with your digitizing oscilloscope:

- P6101A 1X, 15 MHz, Passive probe.
- P6156 10X, 3.5 GHz, Passive, low capacitance, (low impedance Zo) probe. Option 25 provides 100X.
- P6009 Passive, high voltage probe, 100X, 1500 VDC + Peak AC
- P6015A Passive high voltage probe, 1000X, 20 kVDC + Peak AC (40 kV peak for less than 100 ms)
- P6205 750 MHz probe bandwidth. Active (FET) voltage probe.
- P6204 Active, high speed digital voltage probe. FET. DC to 1 GHz. DC offset. 50 Ω input. Use with 1103 TekProbe Power Supply for offset control.
- P6046 Active, differential probe, 1X/10X, DC to 100 MHz, 50 Ω input.

- A6501 Buffer Amplifier (active fixtured), 1 GHz, 1 MΩ, 10X.
- P6501 Option 02: Microprobe with TekProbe power cable (active fixtured), 750 MHz, 1 MΩ, 10X.
- AM 503S—DC/AC Current probe system, AC/DC. Uses A6302 Current Probe.
- AM 503S Option 03: DC/AC Current probe system, AC/DC. Uses A6303 Current Probe.
- P6021 AC Current probe. 120 Hz to 60 MHz.
- P6022 AC Current probe. 935 kHz to 120 MHz.
- CT-1 Current probe—designed for permanent or semi-permanent in-circuit installation. 25 kHz to 1 GHz, 50 Ω input.
- CT-2 Current probe—designed for permanent or semi-permanent in-circuit installation. 1.2 kHz to 200 MHz, 50 Ω input.
- CT-4 Current Transformer—for use with the AM 503S (A6302) and P6021. Peak pulse 1 kA. 0.5 Hz to 20 MHz with AM 503S (A6302).
- P6701A Opto-Electronic Converter, 500 to 950 nm, DC to 850 MHz 1 V/mW.
- P6703A Opto-Electronic Converter, 1100 to 1700 nm, DC to 1 GHz 1 V/mW.
- P6711 Opto-Electronic Converter, 500 to 950 nm, DC to 250 MHz 5 V/mW.
- P6713 Opto-Electronic Converter, 1100 to 1700 nm, DC to 300 MHz. 5 V/mW.
- TVC 501 Time-to-voltage converter. Time delay, pulse width and period measurements.
- P6562 SMT Probe, 350 MHz.

Probe Accessories

The following optional accessories are recommended for use with the standard probe listed under *Standard Accessories.*

Table A-5: Probe Accessories

Accessory	Part Number
Connector, BNC: BNC to Probe Tip Adapter	013-0226-00
Connector, BNC: 50 Ω, BNC to Probe Tip Adapter	013-0227-00
Connector, Probe: Package of 100, compact	131-4244-00
Connector, Probe: Package of 25, compact	131-5031-00
Screwdriver Adjustment Tool, Package of five	003-1433-01

Table A-5: Probe Accessories (Cont.)

Accessory	Part Number
Compact-to-Miniature Probe Tip Adapter	013-0202-02
Probe Tip Holder: (holds three tips)	352-0670-00
3 Inch Slip-On Ground Lead	196-3113-03
Probe Holder: Black ABS	352-0351-00
IC Protector Tip, Package of 10	015-0201-07
IC Protector Tip, Package of 100	015-0201-08
Marker Ring Set: Two each of nine colors	016-0633-00
SMT KlipChip™: 20 Adapters	SMG50
Low-Inductance Spring-Tips: Two each of five different springs and insulator	016-1077-00
Probe Tip-to-Chassis Adapter	131-4210-00
NOTE *The next four items below can only be used with the Compact-to-Miniature Probe Tip Adapter.*	
Dual-Lead Adapter	015-0325-00
BNC-to-Probe Tip Adapter	013-0084-01
G.R.-to-Probe Tip Adapter, 50 Ω	017-0088-00
Bayonet Ground Assembly	013-0085-00

Accessory Software

The following optional accessories are Tektronix software products recommended for use with your digitizing oscilloscope:

Table A-6: Accessory Software

Software	Part Number
EZ-Test Program Generator	S45F030
Wavewriter: AWG and waveform creation	S3FT400
TekTMS: Test management system	S3FT001
LabWindows	S3FG910

Warranty Information

Check for the full warranty statements for this product, the probes, and the products listed above on the back of each product manual's title page.

Appendix B: Specification

This subsection begins with a general description of the traits of the TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscopes. Three subsections follow, one for each of three classes of traits: *nominal traits, warranted characteristics,* and *typical characteristics*.

General

The Tektronix TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscopes are portable, four-channel instruments suitable for use in a variety of test and measurement applications and systems. Key features include:

- Four input channels, each with a record length of 500 to 15,000 points and 8-bit vertical resolution. (Option 1M extends the maximum record length to 60,000 points.)
- Video triggering capabilities (with Option 5, Video Trigger).
- Full programmability and printer/plotter output.
- Advanced functions, such as continuously updated measurements.
- Specialized display modes, such as infinite and variable persistence.
- A unique graphical user interface (GUI), an on-board help mode, and a logical front-panel layout which combine to deliver a new standard in usability.

Nominal Traits

This subsection contains a collection of tables that list the various *nominal traits* that describe the TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscopes. Included are electrical and mechanical traits.

Nominal traits are described using simple statements of fact such as "Four, all identical" for the trait "Input Channels, Number of," rather than in terms of limits that are performance requirements.

Table A-7: Nominal Traits—Signal Acquisition System (Cont.)

Name	Description	
Digitizers, Number of	Four, all identical	
Digitized Bits, Number of	8 bits[1]	
Input Channels, Number of	Four, all identical, called CH 1–CH 4	
Input Coupling	DC, AC, or GND	
Input Resistance Selections	1 MΩ or 50 Ω	
Ranges, Offset, All Channels	**Volts/Div Setting**	**Offset Range**
	1 mV/div–99.5 mV/div	±1 V
	100 mV/div–995 mV/div	±10 V
	1 V/div–10 V/div	±100 V
Range, Position	±5 divisions	
Range, Sensitivity[2]	1 mV/div to 10 V/div	

[1]Displayed vertically with 25 digitization levels (DLs) per division and 10.24 divisions dynamic range with zoom off. A DL is the smallest voltage level change that can be resolved by the 8-bit A-D Converter, with the input scaled to the volts/division setting of the channel used. Expressed as a voltage, a DL is equal to 1/25 of a division times the volts/division setting.

[2]The sensitivity ranges from 1 mV/div to 10 V/div in a 1–2–5 sequence of coarse settings. Between consecutive coarse settings, the sensitivity can be finely adjusted with a resolution of 1% of the more sensitive setting. For example, between 50 mV/div and 100 mV/div, the volts/division can be set with 0.5 mV resolution.

[3]Rise time is defined by the following formula:

$$Rise\ Time\ (ns) = \frac{350}{BW\ (MHz)}$$

Table A-8: Nominal Traits—Time Base System

Name	Description
Range, Sample-Rate[1,3]	2.5 Samples/s to 100 MSamples/s
Range, Equivalent Time or Interpolated Waveform Rate[2,3]	200 MSamples/s to 50 GSamples/s (5 ns/Sample to 20 ps/Sample)
Range, Seconds/Division	1 ns/div to 20 s/div

Table A-8: Nominal Traits—Time Base System (Cont.)

Name	Description
Range, Time Base Delay Time	0 to 20 seconds (settings of 20 µs and slower are displayed in roll mode)
Reference Frequency,Time Base	100 MHz
Record Length Selection	500 points, 1,000 points, 2,500 points, 5,000, and 15,000 points. Record lengths of 30,000 and 60,000 points are available with Option 1M.[4]

[1]The range of real-time rates, expressed in samples/second, at which a digitizer samples signals at its inputs and stores the samples in memory to produce a record of time-sequential samples

[2]The range of waveform rates for equivalent time or interpolated waveform records.

[3]The Waveform Rate (WR) is the equivalent sample rate of a waveform record. For a waveform record acquired by real-time sampling of a single acquisition, the waveform rate is the same as the real-time sample rate; for a waveform created by interpolation of real-time samples from a single acquisition or by equivalent-time sampling of multiple acquisitions, the waveform rate is faster than the real time sample rate. For all three cases, the waveform rate is 1/(Waveform Interval) for the waveform record, where the waveform interval (WI) is the time between the samples in the waveform record.

[4]The maximum record length of 60,000 points available with Option 1M is selectable with all acquisition modes except Hi Res and Average. In Hi Res and Average, the maximum record length is 15,000 points.

Table A-9: Nominal Traits—Triggering System (Cont.)

Name	Description	
Range, Events Delay	1 to 9,999,999	
Ranges, Trigger Level or Threshold	**Source**	**Range**
	Any Channel	±12 divisions from center of screen
	Line	±400 Volts
Video Mode (Option 05 Equipped Instruments Only)	Line Rate Class: Four classes are provided as follows. ■ NTSC, which provides a default line rate compatible with the NTSC standard (525/60) ■ PAL, which provides a default line rate compatible with the PAL standard (625/50) ■ SECAM, which provides a default line rate compatible with the SECAM standard ■ Custom, which provides user selectable line rate ranges (see "Custom Line Rate Ranges" below) Custom Line Rate Ranges: 15 kHz–20 kHz, 20 kHz–25 kHz, and 25 kHz–35 kHz, and 35 kHz–64 kHz Holdoff: Automatically adjusts to 50 ms (nominal) for NTSC class; to 140 ms (nominal) for PAL class Triggerable on Field Selections: Odd, Even, or Both Delayed Acquisition: Settable for delay by line number or runs after time delay	

Table A-10: Nominal Traits—Display System

Name	Description
Video Display Resolution	640 pixels horizontally by 480 pixels vertically in a display area of 5.04 inches horizontally by 3.78 inches vertically
Waveform Display Graticule	A single graticule 401 × 501 pixels (8 × 10 divisions, with divisions that are 1 cm by 1 cm)
Waveform Display Grey Scale	Sixteen levels in infinite-persistence and variable-persistence display styles

Table A-11: Nominal Traits—Data Storage

Name	Description
Capacity, Nonvolatile Waveform Memory	Standard Instrument: Total capacity is 20,000 points (four waveforms acquired with maximum record lengths of 5,000 points each). Option 1M Equipped Instrument: Total capacity is 60,000 points (two to four waveforms acquired with any combination of record lengths that add up to 60,000 points). For available record lengths, see "Record Length Selection" on page A-11 of this section.
Capacity, Nonvolatile Setup Memory	Ten setups.
Retention Time, Nonvolatile Memories	Internal batteries, installed at time of manufacture, have a life of $\geq$5 years when operated and/or stored at an ambient temperature from 0° C to 50° C. Retention time of the nonvolatile memories is equal to the remaining life of the batteries.
Batteries[1] Required	Two lithium poly-carbon monofluoride. Both are type BR2/3A, UL listed. Both are rated at 3.0 volt, 1.2 amp-hour.

[1]**Batteries are not accessible from the outside of the instrument; therefore, they can only be replaced by a service technician.**

Table A-12: Nominal Traits—GPIB Interface, Video Output, and Power Fuse

Name	Description
Interface, GPIB	GPIB interface complies with IEEE Std 488.1-1987 and IEEE Std 488.2-1987.
Output, Video	Provides a video signal, non-interlaced, with levels that comply with ANSI RS343A. Output is through a rear-panel DB9 connector.
Fuse Rating	Either of two fuses[1] may be used: a .25″ × 1.25″ (UL 198.6, 3AG): 5 A FAST, 250 V, or a 5 mm × 20 mm, (IEC 127): 4 A (T), 250 V.

[1]**Each fuse type requires its own fuse cap.**

Table A-13: Nominal Traits—Mechanical

Name	Description
Cooling Method	Forced-air circulation with no air filter.
Construction Material	Chassis parts constructed of aluminum alloy; front panel constructed of plastic laminate; circuit boards constructed of glass-laminate.
Finish Type	Tektronix Blue textured finish on aluminum cabinet.
Weight	Standard digitizing oscilloscope 8.6 kg (19.0 lbs), oscilloscope only. 10.2 kg (22.5 lbs), with front cover, accessories, and accessories pouch installed. 14.5 kg (32.0 lbs), when packaged for domestic shipment. Rackmount digitizing oscilloscope 8.2 kg (18.0 lbs) plus the weight of rackmount parts, for the rackmounted digitizing oscilloscope (Option 1R). 16.3 kg (36.0 lbs), when the rackmounted digitizing oscilloscope is packaged for domestic shipment. Rackmount conversion kit 4.5 kg (10.0 lbs), parts only; 7.9 kg (17.5 lbs), parts plus package for domestic shipping.
Overall Dimensions	Standard digitizing oscilloscope Height 191 mm (7.5 in), when feet and accessories pouch are installed. 165 mm (6.5 in), without the accessories pouch installed. Width 362 mm (14.25 in), with handle. Depth 471 mm (18.55 in), oscilloscope only; 490 mm (19.28 in), with optional front cover installed; 564 mm (22.2 in) with handle fully extended. Rackmount digitizing oscilloscope Height 178 mm (7.0 in). Width 483 mm (19.0 in). Depth 472 mm (18.6 in), without front-panel handles; 517 mm (20.35 in) with front-panel handles installed.

Warranted Characteristics

This subsection lists the various *warranted characteristics* that describe the TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscopes. Included are electrical and environmental characteristics.

Warranted characteristics are described in terms of quantifiable performance limits which are warranted. This subsection lists only warranted characteristics. A list of *typical characteristics* starts on page A-21.

NOTE

In these tables, those warranted characteristics that are checked in the procedure Performance Tests, *found in Section 1, appear in* ***boldface type*** *under the column* **Name**.

Performance Conditions

The electrical characteristics found in these tables of warranted characteristics apply when the oscilloscope has been adjusted at an ambient temperature between +20° C and +30° C, has had a warm-up period of at least 20 minutes, and is operating at an ambient temperature between 0° C and +50° C (unless otherwise noted).

Table A-14: Warranted Characteristics—Signal Acquisition System

Name	Description	
Accuracy, DC Voltage Measurement, Averaged	**Measurement Type**	**DC Accuracy**
	Average of ≥16 waveforms	±(1.5% × |(reading − Net Offset[1])| + Offset Accuracy + 0.06 div)
	Delta volts between any two averages of ≥16 waveforms[2]	±(1.5% × |reading| + 0.1 div + 0.3 mV)
Accuracy, DC Gain [3]	±1.5%	

[1]Net Offset = Offset − (Position x Volts/Div). Net Offset is the voltage level at the center of the A-D converter's dynamic range. Offset Accuracy is the accuracy of this voltage level.

[2]The samples must be acquired under the same setup and ambient conditions.

[3]DC Gain Accuracy is confirmed in the Performance Verification Procedure (Section 4) by passing the checks for Offset Accuracy and DC Voltage Measurement Accuracy (Averaged).

Table A-14: Warranted Characteristics—Signal Acquisition System (Cont.)

Name	Description	
Accuracy, Offset	**Volts/Div Setting**	**Offset Accuracy**
	1 mV/div–9.95 mV/div	±(0.4% × |Net Offset[1]| + 0.9 mV + 0.1 div)
	10 mV/div–99.5 mV/div	±(0.4% × |Net Offset[1]| +1.5 mV + 0.1 div)
	100 mV/div–995 mV/div	±(0.4% × |Net Offset[1]| + 15 mV + 0.1 div)
	1 V/div–10 V/div	±(0.4% × |Net Offset[1]| + 150 mV + 0.1 div)
Accuracy, Position[4]	±(1.5% × (Position × Volts/div) + Offset Accuracy + 0.04 div)	
Analog Bandwidth, DC-50 Ω Coupled and DC-1 MΩ with Standard-accessory Probe Attached (TDS 420)	**Volts/Div**	**Bandwidth[5]**
	5 mV/div–10 V/div	DC–150 MHz
	2 mV/div–4.98 mV/div	DC–110 MHz
	1 mV/div–1.99 mV/div	DC–90 MHz
Analog Bandwidth, DC-50 Ω Coupled and DC-1 MΩ with Standard-accessory Probe Attached (TDS 460)	**Volts/Div**	**Bandwidth[5]**
	5 mV/div–10 V/div	DC–350 MHz
	2 mV/div–4.98 mV/div	DC–250 MHz
	1 mV/div–1.99 mV/div	DC–100 MHz
Cross Talk (Channel Isolation)	**Volts/Div**	**Isolation**
	≥500 mV/div	≥50:1 at 50 MHz for any two channels having equal volts/division settings
	≤9.95 mV/div	≥50:1 at 50 MHz for any two channels having equal volts/division settings
	10 mV/div–500 mV/div	≥100:1 at 100 MHz and ≥30:1 at full rated bandwidth for any two channels having equal volts/division settings
Delay Between Channels, Full Bandwidth, Equivalent Time	≤200 ps between CH 1 and CH 2 and between CH 3 and CH 4 when both channels have equal volts/division and coupling settings	
	≤450 ps for any other combination of two channels with equal volts/division and coupling settings	

[1]Net Offset = Offset – (Position x Volts/Div). Net Offset is the voltage level at the center of the A-D converter's dynamic range. Offset Accuracy is the accuracy of this voltage level.

[4]Position Accuracy is confirmed in the Performance Verification Procedure (Section 4) by passing the checks for Offset Accuracy and DC Voltage Measurement Accuracy (Averaged).

[5]The limits given are for the ambient temperature range of 0°C to +30°C. Reduce the upper bandwidth frequencies by 2.5 MHz for each °C above +30°C.

Table A-14: Warranted Characteristics—Signal Acquisition System (Cont.)

Name	Description	
Input Impedance, DC-1 MΩ Coupled	1 MΩ ±0.5% in parallel with 15 pF ±2.0 pF. Matched to within ±1% for resistance and ±1.0 pF for capacitance	
Input Impedance, DC-50 Ω Coupled (TDS 420)	50 Ω ±1% with VSWR ≤1.2:1 from DC–150 MHz	
Input Impedance, DC-50 Ω Coupled (TDS 460)	50 Ω ±1% with VSWR ≤1.6:1 from DC–350 MHz	
Input Voltage, Maximum, DC-1 MΩ, AC-1 MΩ, or GND Coupled	**Volt/Div**	**Rating**
	0.1 V/div–10 V/div	±400 V (DC + peak AC); derate at 20 dB/decade above 10 MHz until the minimum rating of ±5 V (DC + peak AC) is reached
	1 mV/div–9.99 mV/div	±400 V (DC + peak AC); derate at 20 dB/decade above 10 kHz until the minimum rating of ±5 V (DC + peak AC) is reached
Input Voltage, Maximum, DC-50 Ω or AC-50 Ω Coupled	5 V rms, with peaks less than or equal to ±30 V	
Lower Frequency Limit, AC Coupled	≤10 Hz when AC–1 MΩ coupled; ≤200 kHz when AC-50 Ω coupled[6]	

[6]The AC Coupled Lower Frequency Limits are reduced by a factor of 10 when 10X, passive probes are used.

Table A-15: Warranted Characteristics—Time Base System

Name	Description
Accuracy, Long Term Sample Rate and Delay Time	±150 ppm over any ≥1 ms interval
Accuracy, Absolute Time and Delay Time Measurements[1, 2]	For single-shot acquisitions using sample or high-resolution acquisition modes and a bandwidth limit setting of 100 MHz: ±(1 WI + 150 ppm of |Reading| + 450 ps) For single-shot acquisitions using sample or high-resolution acquisition modes and a bandwidth limit setting of 20 MHz: ±(1 WI + 150 ppm of |Reading| + 1.3 ns) For repetitive acquisitions using average acquisition mode with ≥8 averages and a bandwidth limit setting of FULL: ±(1 WI + 150 ppm of |Reading| + 200 ps)

[1]For input signals > 5 divisions in amplitude and a slew rate of ≥ 2.0 divisions/ns at the delta time measurement points. Signal must have been acquired at a volts/division setting ≥ 5 mV/division.
[2]The WI (waveform interval) is the time between the samples in the waveform record. Also, see the footnotes for *Sample Rate Range* and *Equivalent Time or Interpolated Waveform Rates* in Table A-8 on page A-10.

Table A-15: Warranted Characteristics—Time Base System (Cont.)

Name	Description
Accuracy, Delta Time Measurement[1, 2]	For single-shot acquisitions using sample or high-resolution acquisition modes and a bandwidth limit setting of 100 MHz: ±(1 WI + 150 ppm of |Reading| + 650 ps) For repetitive acquisitions using average acquisition mode with ≥8 averages and a bandwidth limit setting of FULL: ±(1 WI + 150 ppm of |Reading| + 300 ps)

[1]For input signals ≥ 5 divisions in amplitude and a slew rate of ≥ 2.0 divisions/ns at the delta time measurement points. Signal must have been acquired at a volts/division setting ≥ 5 mV/division.
[2]The WI (waveform interval) is the time between the samples in the waveform record. Also, see the footnotes for *Sample Rate Range* and *Equivalent Time or Interpolated Waveform Rates* in Table A-8 on page A-10.

Table A-16: Warranted Characteristics—Triggering System

Name	Description
Accuracy, Trigger Level or Threshold, DC Coupled	±(2% of |Setting − Net Offset[1]| + 0.2 div × volts/div setting + Offset Accuracy) for any channel as trigger source
Sensitivity, Edge-Type Trigger, DC Coupled[2]	0.35 division from DC to 50 MHz, increasing to 1 division at 350 MHz (TDS 420) or 500 MHz (TDS 460) for any channel as trigger source
Sensitivity, Video-Type, TV Field and TV Line[2]	0.6 division of video sync signal
Pulse Width, minimum, Events-Delay	5 ns
Auxiliary Trigger Input	Connector: BNC at rear panel Input Voltage (maximum): −5 VDC to +10 VDC Duty Cycle (minimum required): 20% Input Load: equivalent to three TTL gate loads
Auxiliary Trigger, Maximum Input Frequency	10 MHz

[1]Net Offset = Offset − (Position x Volts/Div). Net Offset is the voltage level at the center of the A-D converter's dynamic range. Offset Accuracy is the accuracy of this voltage level.

[2]The minimum sensitivity for obtaining a stable trigger. A stable trigger results in a uniform, regular display triggered on the selected slope. The trigger point must not switch between opposite slopes on the waveform, and the display must not "roll" across the screen on successive acquisitions. The TRIG'D LED stays constantly lighted when the SEC/DIV setting is 2 ms or faster but may flash when the SEC/DIV setting is 10 ms or slower.

Table A-17: Warranted Characteristics—Probe Compensator Output

Name	Description	
Output Voltage and Frequency, Probe Compensator	**Characteristic**	**Limits**
	Voltage	0.5 V (base-top) ±5% into a 1 MΩ load
	Frequency	1 kHz ±5%

Table A-18: Power Requirements

Name	Description
Source Voltage and Frequency	90 to 132 VAC rms, continuous range, for 48 Hz through 62 Hz 100 to 132 VAC rms, continuous range, for 48 Hz through 440 Hz 180 to 250 VAC rms, continuous range, for 48 Hz through 440 Hz
Power Consumption	≤240 Watts (225 VA)

Table A-19: Warranted Characteristics—Environmental, Safety, and Reliability

Name	Description
Atmospherics	Temperature: 0° C to +50° C, operating; −40° C to +75° C, non-operating Relative humidity: 0 to 95%, at or below +30° C; 0 to 75%, +31° C to +50° C Altitude: To 15,000 ft. (4570 m), operating; to 40,000 ft. (12190 m), non-operating
Dynamics	Random vibration: 0.31 g rms, from 5 to 500 Hz, 10 minutes each axis, operating; 2.46 g rms, from 5 to 500 Hz, 10 minutes each axis, non-operating
Emissions[1,2]	Meets or exceeds the requirements of the following standards: VDE 0871, Category B FCC Rules and Regulations, Part 15, Subpart B, Class A
User-Misuse Simulation	Electrostatic Discharge Susceptibility: Up to 8 kV with no change to settings or impairment of normal operation; up to 15 kV with no damage that prevents recovery of normal operation

[1]To maintain emission requirements when connecting to the IEEE 488 GPIB interface of this oscilloscope, use only a high-quality, double-shielded (braid and foil) GPIB cable. The cable shield must have low impedance connections to both connector housings. Acceptable cables are Tektronix part numbers 012-0991-00, -01, -02, and -03.

[2]To maintain emission requirements when connecting to the VGA-compatible video output of this oscilloscope, use only a high-quality double-shielded (braid and foil) video cable with ferrite cores at either end. The cable shield must have low impedance connections to both connector housings. An acceptable cable is NEC® part number 73893013. (Use an appropriate adapter when other than a 9-pin monitor connection is needed.)

Typical Characteristics

This subsection contains tables that lists the various *typical characteristics* that describe the TDS 400 Digitizing Oscilloscopes.

Typical characteristics are described in terms of typical or average performance. Typical characteristics are not warranted.

This subsection lists only typical characteristics. A list of warranted characteristics starts on page A-15.

Table A-20: Typical Characteristics—Signal Acquisition System

Name	Description				
Accuracy, DC Voltage Measurement, Not Averaged	**Measurement Type**	**DC Accuracy**			
	Any Sample	±(1.5% × (|reading − Net Offset[1]|) + Offset Accuracy + 0.13 div + 0.6 mV)			
	Delta Volts between any two samples[2]	±(1.5% × |reading| + 0.26 div + 1.2 mV)			
Frequency Limit, Upper, 100 MHz Bandwidth Limited	100 MHz				
Frequency Limit, Upper, 20 MHz Bandwidth Limited	20 MHz				
Nonlinearity	<1 DL, differential; ≤ 1 DL, integral, independently based[3]				
Step Response Settling Error	**Volts/Div Setting**	**Step Amplitude**	**Settling Error (%)[4]**		
			20 ns	**500 ns**	**20 ms**
	1 mV/div–99.5 mV/div	≤2 V	≤0.5	≤0.2	≤0.1
	100 mV/div–995 mV/div	≤20 V	≤2.0	≤0.5	≤0.2
	1 V/div–10 V/div	≤200 V	≤2.0	≤0.5	≤0.2

[1]Net Offset = Offset – (Position x Volts/Div). Net Offset is the voltage level at the center of the A-D converter's dynamic range. Offset Accuracy is the accuracy of this voltage level.

[2]The samples must be acquired under the same setup and ambient conditions.

[3]A DL (digitization level) is the smallest voltage level change that can be resolved by the 8-bit A-D Converter, with the input scaled to the volts/division setting of the channel used. Expressed as a voltage, a DL is equal to 1/25 of a division times the volts/division setting.

[4]The values given are the maximum absolute difference between the value at the end of a specified time interval after the mid-level crossing of the step, and the value one second after the mid-level crossing of the step, expressed as a percentage of the step amplitude.

Table A-21: Typical Characteristics—Time Base System

Name	Description
Aperture Uncertainty	For real-time or interpolated records having duration ≤1 minute: ≤(50 ps + 0.03 ppm × Record Duration) RMS For equivalent time records: ≤(50 ps + 0.06 ppm × WI[1]) RMS
Fixed Error in Sample Time	≤50 ps

[1]The WI (waveform interval) is the time between the samples in the waveform record. Also, see the footnotes for *Sample Rate Range* and *Equivalent Time or Interpolated Waveform Rates* in Table A-8 on page A-10.

Table A-22: Typical Characteristics—Triggering System

Name	Description		
Error, Trigger Position, Edge Triggering	**Acquire Mode**	**Trigger-Position Error[1,2]**	
	Sample, Hi-Res, Average	±(1 WI + 1 ns)	
	Peak Detect, Envelope	±(2 WI + 1 ns)	
Holdoff, Variable, Main Trigger	**Main Horizontal Scale**	**Minimum Holdoff**	**Maximum Holdoff**
	≤100 ns/div	1 µs	5 × Min Holdoff
	≥100 ms/div	1 s	5 × Min Holdoff
	Otherwise	10 × sec/div	5 × Min Holdoff
Lowest Frequency for Successful Operation of "Set Level to 50%" Function	20 Hz		
Sensitivity, Edge Trigger, Not DC Coupled[3]	**Trigger Coupling**	**Typical Signal Level for Stable Triggering**	
	AC	Same as DC-coupled limits[4] for frequencies above 60 Hz. Attenuates signals below 60 Hz.	
	Noise Reject	Three and one half times the DC-coupled limits.[4]	
	High Frequency Reject	One and one half times times the DC-coupled limits[4] from DC to 30 kHz. Attenuates signals above 30 kHz.	
	Low Frequency Reject	One and one half times the DC-coupled limits[4] for frequencies above 80 kHz. Attenuates signals below 80 kHz.	

[1]The trigger position errors are typically less than the values given here. These values are for triggering signals having a slew rate at the trigger point of ±0.5 division/ns.

[2]The waveform interval (WI) is the time between the samples in the waveform record. Also, see the footnote for the characteristics *Sample Rate Range* and *Equivalent Time or Interpolated Waveform Rates* in Table A-8 on page A-10.

[3]The minimum sensitivity for obtaining a stable trigger. A stable trigger results in a uniform, regular display triggered on the selected slope. The trigger point must not switch between opposite slopes on the waveform, and the display must not "roll" across the screen on successive acquisitions. The TRIG'D LED stays constantly lighted when the SEC/DIV setting is 2 ms or faster but may flash when the SEC/DIV setting is 10 ms or slower.

[4]See the characteristic *Sensitivity, Edge-Type Trigger, DC Coupled* in Table A-16, which begins on page A-18.

Table A-22: Typical Characteristics—Triggering System (Cont.)

Name	Description
Frequency, Maximum for Events Delay[5]	90 MHz
Width, Minimum Pulse and Rearm, Events Delay[6]	5 ns

[5]The maximum frequency for a delaying events input.

[6]The minimum pulse width and rearm width required for recognizing a delaying event.

Table A-23: Typical Characteristics—Data Handling

Name	Description
Time, Data-Retention, Nonvolatile Memory[1,2]	5 Years

[1]The time that reference waveforms, stored setups, and calibration constants are retained when there is no power to the oscilloscope.

[2]Data is maintained by lithium poly-carbon monofluoride.

Appendix C: Algorithms

Measurement Variables

The TDS Series Digitizing Oscilloscope uses a variety of variables in its calculations. These include:

High, Low

High is the value used as the 100% level in measurements such as fall time and rise time. For example, if you request the 10% to 90% rise time, then the oscilloscope will calculate 10% and 90% as percentages with *High* representing 100%.

Low is the value used as the 0% level in measurements such as fall time and rise time.

The exact meaning of *High* and *Low* depends on which of two calculation methods you choose from the Measure menu's **High-Low Setup** item. These are *Min-max* and *Histogram*.

Min-Max Method—defines the 0% and the 100% waveform levels as the lowest amplitude (most negative) and the highest amplitude (most positive) samples. The min-max method is useful for measuring frequency, width, and period for many types of signals. Min-max is sensitive to waveform ringing and spikes, however, and does not always measure accurately rise time, fall time, overshoot, and undershoot.

The min-max method calculates the High and Low values as follows:

$$High = Max$$

and

$$Low = Min$$

Histogram Method—attempts to find the highest density of points above and below the waveform's midpoint. It attempts to ignore ringing and spikes when determining the 0% and 100% levels. This method works well when measuring square waves and pulse waveforms.

The oscilloscope calculates the histogram-based *High* and *Low* values as follows:

1. It makes a histogram of the record with one bin for each digitizing level (256 total).
2. It splits the histogram into two sections at the halfway point between *Min* and *Max* (also called *Mid*).

3. The level with the most points in the upper histogram is the *High* value, and the level with the most points in the lower histogram is the *Low* value. (Choose the levels where the histograms peak for *High* and *Low*.)

   If *Mid* gives the largest peak value within the upper or lower histogram, then return the *Mid* value for both *High* and *Low* (this is probably a very low amplitude waveform).

   If more than one histogram level (bin) has the maximum value, choose the bin farthest from *Mid*.

This algorithm does not work well for two-level waveforms with greater than about 100% overshoot.

HighRef, MidRef, LowRef, Mid2Ref

The user sets the various reference levels, through the Measure menu's **Reference Level** selection. They include:

HighRef—the waveform's high reference level. Used in fall time and rise time calculations. Typically set to 90%. You can set it from 0% to 100%.

MidRef—the waveform's middle reference level. Typically set to 50%. You can set it from 0% to 100%.

LowRef—the waveform's low reference level. Used in fall and rise time calculations. Typically set to 10%. You can set it from 0% to 100%.

Mid2Ref—the middle reference level for a second waveform (or the second middle reference of the same waveform). Used in delay time calculations. Typically set to 50%. You can set it from 0% to 100%.

Other Variables

The oscilloscope also measures several values itself that it uses to help calculate measurements.

RecordLength—is the number of data points in the time base. You set it with the Horizontal menu **Record Length** item.

Start—is the location of the start of the measurement zone (X-value). It is 0.0 samples unless you are making a gated measurement. When you use gated measurements, it is the location of the left vertical cursor.

End—is the location of the end of the measurement zone (X-value). It is (*RecordLength* − 1.0) samples unless you are making a gated measurement. When you use gated measurements, it is the location of the right vertical cursor.

Hysteresis—The hysteresis band is 10% of the waveform amplitude. It is used in *MCross1*, *MCross2*, and *MCross3* calculations.

For example, once a crossing has been measured in a negative direction, the waveform data must fall below 10% of the amplitude from the *MidRef* point before the measurement system is armed and ready for a positive crossing. Similarly, after a positive *MidRef* crossing, waveform data must go above 10% of the amplitude before a negative crossing can be measured. Hysteresis is useful when you are measuring noisy signals, because it allows the digitizing oscilloscope to ignore minor fluctuations in the signal.

MCross Calculations

MCross1, MCross2, and MCross3—refer to the first, second, and third *MidRef* cross times, respectively. See Figure A-1.

The polarity of the crossings does not matter for these variables, but the crossings alternate in polarity; that is, *MCross1* could be a positive or negative crossing, but if *MCross1* is a positive crossing, *MCross2* will be a negative crossing.

The oscilloscope calculates these values as follows:

1. Find the first *MidRefCrossing* in the waveform record or the gated region. This is *MCross1*.
2. Continuing from *MCross1*, find the next *MidRefCrossing* in the waveform record (or the gated region) of the opposite polarity of *MCross1*. This is *MCross2*.
3. Continuing from *MCross2*, find the next *MidRefCrossing* in the waveform record (or the gated region of the same polarity as *MCross1*. This is *MCross3*.

MCross1Polarity—is the polarity of first crossing (no default). It can be rising or falling.

StartCycle—is the starting time for cycle measurements. It is a floating-point number with values between 0.0 and (*RecordLength* − 1.0), inclusive.

StartCycle = *MCross1*

EndCycle—is the ending time for cycle measurements. It is a floating-point number with values between 0.0 and (*RecordLength* − 1.0), inclusive.

EndCycle = *MCross3*

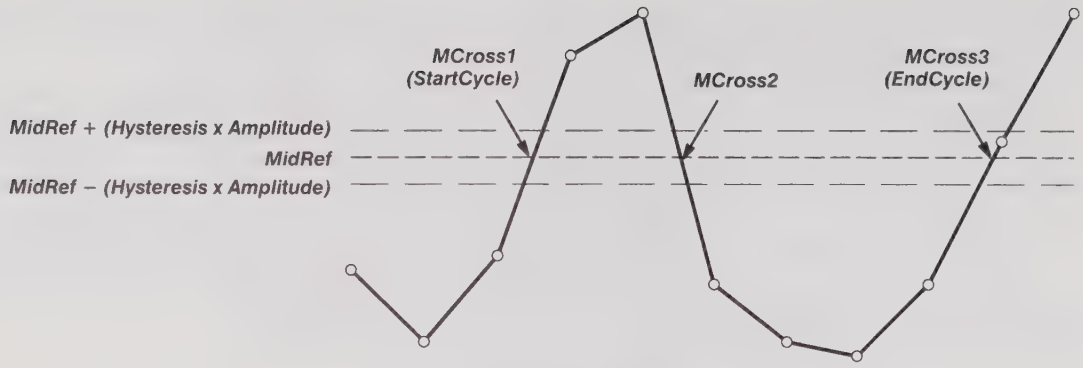


Figure A-1: MCross Calculations

Waveform[<0.0 ... RecordLength−1.0>]—holds the acquired data.

TPOS—is the location of the sample just before the trigger point (the time reference zero sample). In other terms, it contains the domain reference location. This location is where time = 0.

TSOFF—is the offset between *TPOS* and the actual trigger point. In other words, it is the trigger sample offset. Values range between 0.0 and 1.0 samples. This value is determined by the instrument when it receives a trigger. The actual zero reference (trigger) location in the measurement record is at (*TPOS*+*TSOFF*).

Measurement Algorithms

The automated measurements are defined and calculated as follows.

Amplitude

$$Amplitude = High - Low$$

Area

The arithmetic area for one waveform. Remember that one waveform is not necessarily equal to one cycle. For cyclical data you may prefer to use the cycle area rather than the arithmetic area.

if *Start* = *End* then return the (interpolated) value at *Start*.

Burst Width

Timing measurement. The duration of a burst.

1. Find *MCross1* on the waveform. This is *MCrossStart*.

2. Find the last *MCross* (begin the search at *EndCycle* and search toward *StartCycle*). This is *MCrossStop*. This could be a different value from *MCross1*.
3. Compute $BurstWidth = MCrossStop - MCrossStart$

Cycle Mean

Amplitude (voltage) measurement. The mean over one waveform cycle. For non-cyclical data, you might prefer to use the Mean measurement.

If *StartCycle* = *EndCycle* then return the (interpolated) value at *StartCycle*.

$$CycleMean = \frac{\int_{StartCycle}^{EndCycle} Waveform(t)\mathrm{dt}}{(EndCycle - StartCycle) \times SampleInterval}$$

For details of the integration algorithm, see page A-34.

Cycle RMS

The true Root Mean Square voltage over one cycle.

If *StartCycle* = *EndCycle* then *CycleRMS* = *Waveform[Start]*.

Otherwise,

$$CycleRMS = \sqrt{\frac{\int_{StartCycle}^{EndCycle} (Waveform(t))^2\mathrm{dt}}{(EndCycle - StartCycle) \times SampleInterval)}}$$

For details of the integration algorithm, see page A-34.

Delay

Timing measurement. The amount of time between the *MidRef* and *Mid2Ref* crossings of two different traces, or two different places on the same trace.

Delay measurements are actually a group of measurements. To get a specific delay measurement, you must specify the target and reference crossing polarities, and the reference search direction.

Delay = the time from one *MidRef* crossing on the source waveform to the *Mid2Ref* crossing on the second waveform.

Fall Time

Timing measurement. The time taken for the falling edge of a pulse to drop from a *HighRef* value (default = 90%) to a *LowRef* value (default = 10%).

Figure A-2 shows a falling edge with the two crossings necessary to calculate a Fall measurement.

1. Searching from *Start* to *End*, find the first sample in the measurement zone greater than *HighRef*.
2. From this sample, continue the search to find the first (negative) crossing of *HighRef*. The time of this crossing is *THF*. (Use linear interpolation if necessary.)
3. From *THF*, continue the search, looking for a crossing of *LowRef*. Update *THF* if subsequent *HighRef* crossings are found. When a *LowRef* crossing is found, it becomes *TLF*. (Use linear interpolation if necessary.)
4. $FallTime = TLF - THF$

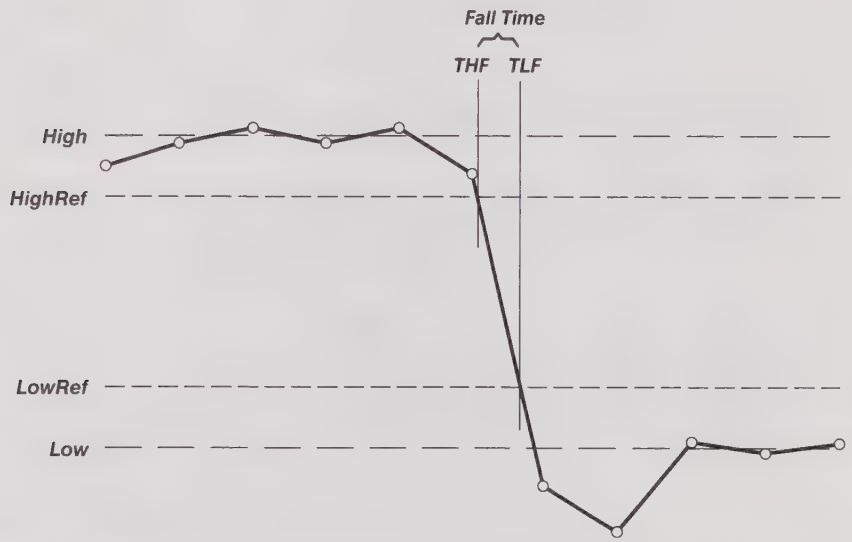


Figure A-2: Fall Time

Frequency

Timing measurement. The reciprocal of the period. Measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.

If *Period* = 0 or is otherwise bad, return an error.

$Frequency = 1/Period$

High

100% (highest) voltage reference value. (See "High, Low" earlier in this section)

Using the min-max measurement technique:

$High = Max$

Low

0% (lowest) voltage reference value calculated. (See "High, Low" earlier in this section)

Using the min-max measurement technique:

$$Low = Min$$

Maximum

Amplitude (voltage) measurement. The maximum voltage. Typically the most positive peak voltage.

Examine all *Waveform[ ]* samples from *Start* to *End* inclusive and set *Max* equal to the greatest magnitude *Waveform[ ]* value found.

Mean

The arithmetic mean for one waveform. Remember that one waveform is not necessarily equal to one cycle. For cyclical data you may prefer to use the cycle mean rather than the arithmetic mean.

if *Start* = *End* then return the (interpolated) value at *Start*.

Otherwise,

$$Mean = \frac{\int_{Start}^{End} Waveform(t)\mathrm{d}t}{(End - Start) \times SampleInterval}$$

For details of the integration algorithm, see page A-34.

Minimum

Amplitude (voltage) measurement. The minimum amplitude. Typically the most negative peak voltage.

Examine all *Waveform[ ]* samples from *Start* to *End* inclusive and set *Min* equal to the smallest magnitude *Waveform[ ]* value found.

Negative Duty Cycle

Timing measurement. The ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period expressed as a percentage.

NegativeWidth is defined in **Negative Width**, below.

If *Period* = 0 or undefined then return an error.

$$NegativeDutyCycle = \frac{NegativeWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$$

Negative Overshoot

Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$NegativeOvershoot = \frac{Low - Min}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Note that this value should never be negative (unless High or Low are set out-of-range).

Negative Width

Timing measurement. The distance (time) between *MidRef* (default = 50%) amplitude points of a negative pulse.

If $MCross1Polarity$ = '–'

then

$$NegativeWidth = (MCross2 - MCross1)$$

else

$$NegativeWidth = (MCross3 - MCross2)$$

Peak to Peak

Amplitude measurement. The absolute difference between the maximum and minimum amplitude.

$$PeaktoPeak = Max - Min$$

Period

Timing measurement. Time taken for one complete signal cycle. The reciprocal of frequency. Measured in seconds.

$$Period = MCross3 - MCross1$$

Positive Duty Cycle

Timing measurement. The ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

PositiveWidth is defined in **Positive Width**, following.

If *Period* = 0 or undefined then return an error.

$$PositiveDutyCycle = \frac{PositiveWidth}{Period} \times 100\%$$

Positive Overshoot

Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$PositiveOvershoot = \frac{Max - High}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Note that this value should never be negative.

Positive Width

Timing measurement. The distance (time) between *MidRef* (default = 50%) amplitude points of a positive pulse.

If *MCross1Polarity* = '+'

then

$$PositiveWidth = (MCross2 - MCross1)$$

else

$$PositiveWidth = (MCross3 - MCross2)$$

Rise Time

Timing measurement. Time taken for the leading edge of a pulse to rise from a *LowRef* value (default = 10%) to a *HighRef* value (default = 90%).

Figure A-3 shows a rising edge with the two crossings necessary to calculate a Rise Time measurement.

1. Searching from *Start* to *End*, find the first sample in the measurement zone less than *LowRef*.
2. From this sample, continue the search to find the first (positive) crossing of *LowRef*. The time of this crossing is the low rise time or *TLR*. (Use linear interpolation if necessary.)
3. From *TLR*, continue the search, looking for a crossing of *HighRef*. Update *TLR* if subsequent *LowRef* crossings are found. If a *HighRef* crossing is found, it becomes the high rise time or *THR*. (Use linear interpolation if necessary.)
4. $RiseTime = THR - TLR$

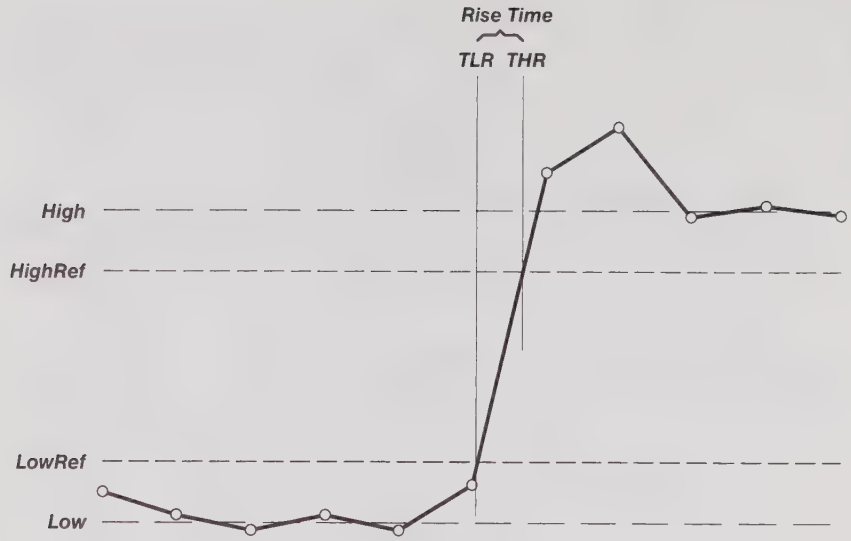


Figure A-3: Rise Time

RMS:

Amplitude (voltage) measurement. The true Root Mean Square voltage.

If *Start* = *End* then *RMS* = the (interpolated) value at *Waveform[Start]*.

Otherwise,

$$RMS = \sqrt{\frac{\int_{Start}^{End} (Waveform(t))^2 dt}{(End - Start) \times SampleInterval)}}$$

For details of the integration algorithm, see below.

Integration Algorithm

The integration algorithm used by the digitizing oscilloscope is as follows:

$\int_A^B W(t)dt$ is approximated by $\int_A^B \hat{W}(t)dt$ where:

$W(t)$ is the sampled waveform

$\hat{W}(t)$ is the continuous function obtained by linear interpolation of $W(t)$

A and B are numbers between 0.0 and $RecordLength - 1.0$

If A and B are integers, then:

$$\int_A^B \hat{W}(t)dt = s \times \sum_{i=A}^{B-1} \frac{W(i) + W(i+1)}{2}$$

where *s* is the sample interval.

Similarly,

$\int_A^B (W(t))^2 dt$ is approximated by $\int_A^B \left(\hat{W}(t)\right)^2 dt$ where:

W(t) is the sampled waveform

$\hat{W}(t)$ is the continuous function obtained by linear interpolation of *W(t)*

A and *B* are numbers between 0.0 and *RecordLength* − 1.0

If *A* and *B* are integers, then:

$$\int_A^B \left(\hat{W}(t)\right)^2 dt = s \times \sum_{i=A}^{B-1} \frac{(W(i))^2 + W(i) \times W(i+1) + (W(i+1))^2}{3}$$

where *s* is the sample interval.

Measurements on Envelope Waveforms

Time measurements on envelope waveforms must be treated differently from time measurements on other waveforms, because envelope waveforms contain so many apparent crossings. Unless otherwise noted, envelope waveforms use either the minima or the maxima (but not both), determined in the following manner:

1. Step through the waveform from *Start* to *End* until the sample min and max pair *DO NOT* straddle *MidRef*.
2. If the pair > *MidRef*, use the minima, else use maxima.

   If all pairs straddle *MidRef*, use maxima. See Figure A-4.

The Burst Width measurement always uses both maxima and minima to determine crossings.

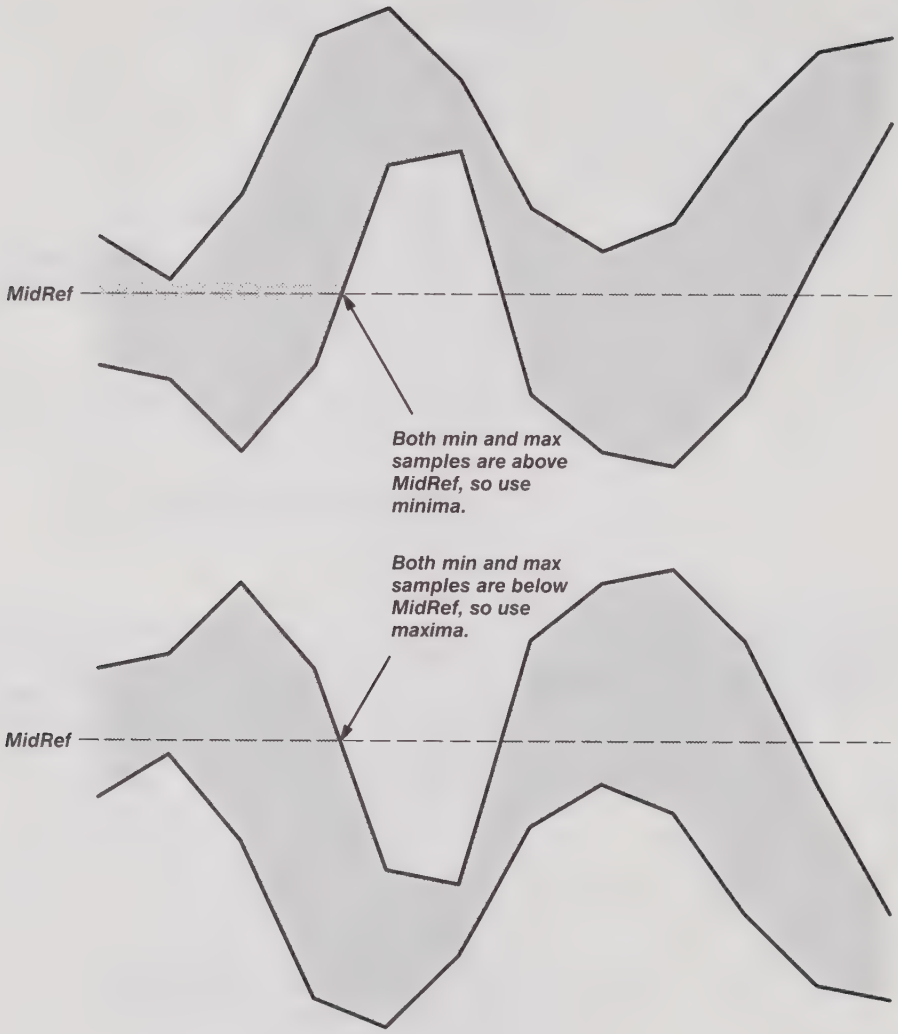

MidRef
Both min and max samples are above MidRef, so use minima.
Both min and max samples are below MidRef, so use maxima.
MidRef

Figure A-4: Choosing Minima or Maxima to Use for Envelope Measurements

For example, if *MidRef* is set directly, then *MidRef* would not change even if samples were out of range. However, if *MidRef* was chosen using the **%** choice from the Measure menu's **Set Levels in % Units** selection, then *MidRef* could give a "CLIPPING" warning.

NOTE

When measurements are displayed using Snapshot, out of range warnings are NOT available. However, if you question the validity of any measurement in the snapshot display, you can select and display the measurement individually and then check for a warning message.

Appendix D: Packaging for Shipment

If you ship the digitizing oscilloscope, pack it in the original shipping carton and packing material. If the original packing material is not available, package the instrument as follows:

1. Obtain a corrugated cardboard shipping carton with inside dimensions at least 15 cm (6 in) taller, wider, and deeper than the digitizing oscilloscope. The shipping carton must be constructed of cardboard with 170 kg (375 pound) test strength.
2. If you are shipping the digitizing oscilloscope to a Tektronix field office for repair, attach a tag to the digitizing oscilloscope showing the instrument owner and address, the name of the person to contact about the instrument, the instrument type, and the serial number.
3. Wrap the digitizing oscilloscope with polyethylene sheeting or equivalent material to protect the finish.
4. Cushion the digitizing oscilloscope in the shipping carton by tightly packing dunnage or urethane foam on all sides between the carton and the digitizing oscilloscope. Allow 7.5 cm (3 in) on all sides, top, and bottom.
5. Seal the shipping carton with shipping tape or an industrial stapler.

Appendix E: Factory Initialization Settings

The factory initialization settings provide you a known state for the digitizing oscilloscope.

Settings

Factory initialization sets values as shown in Table A-24.

Table A-24: Factory Initialization Defaults

Control	Changed by Factory Init to
Acquire mode	Sample
Acquire repetitive signal	ON (Enable ET)
Acquire stop after	RUN/STOP button only
Acquire # of averages	16
Acquire # of envelopes	10
Channel selection	Channel 1 on, all others off
Cursor H Bar 1 position	10% of graticule height (−3.2 divs from the center)
Cursor H Bar 2 position	90% of the graticule height (+3.2 divs from the center)
Cursor V Bar 1 position	10% of the record length
Cursor V Bar 2 position	90% of the record length
Cursor mode	Independent
Cursor function	Off
Cursor time units	Seconds
Delayed edge trigger coupling	DC
Delayed edge trigger level	0 V
Delayed edge trigger slope	Rising
Delayed edge trigger source	Channel 1
Delay trigger average #	16
Delay trigger envelope #	10

Table A-24: Factory Initialization Defaults (Cont.)

Control	Changed by Factory Init to
Delay time, delayed runs after main	10 ns
Delay time, delayed triggerable after main	60 ns
Delay events, triggerable after main	2
Delayed, delay by ...	Delay by Time
Delayed, time base mode	Delayed Runs After Main
Display clock	No Change
Display format	YT
Display graticule type	Full
Display intensity – contrast	125%
Display intensity – text	60%
Display intensity – waveform	80%
Display intensity – overall	85%
Display interpolation filter	Sin(x)/x
Display style	Vectors
Display trigger bar style	Short
Display trigger "T"	On
Display variable persistence	500 ms
Edge trigger coupling	DC
Edge trigger level	0.0 V
Edge trigger slope	Rising
Edge trigger source	Channel 1
Horizontal – delay trigger position	50%
Horizontal – delay trigger record length	500 points (10 divs)
Horizontal – delay time/division	50 μs
Horizontal – main trigger position	50%

Table A-24: Factory Initialization Defaults (Cont.)

Control	Changed by Factory Init to
Horizontal – main trigger record length	500 points (10 divs)
Horizontal – main time/division	500 µs
Horizontal – time base	Main only
Limit Testing	Off
Limit Testing – hardcopy if condition met	Off
Limit Testing – ring bell if condition met	Off
Main trigger holdoff	0%
Main trigger mode	Auto
Main trigger type	Edge
Math1 definition	Ch 1 + Ch 2
Math2 definition	Ch 1 – Ch 2 (FFT of Ch 1 for Option 2F instruments)
Math3 definition	Inv of Ch 1
Measure Delay to	Channel 1 (Ch1)
Measure Delay edges	Both rising and forward searching
Measure High-Low Setup	Histogram
Measure High Ref	90% and 0 V (units)
Measure Low Ref	10% and 0 V (units)
Measure Mid Ref	50% and 0 V (units)
Measure Mid2 Ref	50% and 0 V (units)
Saved setups	No change
Saved waveforms	No change
Vertical bandwidth (all channels)	Full
Vertical coupling (all channels)	DC
Vertical impedance (termination) (all channels)	1 MΩ
Vertical offset (all channels)	0 V
Vertical position (all channels)	0 divs.

Table A-24: Factory Initialization Defaults (Cont.)

Control	Changed by Factory Init to
Vertical volts/div. (all channels)	100 mV/div.
Zoom horizontal (all channels)	1.0X
Zoom horizontal lock	All
Zoom horizontal position (all channels)	50% = 0.5 (the middle of the display)
Zoom state	Off
Zoom vertical (all channels)	1.0X
Zoom vertical position (all channels)	0 divs.

Appendix F: Remote Display

You can connect a remote display to the VGA 9-pin D connector on the rear panel. Table A-4 on page A-5 gives the part number of a properly shielded cable that is commercially available.

Because display manufacturers use different pin combinations and connectors, you may find the following information helpful.

Table A-25: VGA Output Connector Pins

Pin	Signal
2	Video (monochrome analog)
4	Horizontal sync @ 31.5 kHz (VGA rate)
5	Vertical sync
6, 7, 8	Ground

Instructions

Tektronix

TDS Family
Option 2F Advanced DSP Math

070-8582-01

First Printing: December 1992

Instrument Serial Numbers

Each instrument manufactured by Tektronix has a serial number on a panel insert or tag, or stamped on the chassis. The first letter in the serial number designates the country of manufacture. The last five digits of the serial number are assigned sequentially and are unique to each instrument. Those manufactured in the United States have six unique digits. The country of manufacture is identified as follows:

B010000	Tektronix, Inc., Beaverton, Oregon, USA
E200000	Tektronix United Kingdom, Ltd., London
J300000	Sony/Tektronix, Japan
H700000	Tektronix Holland, NV, Heerenveen, The Netherlands

Instruments manufactured for Tektronix by external vendors outside the United States are assigned a two digit alpha code to identify the country of manufacture (e.g., JP for Japan, HK for Hong Kong, IL for Israel, etc.).

Tektronix, Inc., P.O. Box 500, Beaverton, OR 97077

Printed in U.S.A.

Copyright © Tektronix, Inc., 1992. All rights reserved. Tektronix products are covered by U.S. and foreign patents, issued and pending. The following are registered trademarks: TEKTRONIX, TEK, TEKPROBE, and SCOPE-MOBILE.

WARRANTY

Tektronix warrants that this product will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of three (3) years from the date of shipment. If any such product proves defective during this warranty period, Tektronix, at its option, either will repair the defective product without charge for parts and labor, or will provide a replacement in exchange for the defective product.

In order to obtain service under this warranty, Customer must notify Tektronix of the defect before the expiration of the warranty period and make suitable arrangements for the performance of service. Customer shall be responsible for packaging and shipping the defective product to the service center designated by Tektronix, with shipping charges prepaid. Tektronix shall pay for the return of the product to Customer if the shipment is to a location within the country in which the Tektronix service center is located. Customer shall be responsible for paying all shipping charges, duties, taxes, and any other charges for products returned to any other locations.

This warranty shall not apply to any defect, failure or damage caused by improper use or improper or inadequate maintenance and care. Tektronix shall not be obligated to furnish service under this warranty a) to repair damage resulting from attempts by personnel other than Tektronix representatives to install, repair or service the product; b) to repair damage resulting from improper use or connection to incompatible equipment; or c) to service a product that has been modified or integrated with other products when the effect of such modification or integration increases the time or difficulty of servicing the product.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN BY TEKTRONIX WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. TEKTRONIX' RESPONSIBILITY TO REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE PRODUCTS IS THE SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY PROVIDED TO THE CUSTOMER FOR BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY. TEKTRONIX AND ITS VENDORS WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER TEKTRONIX OR THE VENDOR HAS ADVANCE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Welcome

This instruction manual describes Option 2F, the Advanced DSP Math option. Included in this manual are the following subsections:

- Product Description (follows this introduction)
- Fast Fourier Transforms
- Waveform Differentiation
- Waveform Integration

Related Manuals

This manual only documents Option 2F. The following documents cover all other aspects related to the use or service of the oscilloscope. If ordering any of these manuals, order by the manual title and the model of your oscilloscope.

- The *TDS User Manual* guides the user in operation of this oscilloscope and describes its features. It also contains a tutorial, a specification, and other useful information related to your oscilloscope.
- The *TDS Series Programmer Manual* describes how to use a computer to control the oscilloscope through the GPIB interface.
- The *TDS Reference* gives you a quick overview of how to operate your oscilloscope.
- The *TDS Performance Verification* tells how to verify the performance of the oscilloscope.
- The *TDS Service Manual* provides information for maintaining and servicing your oscilloscope.

Conventions

In this manual, you will find various procedures that contain steps of instructions for you to perform. To keep those instructions clear and consistent, this manual uses the following conventions:

- Names of front panel controls and menu labels appear in boldface print.
- Names also appear in the same case (initial capitals, all uppercase, etc.) in the manual as is used on the oscilloscope front panel and menus. Front panel names are all upper case letters, for example, **VERTICAL MENU**, **CH 1**, etc.
- Instruction steps are numbered. The number is omitted if there is only one step.

- When steps require that you make a sequence of selections using front panel controls and menu buttons, an arrow (→) marks each transition between a front panel button and a menu, or between menus. Also, whether a name is a main menu or side menu item is clearly indicated: Press **VERTICAL MENU** → **Offset** (main) → **Set to 0 V** (side) → **Position** (main) → **Set to 0 divs** (side).

  Using the convention just described results in instructions that are graphically intuitive and simplifies procedures. For example, the instruction just given replaces these five steps:

  1. Press the front panel button **VERTICAL MENU**.
  2. Press the main menu button **Offset**.
  3. Press the side-menu button **Set to 0 V**.
  4. Press the main menu button **Position**
  5. Press the side menu button **Set to 0 divs**

- Sometimes you may have to make a selection from a popup menu: Press **SHIFT UTILITY** → **SYSTEM** (popup). In this example, you repeatedly press the main menu button **SYSTEM** until **I/O** (for example) is highlighted in the pop-up menu.

Contents

Contents vii

Safety ix

Product Description xi

Fast Fourier Transforms

Description 1-1

Operation 1-2

Displaying an FFT 1-2

Cursor Measurements of an FFT 1-5

Automated Measurements of an FFT 1-7

Considerations for Using FFTs 1-7

The FFT Frequency Domain Record 1-7

Offset, Position, and Scale 1-9

Record Length 1-10

Acquisition Mode 1-10

Zoom and Interpolation 1-11

Undersampling (Aliasing) 1-11

Considerations for Phase Displays 1-12

FFT Windows 1-14

Waveform Differentiation

Description 2-1

Operation 2-1

Displaying a Differentiated Waveform 2-1

Automated Measurements of a Derivative Waveform 2-2

Cursor Measurement of a Derivative Waveform 2-3

Usage Considerations 2-3

Offset, Position, and Scale 2-4

Zoom 2-4

Waveform Integration

Description 3-1

Operation 3-1

Displaying an Integral Waveform 3-1

Cursor Measurements of an Integral Waveform 3-2

Automated Measurements of a Integral Waveform 3-4

Usage Considerations 3-4

Offset, Position, and Scale 3-4
DC Offset 3-4
Zoom 3-5

Index

Safety

Please take a moment to review these safety precautions. They are provided for your protection and to prevent damage to the digitizing oscilloscope. This safety information applies to all operators and service personnel.

Symbols and Terms

These two terms appear in manuals:

- CAUTION statements identify conditions or practices that could result in damage to the equipment or other property.
- WARNING statements identify conditions or practices that could result in personal injury or loss of life.

These two terms appear on equipment:

- *CAUTION* indicates a personal injury hazard not immediately accessible as one reads the marking, or a hazard to property including the equipment itself.
- *DANGER* indicates a personal injury hazard immediately accessible as one reads the marking.

This symbol appears in manuals:

Static-Sensitive Devices

These symbols appear on equipment:

DANGER
High Voltage

Protective
ground (earth)
terminal

ATTENTION
Refer to
manual

Specific Precautions

Observe all of these precautions to ensure your personal safety and to prevent damage to either the digitizing oscilloscope or equipment connected to it.

Power Source

The digitizing oscilloscope is intended to operate from a power source that will not apply more than 250 V_{RMS} between the supply conductors or between either supply conductor and ground. A protective ground connection, through the grounding conductor in the power cord, is essential for safe system operation.

Grounding the Digitizing Oscilloscope

The digitizing oscilloscope is grounded through the power cord. To avoid electric shock, plug the power cord into a properly wired receptacle where earth ground has been verified by a qualified service person. Do this before making connections to the input or output terminals of the digitizing oscilloscope.

Without the protective ground connection, all parts of the digitizing oscilloscope are potential shock hazards. This includes knobs and controls that may appear to be insulators.

Use the Proper Power Cord

Use only the power cord and connector specified for your product. Use only a power cord that is in good condition.

Use the Proper Fuse

To avoid fire hazard, use only the fuse specified in the parts list for your product, matched by type, voltage rating, and current rating.

Do Not Remove Covers or Panels

To avoid personal injury, do not operate the digitizing oscilloscope without the panels or covers.

Electric Overload

Never apply to a connector on the digitizing oscilloscope a voltage that is outside the range specified for that connector.

Do Not Operate in Explosive Atmospheres

The digitizing oscilloscope provides no explosion protection from static discharges or arcing components. Do not operate the digitizing oscilloscope in an atmosphere of explosive gases.

Product Description

Option 2F, Advanced DSP Math, is an option to the TDS Family Digitizing Oscilloscopes. It can be ordered only at the time the oscilloscope is purchased.

TDS oscilloscopes use a proprietary Digital Signal Processor (DSP) to convert normally acquired waveforms into simple math waveforms (inverts a waveform, adds, subtracts, multiplies two waveforms). Option 2F adds three new complex math waveforms to the oscilloscope:

FFT (Fast Fourier Transform) Math—transforms a displayed waveform from the time domain to the frequency domain by applying the Fast Fourier Transform. FFT Math features the following capabilities:

- Displays the magnitude of the various frequencies the source waveform contains or, optionally, the phase angle of those frequencies
- Measures magnitude in linear V_{RMS} or dB with respect to 1 V_{RMS}; measures phase in degrees or radians
- Provides phase suppression to reduce the phase angle to zero for frequencies with magnitudes below a user-specified threshold
- Transforms source waveforms with record lengths of 500, 1,000, 5,000, 15,000, 30,000, 50,000, and 60,000 points. (Your model oscilloscope will not have all of these these record lengths; consult your User manual to determine which are available with your TDS model.)
- Operates on source waveforms displayed in any channel or reference memory (the source cannot be another math waveform)
- Provides the following FFT windows to optimize frequency resolution and magnitude measurement accuracy: rectangular, Hamming, Hanning, and Blackman-Harris
- Executes an FFT in as little as 64.2 milliseconds (1,000 point FFT)
- Updates the display up to ten times per second (1,000 point FFT)
- Corrects FFT DC error automatically
- Allows cursor and automatic measurements of FFT math waveforms

Derivative Math—differentiates, with respect to time, a waveform displayed from a channel or from a reference memory. Derivative math waveforms measure the instantaneous rate of change of a waveform.

Integral Math—integrates over time a waveform displayed from a channel or from a reference memory. Integral math waveforms display the total area under a waveform with respect to ground.

Fast Fourier Transforms

Fast Fourier Transforms

Using the Fast Fourier Transform (FFT), you can transform a waveform from a display of its amplitude against time to one that plots the amplitudes of the various discrete frequencies the waveform contains. Further, you can also display the phase shifts of those frequencies. Use FFT math waveforms in the following applications:

- Testing impulse response of filters and systems
- Measuring harmonic content and distortion in systems
- Characterizing the frequency content of DC power supplies
- Analyzing vibration
- Analyzing harmonics in 50 and 60 cycle lines
- Identifying noise sources in digital logic circuits

Description

The FFT computes and displays the frequency content of a waveform you acquire as an FFT math waveform. This *frequency domain* waveform is based on the following equation:

$$X(k) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n = \frac{-N}{2}}^{\frac{N}{2} - 1} x(n) e^{-\frac{j2\pi nk}{N}} \quad for: k = 0 \text{ to } N - 1$$

Where: *x(n) is a point in the time domain record data array*
X(k) is a point in the frequency domain record data array
n is the index to the time domain data array
k is the index to the frequency domain data array
N is the FFT length
j is the square root of –1

The resulting waveform is a display of the magnitude or phase angle of the various frequencies the waveform contains with respect to those frequencies. For example, Figure 1-1 shows the non-transformed impulse response of a system in channel 2 at the top of the screen. The FFT-transformed magnitude and phase appear in the two math waveforms below the impulse. The horizontal scale for FFT math waveforms is always expressed in frequency/division with the beginning (left-most point) of the waveform representing zero frequency (DC).

The FFT waveform is based on digital signal processing (DSP) of data, which allows more versatility in measuring the frequency content of waveforms. For example, DSP allows the oscilloscope to compute FFTs of source waveforms that must be acquired based on a single trigger, making it useful for measuring the frequency content of single events. (The TDS 800 model oscilloscopes must have repetitive triggers; therefore, they cannot compute FFTs of single events.) DSP also allows the phase as well as the magnitude to be displayed.

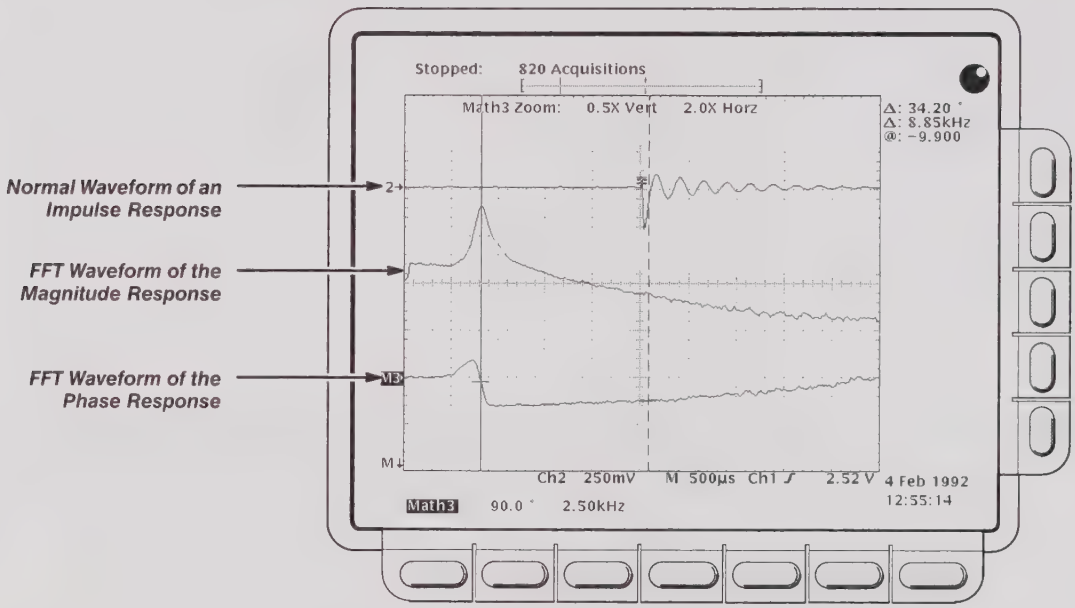

Normal Waveform of an Impulse Response
FFT Waveform of the Magnitude Response
FFT Waveform of the Phase Response
Stopped: 820 Acquisitions
Math3 Zoom: 0.5X Vert 2.0X Horz
Δ: 34.20 °
Δ: 8.85kHz
@: -9.900
Ch2 250mV M 500µs Ch1 ƒ 2.52 V
4 Feb 1992
12:55:14
Math3 90.0 ° 2.50kHz

Figure 1-1: System Response to an Impulse

Operation

To obtain an FFT of your waveform, do these basic tasks:

- Acquire and display it normally (that is, in the time domain) in your choice of input channels.
- Transform it to the frequency domain using the math waveform menu.
- Use cursors or automated measurements to measure its parameters.

Use the following procedure to perform these tasks.

Displaying an FFT

1. Connect the waveform to the desired channel input and select that channel.

2. Adjust the vertical and horizontal scales and trigger the display (or press **AUTOSET**).

   The topic *Offset, Position, and Scale,* on page 1-9, provides in depth information about optimizing your setup for FFT displays.

3. Press **MORE** to access the menu for turning on math waveforms.

4. Select a math waveform. Your choices are **Math1**, **Math2**, and **Math3** (main).

5. Press **Change Math Definition** (side) → **FFT** (main).
   See Figure 1-2.

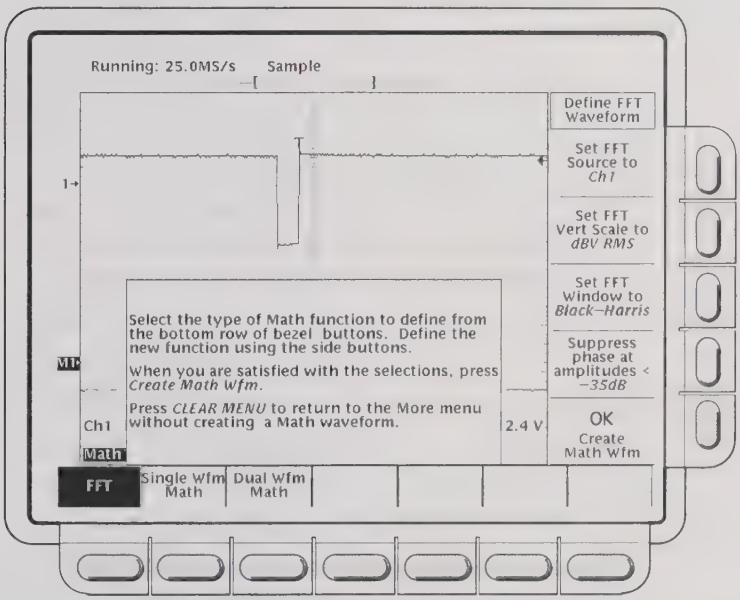

Running: 25.0MS/s Sample
Define FFT Waveform
Set FFT Source to Ch1
Set FFT Vert Scale to dBV RMS
Set FFT Window to Black–Harris
Suppress phase at amplitudes < −35dB
OK Create Math Wfm
Select the type of Math function to define from the bottom row of bezel buttons. Define the new function using the side buttons.
When you are satisfied with the selections, press Create Math Wfm.
Press CLEAR MENU to return to the More menu without creating a Math waveform.
Ch1
2.4 V
Math
FFT
Single Wfm Math
Dual Wfm Math

Figure 1-2: Define FFT Waveform Menu

6. Press **Set FFT Source to** (side) repeatedly (or use the general purpose knob) until the channel source selected in step 1 appears in the menu label.

7. Press **Set FFT Vert Scale to** (side) repeatedly to choose from the following vertical scale types:

   - **dBV RMS**—Magnitude is displayed using log scale, expressed in dB relative to 1 V_{RMS} where 0 dB = 1 V_{RMS}.
   - **Linear RMS**—Magnitude is displayed using voltage as the scale.
   - **Phase (deg)**—Phase is displayed using degrees as the scale, where degrees wrap from −180° to +180 .

- **Phase (rad)**—Phase is displayed using radians as the scale, where radians wrap from $-\pi$ to $+\pi$.

The topic *Considerations for Phase Displays,* on page 1-12, provides in depth information on setup for phase displays.

8. Press **Set FFT Window to** (side) repeatedly to choose from the following window types:

   - **Rectangular**—Best type for resolving frequencies that are very close to the same value but worst for accurately measuring the amplitude of those frequencies. Best type for measuring the frequency spectrum of non-repetitive signals and measuring frequency components near DC.
   - **Hamming**—Very good window for resolving frequencies that are very close to the same value with somewhat improved amplitude accuracy over the rectangular window.
   - **Hanning** —Very good window for measuring amplitude accuracy but degraded for resolving frequencies.
   - **Blackman-Harris**—Best window for measuring the amplitude of frequencies but worst at resolving frequencies.

   The topic *Selecting the Window,* on page 1-14, provides in depth information on choosing the right window for your application.

9. If you did not select **Phase (deg)** or **Phase (rad)** in step 7, skip to step 12. Phase suppression is only used to reduce noise in phase FFTs.
10. If you need to reduce the effect of noise in your phase FFT, press **Suppress phase at amplitudes** (side).
11. Use the general purpose knob (or the keypad if your oscilloscope is so equipped) to adjust the phase suppression level. FFT magnitudes below this level will have their phase set to zero.

    The topic *Adjust Phase Suppression,* on page 1-13, provides additional information on phase suppression.

12. Press **OK Create Math Wfm** (side) to display the FFT of the waveform you input in step 1.

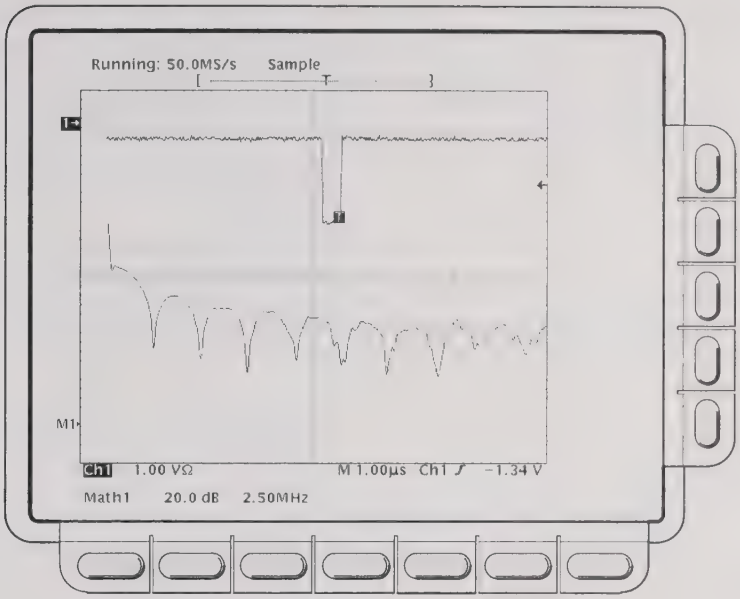


Figure 1-3: FFT Math Waveform in Math1

Cursor Measurements of an FFT

Once you have displayed an FFT math waveform, use cursors to measure its frequency amplitude or phase angle.

1. Be sure **MORE** is selected in the channel selection buttons and that the FFT math waveform is selected in the **More** main menu.
2. Press **CURSOR** → **Mode** (main) → **Independent** (side) → **Function** (main) → **H Bars** (side).
3. Use the general purpose knob to align the selected cursor (solid line) to the top (or to any amplitude on the waveform you choose).
4. Press **TOGGLE** to select the other cursor. Use the general purpose knob to align the selected cursor to the bottom (or to any amplitude on the waveform you choose).
5. Read the amplitude between the two cursors from the **Δ:** readout. Read the amplitude of the selected cursor relative to either 1 V_{RMS} (0 dB), ground (0 volts), or the zero phase level (0 degrees or 0 radians) from the **@:** readout. (The waveform reference indicator at the left side of the graticule indicates the level where phase is zero for phase FFTs.)

   Figure 1-4 shows the cursor measurement of a frequency magnitude on an FFT. The **@:** readout reads 0 dB because it is aligned with the 1 V_{RMS} level. The **Δ:** readout reads 24.4 dB indicating the magnitude of the frequency it is measuring is −24.4 dB relative to 1 V_{RMS}. The source waveform is turned off in the display.

The cursor units will be in dB or volts for FFTs measuring magnitude and in degrees or radians for those FFTs measuring phase. The cursor unit depends on the selection made for **Set FFT Vert Scale to** (side). See step 7 on page 1-3 for more information.

6. Press **V Bars** (side). Use the general purpose knob to align one of the two vertical cursors to a point of interest along the horizontal axis of the waveform.
7. Press **TOGGLE** to select the alternate cursor.
8. Align the alternate cursor to another point of interest on the math waveform.
9. Read the frequency difference between the cursors from the **Δ:** readout. Read the frequency of the selected cursor relative to the zero frequency point from the **@:** readout.

   The cursor units will always be in Hz, regardless of the setting in the **Time Units** side menu. The first point of the FFT record is the zero frequency point for the **@:** readout.

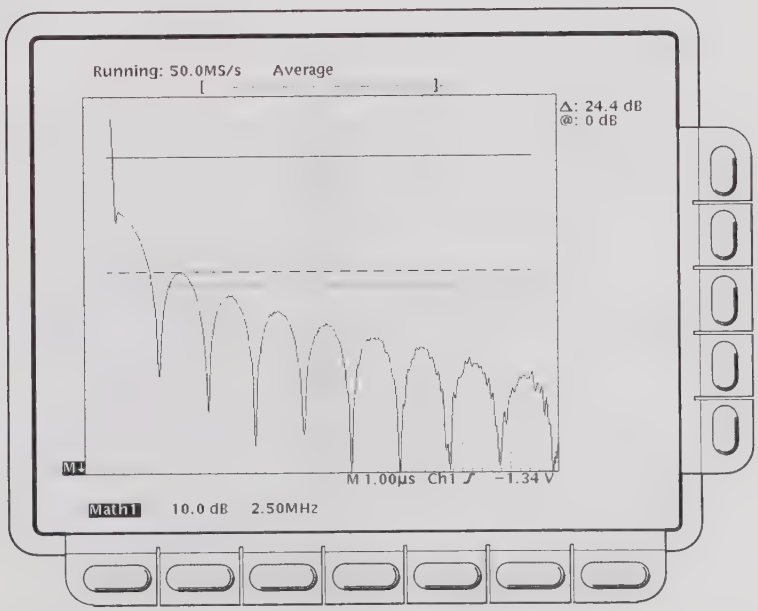


Figure 1-4: Cursor Measurement of an FFT Waveform

10. Press **Function** (main) → **Paired** (side).
11. Use the technique just outlined to place the vertical bar of each paired cursor to the points along the horizontal axis you are interested in.

12. Read the amplitude between the short horizontal bar of the two paired cursors from the top-most **Δ:** readout. Read the amplitude of the short horizontal bar of the selected (solid) cursor relative to either 1 V_{RMS} (0 dB), ground (0 volts), or zero phase level (0 degrees or 0 radians) from the **@:** readout. Read the frequency between the long horizontal bars of both paired cursors from the bottom **Δ:** readout.

Automated Measurements of an FFT

You can also use automated measurements to measure FFT math waveforms. Use the same procedure as is found under *Waveform Differentiation* on page 2-2.

Considerations for Using FFTs

There are several characteristics of FFTs that affect how they are displayed and should be interpreted. Read the following topics to learn how to optimize the oscilloscope setup for good display of your FFT waveforms.

The FFT Frequency Domain Record

The following topics discuss the relation of the source waveform to the record length, frequency resolution, and frequency range of the FFT frequency domain record. (The FFT frequency domain waveform is the FFT math waveform that you display.)

FFTs May Not Use All of the Waveform Record—The *FFT math waveform* is a display of the magnitude or phase data from the *FFT frequency domain record.* This frequency domain record is derived from the FFT time domain record, which is derived from the *waveform record.* All three records are described below.

Waveform Record—the complete waveform record acquired from an input channel and displayed from the same channel or a reference memory. The length of this *time domain* record is user-specified from the Horizontal menu. The waveform record is not a DSP Math waveform.

FFT Time Domain Record—that part of the waveform record that is input to the FFT. This time domain record waveform becomes the FFT math waveform after it is transformed. Its record length depends on the length of the waveform record defined above.

FFT Frequency Domain Record—the FFT math waveform after digital signal processing converts data from the FFT time domain record into a frequency domain record.

Figure 1-5 compares the waveform record to the FFT time domain record. Note the following relationships:

- For waveform records ≤10 K points in length, the FFT uses all of the waveform record as input.

- For waveform records >10 K points, the first 10 K points of the waveform record becomes the FFT time domain record.
- Each FFT time domain record starts at the beginning of the acquired waveform record.
- The zero phase reference point for a phase FFT math waveform is in the middle of the FFT time domain record regardless of the waveform record length.

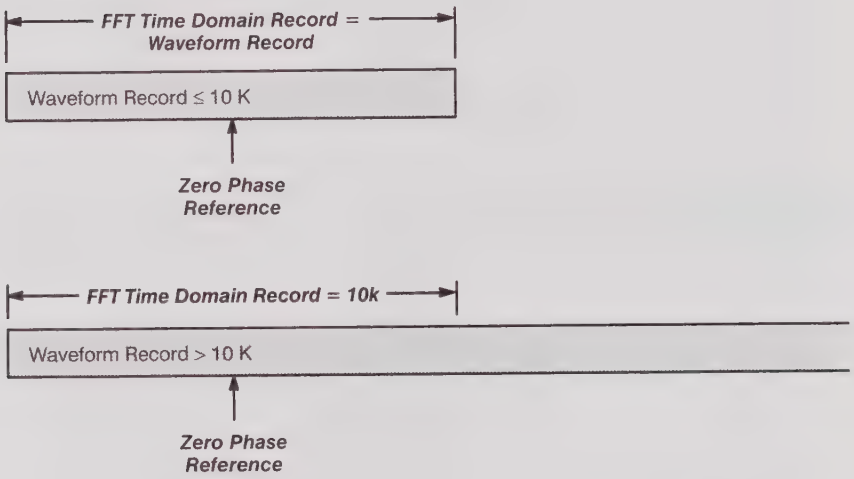


Figure 1-5: Waveform Record vs. FFT Time Domain Record

FFTs Transform Time Records to Frequency Records—The FFT time domain record just described is input for the FFT. Figure 1-6 shows the transformation of that time domain data record into an FFT frequency domain record. The resulting frequency domain record is one half the length of the FFT input because the FFT computes both positive and negative frequencies. Since the negative values mirror the positive values, only the positive values are displayed.

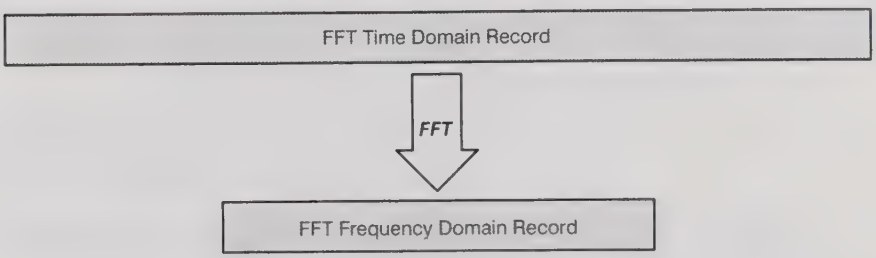


Figure 1-6: FFT Time Domain Record vs. FFT Frequency Domain Record

FFT Frequency Range and Resolution—When you turn on an FFT waveform, the oscilloscope displays either the magnitude or phase angle of the FFT frequency domain record. The resolution between the discrete frequencies displayed in this waveform is determined by the following equation:

$$\Delta F = \frac{Sample\ Rate}{FFT\ Length}$$

Where: *ΔF is the frequency resolution.*

Sample Rate is the sample rate of the source waveform.

FFT Length is the length of the FFT Time Domain waveform record.

The sample rate also determines the range these frequencies span; they span from 0 to ½ the sample rate of the waveform record. (The value of ½ the sample rate is often referred to as the Nyquist frequency or point.) For example, a sample rate of 20 Megasamples/second would yield an FFT with a range of 0 to 10 MHz. The sample rates available for acquiring data records vary over a range the limits of which depend on your oscilloscope model. TDS oscilloscopes (except for TDS 800 models) display the sample rate in the acquisition readout at the top of the oscilloscope screen.

Offset, Position, and Scale

The following topics contain information to help you display your FFT properly.

Adjust for a Non-Clipped Display—To properly display your FFT waveform, scale the source waveform so it is not clipped.

- You should scale and position the source waveform so it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be "clipped," which will result in errors in the FFT waveform).

  Alternately, to get maximum vertical resolution, you can display source waveforms with amplitudes up to two divisions greater than that of the screen. If you do, turn on **Pk-Pk** in the measurement menu and monitor the source waveform for clipping.

- Use vertical position and vertical offset to position your *source* waveform. As long as the source waveform is not clipped, its vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your FFT waveform except at DC. (DC correction is discussed below.)

Adjust Offset and Position to Zero for DC Correction—Normally, the output of a standard FFT computation yields a DC value that is twice as large as it should be with respect to the other frequencies. Also, the selection of window type introduces errors in the DC value of an FFT.

The displayed output of the FFT on TDS oscilloscopes is corrected for these errors to show the true value for the DC component of the input signal. The **Position** and **Offset** must be set to zero for the source waveform in the Vertical menu. When measuring the amplitude at DC, remember that 1 VDC equals 1 V_{RMS} and the display is in dB.

Record Length

Most often, you will want to use a short record length because more of the FFT waveform can be seen on screen and long record lengths can slow oscilloscope response. However, long record lengths lower the noise relative to the signal and increase the frequency resolution for the FFT. More important, they might be needed to capture the waveform feature you want to include in the FFT.

To speed up oscilloscope response when using long record lengths, you can save your source waveform in a reference memory and perform an FFT on the saved waveform. That way the DSP will compute the FFT based on saved, static data and will only update if you save a new waveform.

Acquisition Mode

Selecting the right acquisition mode can produce less noisy FFTs.

Set up in Sample or Normal Mode—Use sample mode (all models *except* TDS 800 Oscilloscopes) until you have set up and turned on your FFT. Sample mode can acquire repetitive and nonrepetitive waveforms and does not affect the frequency response of the source waveform.

Use normal mode if your oscilloscope is a TDS 800 Oscilloscope (sample mode is not available). Like sample mode for other models, normal mode does not affect the frequency response; however, unlike sample mode, it can only acquire repetitive waveforms.

Hi Res and Average Reduce Noise—After the FFT is set up and displayed, it might be useful to turn on Hi Res mode, on TDS models so equipped, to reduce the effect of noise in the signal. Hi Res operates on both repetitive and nonrepetitive waveforms; however, it does affect the frequency response of the source waveform.

If the pulse is repetitive, then Average mode may be used to reduce noise in the signal at a cost of slower display response. Average operates on repetitive waveforms only, and averaging does effect the frequency response of the source waveform.

Peak Detect (on TDS models so equipped) and Envelope mode can add significant distortion to the FFT results and are not recommended for use with FFTs.

Zoom and Interpolation

Once you have your waveform displayed optimally, you may magnify (or reduce) it vertically and horizontally to inspect any feature you desire. Just be sure the FFT waveform is the selected waveform. (Press **MORE**, then select the FFT waveform in the More main menu. Then use the Vertical and Horizontal **SCALE** knobs to adjust the math waveform size.)

If you wish to see the zoom factor (2X, 5X, etc.) you need to turn Zoom on: press **ZOOM → On** (side). The vertical and horizontal zoom factors appear on screen.

Whether Zoom is on or off, you can press **Reset Zoom Factors** (side) to return the zoomed FFT waveform to no magnification.

Zoom always uses either sin(x)/x or linear interpolation when expanding displayed waveforms. To select the interpolation method: press **DISPLAY → Filter** (main) → **Sin(x)/x** or **Linear** (side).

If the source waveform record length is 500 points, the FFT will use 2X Zoom to increase the 250 point FFT frequency domain record to 500 points. Therefore, FFT math waveforms of 500 point waveforms are always zoomed 2X or more with interpolation. Waveforms with other record lengths can be zoomed or not and can have minimum Zooms of 1X or less.

Sin(x)/x interpolation may distort the magnitude and phase displays of the FFT depending on which window was used. You can easily check the effects of the interpolation by switching between sin(x)/x and linear interpolation and observing the difference in measurement results on the display. If significant differences occur, use linear interpolation.

Undersampling (Aliasing)

Aliasing occurs when the oscilloscope acquires a source waveform with frequency components outside of the frequency range for the current sample rate. In the FFT waveform, the actual higher frequency components are undersampled, and therefore, they appear as lower frequency aliases that "fold back" around the Nyquist point (see Figure 1-7).

The greatest frequency that can be input into any sampler without aliasing is ½ the sample frequency. Since source waveforms often have a fundamental frequency that does not alias but have harmonic frequencies that do, you should have methods for recognizing and dealing with aliases:

- Be aware that a source waveform with fast edge transition times creates many high frequency harmonics. These harmonics typically decrease in amplitude as their frequency increases.
- Sample the source signal at rates that are at least 2X that of the highest frequency component having significant amplitude.
- Filter the input to bandwidth limit it to frequencies below that of the Nyquist frequency.

- Recognize and ignore the aliased frequencies.

If you think you have aliased frequencies in your FFT, select the source channel and adjust the horizontal scale to increase the sample rate. Since you increase the Nyquist frequency as you increase the sample rate, the alias signals should "unfold" and appear at their proper frequency.

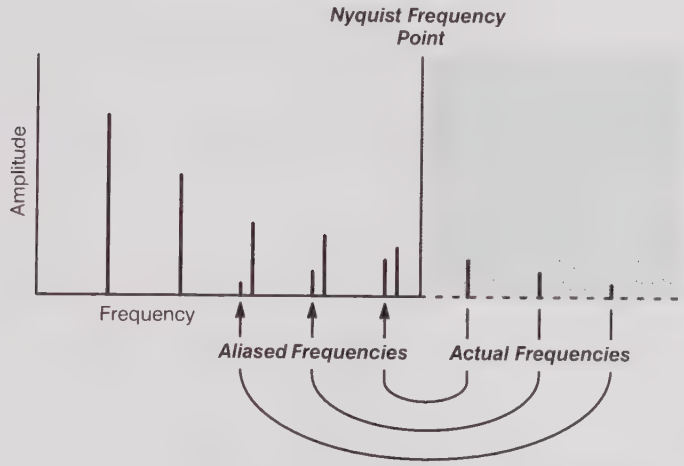


Figure 1-7: How Aliased Frequencies Appear in an FFT

Considerations for Phase Displays

When you setup an FFT math waveform to display the phase angle of the frequencies contained in a waveform, you should take into account the reference point the phase is measured against. You may also need to use phase suppression to reduce noise in your FFTs.

Establish a Zero Phase Reference Point—The phase of each frequency is measured with respect to the zero phase reference point. The zero reference point is the point at the center of the FFT math waveform but corresponds to various points on the *source* (time domain) record. (See Figure 1-5 on page 1-8.)

To measure the phase relative to most source waveforms, you need only to center the positive peak around the zero phase point. (For instance, center the positive half cycle for a sine or square wave around the zero phase point.) Use the following method:

- First be sure the FFT math waveform is selected in the More menu, then set horizontal position to 50% in the Horizontal menu. This positions the zero phase reference point to the horizontal center of the screen.

- In the Horizontal menu, vary the trigger position (time base position for TDS 800 model oscilloscopes) to center the positive peak of the source waveform at the horizontal center of screen. Alternately, you can adjust the trigger level (knob) to bring the positive peak to center screen if the phase reference waveform has slow enough edges.

When impulse testing and measuring phase, align the impulse input into the system to the zero reference point of the FFT time domain waveform:

- Set the trigger position (time base position for TDS 800 model oscilloscopes) to 50% and horizontal position to 50% for all record lengths less than 15 K. (Your model oscilloscope may not have record lengths of 15 K or longer—consult your User manual.)
- For records with a 15 K length, set the trigger position to 33% for all models *except TDS 800 oscilloscopes*. Use the horizontal position knob to move the trigger T on screen to the center horizontal graticule line.

  With TDS 800 oscilloscopes only, first set the record length to 5000 points in 1000 divisions. Then turn the horizontal position knob full counter clockwise, set the record length to 15000 points in 300 divisions, and adjust the time base position to move the impulse to the center horizontal graticule line.
- For records with 30 K, 50 K, or 60 K lengths (not all lengths are available for all TDS models—consult your User manual), set the trigger position to 16.6%,10%, or 8.3%, respectively. Use the horizontal position knob to move the trigger T on screen and to the center horizontal graticule line.
- Trigger on the input impulse.

Adjust Phase Suppression—Your source waveform record may have a noise component with phase angles that randomly vary from –pi to pi. This noise could make the phase display unusable. In such a case, use phase suppression to control the noise.

You specify the phase suppression level in dB with respect to 1 V_{RMS}. If the magnitude of the frequency is greater than this threshold, then its phase angle will be displayed. However, if it is less than this threshold, then the phase angle will be set to zero and be displayed as zero degrees or radians. (The waveform reference indicator at the left side of the graticule indicates the level where phase is zero for phase FFTs.)

It is easier to determine the level of phase suppression you need if you first create a *frequency* FFT math waveform of the source and then create a *phase* FFT waveform of the same source. Do the following steps to use a cursor measurement to determine the suppression level:

1. Do steps 1 through 7 of *Display an FFT* that begins on page 1-2. Select **dBV RMS** (side) for the **Set FFT Vert Scale to** (side).

2. Press **CURSOR** → **Mode** (main) → **Independent** (side) → **Function** (main) → **H Bars** (side). Use the general purpose knob to align the selected cursor to a level that places the tops of the magnitudes of frequencies of interest above the cursor but places other magnitudes completely below the cursor.
3. Read the level in dB from the @: readout. Note the level for use in step 5.
4. Press **MORE** (main) → **Change Waveform Definition menu** (side). **Press Set FFT Vert Scale to** (side) repeatedly to choose either **Phase (rad)** or **Phase (deg)**.
5. Press **Suppress Phase at Amplitudes** (side). Use the general purpose knob (or keypad if your oscilloscope is so equipped) to set phase suppression to the value obtained using the H Bar cursor. Do not change the window selection or you will invalidate the results obtained using the cursor.

FFT Windows

To learn how to optimize your display of FFT data, read about how the FFT windows data before computing the FFT math waveform. Understanding FFT windowing can help you get more useful displays.

Windowing Process—The oscilloscope multiplies the FFT time domain record by one of four FFT windows it provides before it inputs the record to the FFT function. Figure 1-8 shows how the time domain record is processed.

The FFT windowing acts like a bandpass filter between the FFT time domain record and the FFT frequency domain record. The shape of the window controls the ability of the FFT to resolve (separate) the frequencies and to accurately measure the amplitude of those frequencies.

Selecting a Window—You can select your window to provide better frequency resolution at the expense of better amplitude measurement accuracy in your FFT, better amplitude accuracy over frequency resolution, or to provide a compromise between both. You can choose from these four windows: Rectangular, Hamming, Hanning, and Blackman-Harris.

In step 8 (page 1-4) in *Displaying an FFT,* the four windows are listed in order according to their ability to resolve frequencies versus their ability to accurately measure the amplitude of those frequencies. The list indicates that the ability of a given window to resolve a frequency is inversely proportional to its ability to accurately measure the amplitude of that frequency. In general, then, choose a window that can just resolve between the frequencies you want to measure. That way, you will have the best amplitude accuracy and leakage elimination while still separating the frequencies.

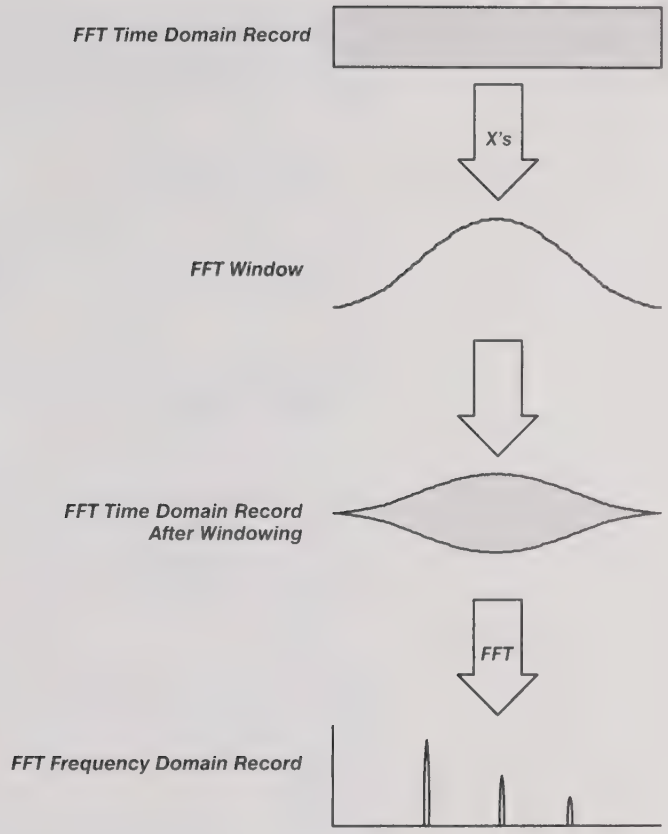


Figure 1-8: Windowing the FFT Time Domain Record

You can often determine the best window empirically by first using the window with the most frequency resolution (rectangular), then proceeding toward that window with the least (Blackman-Harris) until the frequencies merge. Use the window just before the window that lets the frequencies merge for best compromise between resolution and amplitude accuracy.

NOTE

If the Hanning window merges the frequencies, try the Hamming window before settling on the rectangular window. Depending on the distance of the frequencies you are trying to measure from the fundamental, the Hamming window sometimes resolves frequencies better than the Hanning.

Window Characteristics—When evaluating a window for use, you may want to examine how it modifies the FFT time domain data. Figure 1-9 shows each window, its bandpass characteristic, bandwidth, and highest side lobe. Consider the following characteristics:

- The narrower the central lobe for a given window, the better it can resolve a frequency.
- The lower the lobes on the side of each central lobe are, the better the amplitude accuracy of the frequency measured in the FFT using that window.
- Narrow lobes increase frequency resolution because they are more selective. Lower side lobe amplitudes increases accuracy because they reduce leakage.

  Leakage results when the FFT time domain waveform delivered to the FFT function contains a non-integer number of waveform cycles. Since there are fractions of cycles in such records, there are discontinuities at the ends of the record. These discontinuities cause energy from each discrete frequency to "leak" over on to adjacent frequencies. The result is amplitude error when measuring those frequencies.

The rectangular window does not modify the waveform record points; it generally gives the best frequency resolution because it results in the most narrow lobe width in the FFT output record. If the time domain records you measured always had an integer number of cycles, you would only need this window.

Hamming, Hanning, and Blackman-Harris are all somewhat bell-shaped widows that taper the waveform record at the record ends. The Hanning and Blackman/Harris windows taper the data at the end of the record to zero; therefore, they are generally better choices to eliminate leakage.

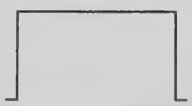
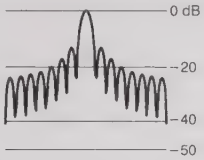
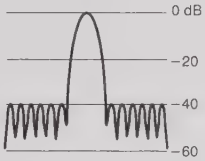
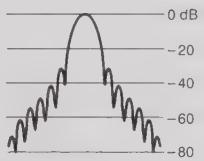
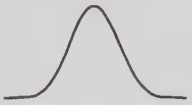
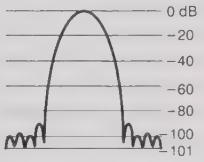
FFT Window Type	*Bandpass Filter*	*-3 dB Bandwidth*	*Highest Side Lobe*
 Rectangular Window		0.89	-13 dB
Hamming Window		1.28	–43 dB
Hanning Window		1.28	–32 dB
 Blackman-Harris Window		1.28	–94 dB

Figure 1-9: FFT Windows and Bandpass Characteristics

Care should be taken when using bell shaped widows to be sure that the most interesting parts of the signal in the time domain record are positioned in the center region of the window so that the tapering does not cause severe errors.

Waveform Differentiation

Waveform Differentiation

The Advanced DSP Math option provides *waveform differentiation* that allows you to display a derivative math waveform that indicates the instantaneous rate of change of the waveform acquired. Such waveforms are used in the measurement of slew rate of amplifiers and in educational applications. You can store and display a derivative math waveform in a reference memory, then use it as a source for another derivative waveform. The result is the second derivative of the waveform that was first differentiated.

Description

The math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$Y_n = (X_{(n+1)} - X_n)\frac{1}{T}$$

Where: *X is the source waveform*
Y is the derivative math waveform
T is the time between samples

Since the resultant math waveform is a derivative waveform, its vertical scale is in volts/second (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is differentiated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform.

Operation

To obtain a derivative math waveform, do the following tasks:

- Acquire and display the waveform in your choice of input channels.
- Differentiate it using the math waveform menu.
- Use cursors or automated measurements to measure its parameters.

Use the following procedure to perform these tasks.

Displaying a Differentiated Waveform

1. Connect the waveform to the desired channel input and select that channel.
2. Adjust the vertical and horizontal scales and trigger the display (or press **AUTOSET**).

3. Press **MORE** → **Math1**, **Math2**, or **Math3** (main) → **Change Math Definition** (side) → **Single Wfm Math** (main). See Figure 1-2.

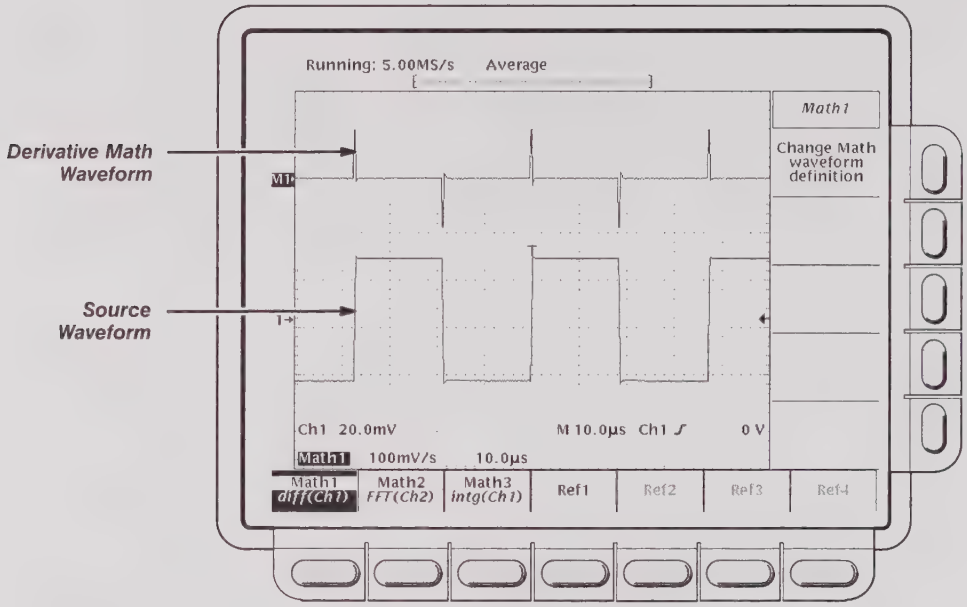


Figure 2-1: Derivative Math Waveform

4. Press **Set Single Source to** (side). Repeatedly press the same button (or use the general purpose knob) until the channel source selected in step 1 appears in the menu label.

5. Press **Set Function to** (side). Repeatedly press the same button (or use the general purpose knob) until **diff** appears in the menu label.

6. Press **OK Create Math Wfm** (side) to display the derivative of the waveform you input in step 1.

   You should now have your derivative math waveform on screen. Use the Vertical **SCALE** and **POSITION** knobs to size and position your waveform as you require.

Automated Measurements of a Derivative Waveform

Once you have displayed your derivative math waveform, you can use automated measurements to make various parameter measurements. Do the following steps to display automated measurements of the waveform:

1. Be sure **MORE** is selected in the channel selection buttons and that the differentiated math waveform is selected in the **More** main menu.

2. Press **MEASURE** → **Select Measrmnt** (main).

3. Select up to four measurements in the side menu. (Push **More** (side) to see more measurement choices.) See your User Manual for descriptions of each measurement.

   You can press **Remove Measrmnts** (main) to display a side menu for removing measurements from the display.

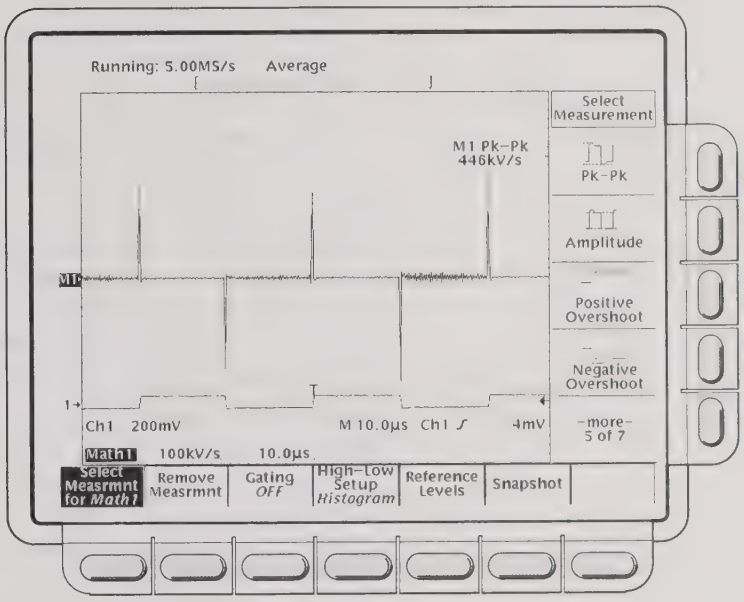


Figure 2-2: Peak-Peak Amplitude Measurement of a Derivative Waveform

You can also get a snapshot of all single waveform measurements at once:

4. Press **Snapshot** (main). Most of the measurements found in the Measure side menus are now in a single display.

Cursor Measurement of a Derivative Waveform

You can also use cursors to measure derivative waveforms. Use the same procedure as is found under *Waveform Integration* on page 3-2. When using that procedure, note that the amplitude measurements on a derivative waveform will be in volts/second rather than in volt-seconds as is indicated for the integral waveform measured in the procedure.

Usage Considerations

When creating differentiated math waveforms from live channel waveforms, consider the following topics.

Offset, Position, and Scale

Note the following tips for obtaining a good display:

- You should scale and position the source waveform so it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be "clipped," which will result in errors in the derivative waveform).
- You can use vertical position and vertical offset to position your *source* waveform. The vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your derivative waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so it is clipped.
- When using the vertical scale knob to scale the source waveform, note that it also scales your derivative waveform.

Because of the method the oscilloscope uses to scale the source waveform before differentiating that waveform, the derivative math waveform may be too large vertically to fit on screen—even if the source waveforms is only a few divisions on screen. You can use Zoom to reduce the size of the waveform on screen (see *Zoom* that follows), but If your waveform is clipped before zooming, it will still be clipped after it is zoomed.

If your math waveform is a narrow differentiated pulse, it may not appear to be clipped when viewed on screen. You can detect if your derivative math waveform is clipped by expanding it horizontally using Zoom so you can see the clipped portion. Also, the automated measurement **Pk-Pk** will display a clipping error message if turned on (see *Automated Measurements of a Derivative Waveform* on page 2-2).

If your derivative waveform is clipped, try either of the following methods to eliminate clipping:

- Reduce the size of the source waveform on screen. (Select the source channel and use the vertical **SCALE** knob.)
- Expand the waveform horizontally on screen. (Select the source channel and increase the horizontal scale using the horizontal **SCALE** knob.) For instance, if you display the source waveform illustrated in Figure 2-1 on page 2-2 so its rising and falling edges are displayed over more horizontal divisions, the amplitude of the corresponding derivative pulse will decrease.

Whichever method you use, be sure Zoom is off and the zoom factors are reset (see *Zoom* below).

Zoom

Once you have your waveform optimally displayed, you can also magnify (or contract) it vertically and horizontally to inspect any feature. Just be sure the differentiated waveform is the selected waveform. (Press **MORE**, then select the differentiated waveform in the More main menu. Then use the Vertical and Horizontal **SCALE** knob to adjust the math waveform size.)

If you wish to see the zoom factor (2X, 5X, etc.), you need to turn zoom on: press **ZOOM → ON** (side). The vertical and horizontal zoom factors appear on screen.

Whether zoom is on or off, you can press **Reset Zoom Factors** (side) to return the zoomed derivative waveform to no magnification.

Waveform Integration

Waveform Integration

The Advanced DSP Math option provides *waveform integration* that allows you to display an integral math waveform that is an integrated version of the acquired waveform. Such waveforms find use in the following applications:

- Measuring of power and energy, such as in switching power supplies
- Characterizing mechanical transducers, as when integrating the output of an accelerometer to obtain velocity

Description

The integral math waveform, derived from the sampled waveform, is computed based on the following equation:

$$y(n) = scale \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x(i) + x(i-1)}{2} T$$

Where: *x(i) is the source waveform*

y(n) is a point in the integral math waveform

scale is the output scale factor

T is the time between samples

Since the resultant math waveform is an integral waveform, its vertical scale is in volt-seconds (its horizontal scale is in seconds). The source signal is integrated over its entire record length; therefore, the math waveform record length equals that of the source waveform.

Operation

To obtain an integral math waveform, you first acquire it in your choice of input channels. Then you integrate it by creating an integral math waveform from the math waveform menu. Once the math waveform is displayed, you can use cursors or automated measurements to measure its parameters.

Displaying an Integral Waveform

Do the following steps to integrate and display your waveform.

1. Connect the waveform to the desired channel input and select that channel.
2. Adjust the vertical and horizontal scales and trigger the display (or press **AUTOSET**).

3. Press **MORE** → **Math1**, **Math2**, or **Math3** (main) → **Change Math waveform definition** (side) → **Single Wfm Math** (main).
4. Press **Set Single Source to** (side). Repeatedly press the same button (or use the general purpose knob) until the channel source selected in step 1 appears in the menu label.
5. Press **Set Function to** (side). Repeatedly press the same button (or use the general purpose knob) until **intg** appears in the menu label.
6. Press **OK Create Math Waveform** (side) to turn on the integral math waveform.

   You should now have your integral math waveform on screen. See Figure 3-1. Use the Vertical **SCALE** and **POSITION** knobs to size and position your waveform as you require.

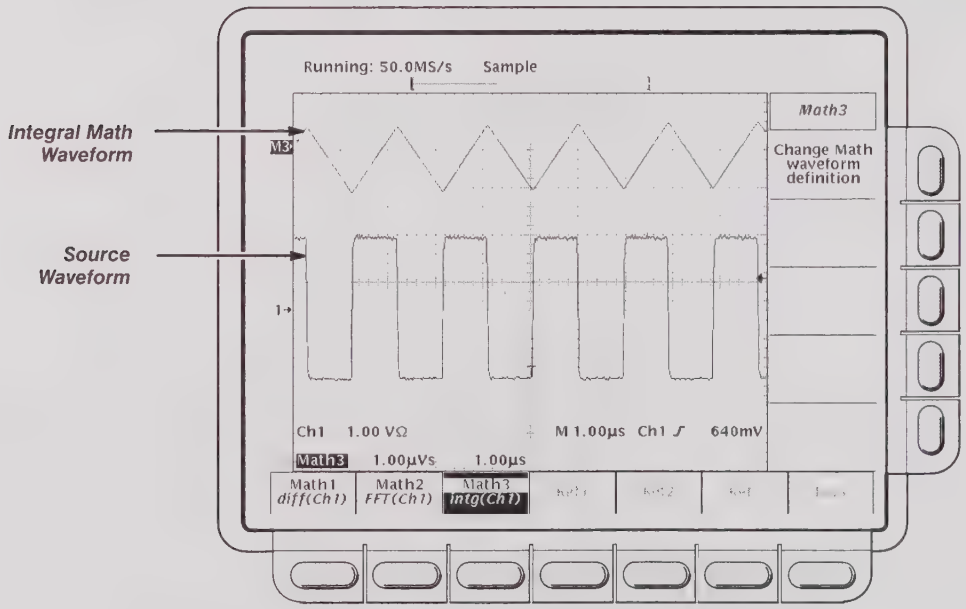


Figure 3-1: Integral Math Waveform

Cursor Measurements of an Integral Waveform

Once you have displayed your integrated math waveform, use cursors to measure its voltage over time.

1. Be sure **MORE** is selected (lit) in the channel selection buttons and that the integrated math waveform is selected in the **More** main menu.
2. Press **CURSOR** → **Mode** (main) → **Independent** (side) → **Function** (main) → **H Bars** (side).

3. Use the general purpose knob to align the selected cursor (solid) to the top (or to any amplitude level you choose).
4. Press **TOGGLE** to select the other cursor.
5. Use the general purpose knob to align the selected cursor (to the bottom (or to any amplitude level you choose).
6. Read the integrated voltage over time between the cursors in volt-seconds from the **Δ:** readout. Read the integrated voltage over time between the selected cursor and the reference indicator of the math waveform from the **@:** readout. See Figure 3-2.

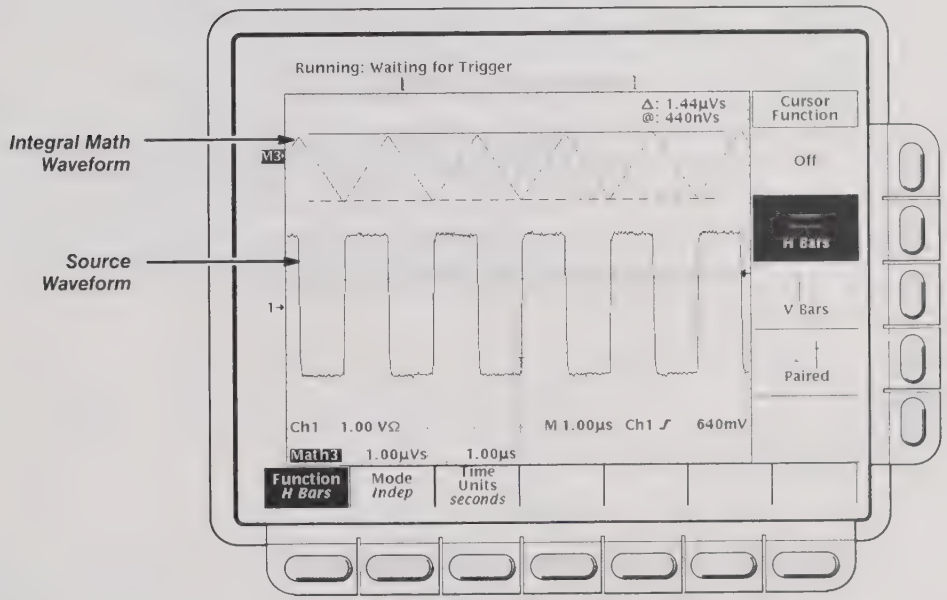


Figure 3-2: H Bars Cursors Measure an Integral Math Waveform

7. Press **Function** (main) → **V Bars** (side).Use the general purpose knob to align one of the two vertical cursors to a point of interest along the horizontal axis of the waveform.
8. Press **TOGGLE** to select the alternate cursor.
9. Align the alternate cursor to another point of interest on the math waveform.
10. Read the time difference between the cursors from the **Δ:** readout. Read the time difference between the selected cursor and the trigger point for the *source* waveform from the **@:** readout.
11. Press **Function** (main) → **Paired** (side).

12. Use the technique just outlined to place the long vertical bar of each paired cursor to the points along the horizontal axis you are interested in.
13. Read the following values from the cursor readouts:
    - Read the integrated voltage over time between the *short* horizontal bars of both paired cursors in volt-seconds from the **Δ:** readout.
    - Read the integrated voltage over time between the *short* horizontal bar of the selected cursor and the reference indicator of the math waveform from the **@:** readout.
    - Read the time difference between the *long* vertical bars of the paired cursors from the **Δ:** readout.

Automated Measurements of a Integral Waveform

You can also use automated measurements to measure integral math waveforms. Use the same procedure as is found under *Waveform Differentiation* on page 2-2. When using that procedure, note that your measurements on an integral waveform will be in volt-seconds rather than in volts/second as is indicated for the differential waveform measured in the procedure.

Usage Considerations

When creating integrated math waveforms from live channel waveforms, consider the following topics.

Offset, Position, and Scale

Note the following requirements for obtaining a good display:

- You should scale and position the source waveform so it is contained on screen. (Off screen waveforms may be "clipped," which will result in errors in the integral waveform).
- You can use vertical position and vertical offset to position your source waveform. The vertical position and vertical offset will not affect your integral waveform unless you position the source waveform off screen so it is clipped.
- When using the vertical scale knob to scale the source waveform, note that it also scales your integral waveform.

DC Offset

The source waveforms that you connect to the oscilloscope often have a DC offset component. The oscilloscope integrates this offset along with the time varying portions of your waveform. Even a few divisions of offset in the source waveform may be enough to ensure that the integral waveform saturates (clips), especially with long record lengths.

You may be able to avoid saturating your integral waveform if you choose a shorter record length. (Press **HORIZONTAL MENU → Record Length** (main).) Reducing the sample rate (use the **HORIZONTAL SCALE** knob) with the source channel selected might also prevent clipping. You can also select AC coupling (on TDS models so equipped) in the vertical menu of the *source* waveform or otherwise DC filter it before applying it to the oscilloscope input.

Zoom

Once you have your waveform optimally displayed, you may magnify (or reduce) it vertically and horizontally to inspect any feature you desire. Just be sure the integrated waveform is the selected waveform. (Press **MORE**, then select the integrated waveform in the More main menu. Then use the Vertical and Horizontal **SCALE** knobs to adjust the math waveform size.)

If you wish to see the zoom factor (2X, 5X, etc.) you need to turn Zoom on: press **ZOOM → On** (side). The vertical and horizontal zoom factors appear on screen.

Whether Zoom is on or off, you can press **Reset Zoom Factors** (side) to return the zoomed integral waveform to no magnification.

Index

Index

A

Aliasing, *1-11*

Applications
- derivative math waveforms, *2-1*
- FFT math waveforms, *1-1*
- integral math waveforms, *3-1*

Automated measurements
- of derivative math waveforms, *2-2* (procedure), *2-2*
- of FFT math waveforms, *1-7*
- of integral math waveforms, *3-4*

B

Blackman-Harris window, *1-4*

C

CAUTION
- statement in manuals, *ix*
- statement on equipment, *ix*

Clipping
- derivative math waveforms, *2-4*
- FFT math waveforms, *1-9*
- how to avoid, *1-9*, *2-4*, *3-4*
- integral math waveforms, *3-4*

Conventions, *v*

Cursor menu, *1-5*, *3-2*

Cursor readout
- H-Bars, *1-5*, *2-3*, *3-3*
- Paired, *2-3*
- Paired cursors, *1-7*, *3-4*
- V-Bars, *1-6*, *2-3*, *3-3*

Cursors
- with derivative waveforms, *2-3*
- with FFT waveforms, *1-5*
- with integral waveforms, *3-2*

D

DANGER, statement on equipment, *ix*

DC offset, *1-9*
- for DC correction of FFTs, *1-9*
- with math waveforms, *1-9*, *3-4*

Derivative math, description, *xi*

Derivative math waveform, *2-1*
- applications, *2-1*
- derivation of, *2-1*
- procedure for displaying, *2-1*
- procedure for measuring, *2-2*, *2-3*
- record length of, *2-1*

Description
- derivative math, *xi*
- FFT math, *xi*
- integral math, *xi*
- product, *xi*

Differentiation
- of a derivative, *2-1*
- waveform, *2-1*

F

Fast Fourier Transforms, description, *1-1*

Fast Fourier Transforms (FFTs), applications, *1-1*

FFT frequency domain record, *1-7*
- defined, *1-7–1-9*
- length of, *1-8*

FFT math, description, *xi*

FFT math waveform, *1-1*
- acquisition mode, *1-10*
- aliasing, *1-11*
- automated measurements of, *1-7*
- DC correction, *1-9*
- derivation of, *1-1*
- displaying phase, *1-3*
- frequency range, *1-9*
- frequency resolution, 1-9
- interpolation mode, *1-11*
- list of features, *xi*
- magnifying, *1-11*
- phase display, setup considerations, *1-12–1-14*
- phase suppression, *1-4*, *1-13*
- procedure for displaying, *1-2*
- procedure for measuring, *1-5*
- record length, *1-8*
- reducing noise, *1-10*
- undersampling, *1-11*
- zero phase reference, *1-12*

FFT time domain record, defined, *1-7*

H

Hamming window, *1-4*

Hanning Window, *1-4*

I

Integral math, description, *xi*

Integral math waveform, *3-1*
- applications, *3-1*
- automated measurements of, *3-4*
- derivation of, *3-1*
- magnifying, *2-4*, *3-5*
- procedure for displaying, *3-1*
- procedure for measuring, *3-2*
- record length of, *3-1*

Integration, Waveform, *3-1*

Interpolation
- FFT distortion, *1-11*
- linear versus sin(x)/x, *1-11*

M

Math waveform
- derivative. *See Derivative math waveform*
- FFT. *See FFT math waveform*
- integral. *See Integral math waveform*

Measurements, snapshot of, *2-3*

Menu, More, *1-3*, *2-2*
- *See also More menu*

More menu, *2-2*
Blackman-Harris, *1-4*
Change Math waveform definition, *1-3*, *2-2*, *3-2*
dBV RMS, *1-3*
diff, *2-2*
FFT, *1-3*
Hamming, *1-4*
Hanning, *1-4*
intg, *3-2*
Linear RMS, *1-3*
Math1, Math2, Math3, *1-3*, *2-2*, *3-2*
OK Create Math Waveform, *3-2*
Phase (deg), *1-3*
Phase (rad), *1-4*
Rectangular, *1-4*
Set FFT Source to:, *1-3*
Set FFT Vert Scale to:, *1-3*
Set FFT Window to:, *1-4*
Set Function to:, *2-2*, *3-2*
Set Single Source to:, *2-2*, *3-2*
Single Wfm Math, *2-2*, *3-2*

N

Noise
reducing in FFTs, *1-10*
reducing in phase FFTs, *1-4*, *1-13*

Nyquist frequency, *1-11*

O

Offset
DC. *See DC Offset*
vertical, *1-9*, *2-4*, *3-4*

P

Phase suppression, *1-13*

Position, vertical, *1-9*, *2-4*, *3-4*

Product description, *xi*

R

Readout, Cursor, Paired, *2-3*

Readout, cursor
H-Bars, *1-5*, *2-3*, *3-3*
Paired cursors, *1-7*, *3-4*
V-Bars, *1-6*, *2-3*, *3-3*

Record length
derivative math waveforms, *2-1*
integral math waveforms, *3-1*

Rectangular window, *1-4*

S

Safety, *ix*
symbols, *ix*

Scale, vertical, *1-9*, *2-4*, *3-4*

Snapshot, *2-3*

V

Vertical position, for DC correction of FFTs, *1-9*

W

WARNING, statement in manual, *ix*

Waveform clipping. *See Clipping*

Waveform differentiation, *2-1*

Waveform FFTs, *1-1*

Waveform integration, *3-1*

Waveform record
FFT, *1-7*
FFT frequency domain, *1-7*
length of, *1-7*
FFT source, *1-7*
acquisition mode, *1-10*
defined, *1-7*
long versus short, *1-10*
FFT time domain, *1-7–1-9*

Window, *1-14*
Blackman-Harris, *1-4*, *1-14*, *1-17*
characteristics of, *1-16*
Hamming, *1-4*, *1-14*, *1-17*
Hanning, *1-4*, *1-14*, *1-17*
rectangular, *1-4*, *1-14*, *1-17*
rectangular vs. bell-shaped, *1-16*
selecting, *1-14*

Windowing, process, *1-14*

Windows, descriptions of, *1-4*

Z

Zero phase reference point, 1-8, *1-12*
establishing for impulse testing, *1-12*, *1-13–1-14*

Zoom
derivative math waveforms, *2-4*
on FFT math waveforms, *1-11*
on integral math waveforms, *3-5*

Glossary

AC ∿

AC coupling
A type of signal transmission that blocks the DC component of a signal but uses the dynamic (AC) component. Useful for observing an AC signal that is normally riding on a DC signal.

Accuracy
The closeness of the indicated value to the true value.

Acquisition
The process of sampling signals from input channels, digitizing the samples into data points, and assembling the data points into a waveform record. The waveform record is stored in memory. The trigger marks time zero in that process.

Acquisition interval
The time duration of the waveform record divided by the record length. The digitizing oscilloscope displays one data point for every acquisition interval.

Active cursor
The cursor that moves when you turn the general purpose knob. It is represented in the display by a solid line. The @ readout on the display shows the absolute value of the active cursor.

Aliasing
A false representation of a signal due to insufficient sampling of high frequencies or fast transitions. A condition that occurs when a digitizing oscilloscope digitizes at an effective sampling rate that is too slow to reproduce the input signal. The waveform displayed on the oscilloscope may have a lower frequency than the actual input signal.

Amplitude
The High waveform value less the Low waveform value.

Area
Measurement of the waveform area taken over the entire waveform or the gated region. Expressed in volt-seconds. Area above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.

Attenuation
The degree the amplitude of a signal is reduced when it passes through an attenuating device such as a probe or attenuator. That is, the ratio of the input measure to the output measure. For example, a 10X probe will attenuate, or reduce, the input voltage of a signal by a factor of 10.

Automatic trigger mode
A trigger mode that causes the oscilloscope to automatically acquire if triggerable events are not detected within a specified time period.

Autoset

A function of the oscilloscope that automatically produces a stable waveform of usable size. Autoset sets up front-panel controls based on the characteristics of the active waveform. A successful autoset will set the volts/div, time/div, and trigger level to produce a coherent and stable waveform display.

Average acquisition mode

In this mode the oscilloscope acquires and displays a waveform that is the averaged result of several acquisitions. That reduces the apparent noise. The oscilloscope acquires data as in the sample mode and then averages it according to a specified number of averages.

Bandwidth

The highest frequency signal the oscilloscope can acquire with no more than 3 dB ($\times$ .707) attenuation of the original (reference) signal.

Burst width

A timing measurement of the duration of a burst.

Channel

One type of input used for signal acquisition.

Channel Reference Indicator

The indicator on the left side of the display that points to the position around which the waveform contracts or expands when vertical scale is changed. This position is ground when offset if set to 0 V; otherwise, it is ground plus offset.

Coupling

The association of two or more circuits or systems in such a way that power or information can be transferred from one to the other. You can couple the input signal to the trigger and vertical systems several different ways.

Cursors

Paired markers that you can use to make measurements between two waveform locations. The oscilloscope displays the values (expressed in volts or time) of the position of the active cursor and the distance between the two cursors.

Cycle area

A measurement of waveform area taken over one cycle. Expressed in volt-seconds. Area above ground is positive; area below ground is negative.

Cycle mean

An amplitude (voltage) measurement of the arithmetic mean over one cycle.

Cycle RMS

The true Root Mean Square voltage over one cycle.

DC

DC coupling
A mode that passes both AC and DC signal components to the circuit. Available for both the trigger system and the vertical system.

Delay measurement
A measurement of the time between the middle reference crossings of two different waveforms.

Delay time
The time between the trigger event and the acquisition of data.

Digitizing
The process of converting a continuous analog signal such as a waveform to a set of discrete numbers representing the amplitude of the signal at specific points in time. Digitizing is composed of two steps: sampling and quantizing.

Display system
The part of the oscilloscope that shows waveforms, measurements, menu items, status, and other parameters.

Edge Trigger
Triggering occurs when the oscilloscope detects the source passing through a specified voltage level in a specified direction (the trigger slope).

Envelope acquisition mode
A mode in which the oscilloscope acquires and displays a waveform that shows the variation extremes of several acquisitions.

Equivalent-time sampling (ET)
A sampling mode in which the oscilloscope acquires signals over many repetitions of the event. The TDS 400 Series Digitizing Oscilloscopes use a type of equivalent time sampling called *random equivalent time sampling*. It utilizes an internal clock that runs asynchronously with respect to the input signal and the signal trigger. The oscilloscope takes samples continuously, independent of the trigger position, and displays them based on the time difference between the sample and the trigger. Although the samples are taken sequentially in time, they are random with respect to the trigger.

Fall time
A measurement of the time it takes for trailing edge of a pulse to fall from a HighRef value (typically 90%) to a LowRef value (typically 10%) of its amplitude.

Frequency
A timing measurement that is the reciprocal of the period. Measured in Hertz (Hz) where 1 Hz = 1 cycle per second.

Gated Measurements
A feature that lets you limit automated measurements to a specified portion of the waveform. You define the area of interest using the vertical cursors.

General purpose knob

The large front-panel knob with an indentation. You can use it to change the value of the assigned parameter.

GPIB (General Purpose Interface Bus)

An interconnection bus and protocol that allows you to connect multiple instruments in a network under the control of a controller. Also known as IEEE 488 bus. It transfers data with eight parallel data lines, five control lines, and three handshake lines.

Graticule

A grid on the display screen that creates the horizontal and vertical axes. You can use it to visually measure waveform parameters.

Ground (GND) coupling

Coupling option that disconnects the input signal from the vertical system.

Hardcopy

An electronic copy of the display in a format useable by a printer or plotter.

Hi Res acquisition mode

An acquisition mode in which the digitizing oscilloscope averages all samples taken during an acquisition interval to create a record point. That average results in a higher-resolution, lower-bandwidth waveform. That mode only works with real-time, non-interpolated sampling.

High

The value used as 100% in automated measurements (whenever high ref, mid ref, and low ref values are needed as in fall time and rise time measurements). May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method (most useful for general waveforms), it is the maximum value found. With the histogram method (most useful for pulses), it refers to the most common value found above the mid point. See *Appendix C: Algorithms* for details.

Holdoff, trigger

A specified amount of time after a trigger signal that elapses before the trigger circuit will accept another trigger signal. That helps ensure a stable display.

Horizontal bar cursors

The two horizontal bars that you position to measure the voltage parameters of a waveform. The oscilloscope displays the value of the active (moveable) cursor with respect to ground and the voltage value between the bars.

Interpolation
The way the digitizing oscilloscope calculates values for record points when the oscilloscope cannot acquire all the points for a complete record with a single trigger event. That condition occurs when the oscilloscope is limited to real time sampling and the time base is set to a value that exceeds the effective sample rate of the oscilloscope. The digitizing oscilloscope has two interpolation options: *linear* or *sin(x)/x interpolation*.

Linear interpolation calculates record points in a straight-line fit between the actual values acquired. Sin(x)/x computes record points in a curve fit between the actual values acquired. It assumes all the interpolated points fall in their appropriate point in time on that curve.

Intensity
Display brightness.

Knob
A rotary control.

Low
The value used as 0% in automated measurements (whenever high ref, mid ref, and low ref values are needed as in fall time and rise time measurements). May be calculated using either the min/max or the histogram method. With the min/max method (most useful for general waveforms), it is the minimum value found. With the histogram method (most useful for pulses), it refers to the most common value found below the mid point. See *Appendix C: Algorithms* for details.

Main menu
A group of related controls for a major oscilloscope function that the oscilloscope displays across the bottom of the screen.

Main menu buttons
Bezel buttons under the main menu display. They allow you to select items in the main menu.

Maximum
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the maximum amplitude. Typically the most positive peak voltage.

Mean
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the arithmetic mean over the entire waveform.

Minimum
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the minimum amplitude. Typically the most negative peak voltage.

Negative duty cycle
A timing measurement representing the ratio of the negative pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

Negative overshoot measurement

Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$NegativeOvershoot = \frac{Low - Min}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Negative width

A timing measurement of the distance (time) between two amplitude points—falling-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) and rising-edge *MidRef* (default 50%)—on a negative pulse.

Normal trigger mode

A mode on which the oscilloscope does not acquire a waveform record unless a valid trigger event occurs. It waits for a valid trigger event before acquiring waveform data.

Oscilloscope

An instrument for making a graph of two factors. These are typically voltage versus time.

Peak-to-Peak

Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the absolute difference between the maximum and minimum amplitude.

Period

A timing measurement of the time covered by one complete signal cycle. It is the reciprocal of frequency and is measured in seconds.

Phase

A timing measurement between two waveforms of the amount one leads or lags the other in time. Phase is expressed in degrees, where 360° comprise one complete cycle of one of the waveforms. Waveforms measured should be of the same frequency or one waveform should be a harmonic of the other.

Pixel

A visible point on the display. The oscilloscope display is 640 pixels wide by 480 pixels high.

Pop-up Menu

A sub-menu of a main menu. Pop-up menus temporarily occupy part of the waveform display area and are used to present additional choices associated with the main menu selection. You can cycle through the options in a pop-up menu by repeatedly pressing the main menu button underneath the pop-up.

Positive duty cycle

A timing measurement of the ratio of the positive pulse width to the signal period, expressed as a percentage.

Positive overshoot

Amplitude (voltage) measurement.

$$PositiveOvershoot = \frac{Max - High}{Amplitude} \times 100\%$$

Positive width
A timing measurement of the distance (time) between two amplitude points—rising-edge *MidRef* (default 50%) and falling-edge *MidRef* (default 50%)—on a positive pulse.

Posttrigger
The specified portion of the waveform record that contains data acquired after the trigger event.

Pretrigger
The specified portion of the waveform record that contains data acquired before the trigger event.

Probe
An oscilloscope input device.

Quantizing
The process of converting an analog input that has been sampled, such as a voltage, to a digital value.

Probe compensation
Adjustment that improves low-frequency response of a probe.

Real-time sampling
A sampling mode where the digitizing oscilloscope samples fast enough to completely fill a waveform record from a single trigger event. Use real-time sampling to capture single-shot or transient events.

Record length
The specified number of samples in a waveform.

Reference memory
Memory in a oscilloscope used to store waveforms or settings. You can use that waveform data later for processing. The digitizing oscilloscope saves the data even when the oscilloscope is turned off or unplugged.

Rise time
The time it takes for a leading edge of a pulse to rise from a *LowRef* value (typically 10%) to a *HighRef* value (typically 90%) of its amplitude.

RMS
Amplitude (voltage) measurement of the true Root Mean Square voltage.

Roll
An acquisition mode useful at slow Horizontal SCALE settings. Roll mode allows the waveform to be viewed as it is acquired point-by-point. The waveform appears to roll across the display.

Sample acquisition mode
The oscilloscope creates a record point by saving the first sample during each acquisition interval. That is the default mode of the acquisition.

Sample interval

The time interval between successive samples in a time base. For real-time digitizers, the sample interval is the reciprocal of the sample rate. For equivalent-time digitizers, the time interval between successive samples represents equivalent time, not real time.

Sampling

The process of capturing an analog input, such as a voltage, at a discrete point in time and holding it constant so that it can be quantized. Two general methods of sampling are: *real-time sampling* and *equivalent-time sampling.*

Selected waveform

The waveform on which all measurements are performed, and which is affected by vertical position and scale adjustments. The light next to one of the channel selector buttons indicates the current selected waveform.

Side menu

Menu that appears to the right of the display. These selections expand on main menu selections.

Side menu buttons

Bezel buttons to the right of the side menu display. They allow you to select items in the side menu.

Signal Path Compensation (SPC)

The ability of the oscilloscope to minimize the electrical offsets in the vertical, horizontal, and trigger amplifiers caused by ambient temperature changes and component aging. You should run SPC at the following times: when the ambient temperature varies more than 5° C from the last SPC, when using settings equal to or less than 5 mV per division, and when performing critical measurements.

Slope

The direction at a point on a waveform. You can calculate the direction by computing the sign of the ratio of change in the vertical quantity (Y) to the change in the horizontal quantity. The two values are rising and falling.

Tek Secure

This feature erases all waveform and setup memory locations (setup memories are replaced with the factory setup). Then it checks each location to verify erasure. This feature finds use where this digitizing oscilloscope is used to gather security sensitive data, such as is done for research or development projects.

Time base

The set of parameters that let you define the time and horizontal axis attributes of a waveform record. The time base determines when and how long to acquire record points.

Toggle button

A button that changes which of the two cursors is active.

Trigger
An event that marks time zero in the waveform record. It results in acquisition and display of the waveform.

Trigger level
The vertical level the trigger signal must cross to generate a trigger (on edge mode).

Vertical bar cursors
The two vertical bars you position to measure the time parameter of a waveform record. The oscilloscope displays the value of the active (moveable) cursor with respect to trigger and the time value between the bars.

Waveform
The shape or form (visible representation) of a signal.

Waveform interval
The time interval between record points as displayed.

XY format
A display format that compares the voltage level of two waveform records point by point. It is useful for studying phase relationships between two waveforms.

YT format
The conventional oscilloscope display format. It shows the voltage of a waveform record (on the vertical axis) as it varies over time (on the horizontal axis).

Index

Numbers

1/seconds (Hz), Cursor menu, *3-15*

100 MHz, Vertical menu, *3-99*

20 MHz, Vertical menu, *3-99*

A

AC coupling, *2-15*, *G-1*

AC line voltage, trigger input, *2-12*

AC, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*

Accessories, *A-1–A-8*
- Optional, *A-5*
- Probes, *A-4*, *A-5–A-8*
- Software, *A-7–A-8*
- Standard, *A-4*, *A-6*, *A-7*

Accuracy, *G-1*

Acquire menu, *3-6*, *3-43*
- **Average**, *3-6*
- **Average** mode, *3-43*
- **Compare Ch1 to**, *3-45*
- **Compare Ch2 to**, *3-45*
- **Create Limit Test Template**, *3-43*
- **Envelope**, *3-6*
- **H Limit**, *3-44*
- **Hardcopy if Condition Met**, *3-45*
- **Hi Res**, *3-6*
- **Limit Test**, *3-46*
- **Limit Test Condition Met**, *3-46*
- **Limit Test Setup**, *3-45*, *3-46*
- **Limit Test Sources**, *3-45*
- **Mode**, *3-6*
- **OFF (Real Time Only)**, *3-6*
- **OK Store Template**, *3-44*
- **ON (Enable ET)**, *3-6*
- **Peak Detect**, *3-6*
- **Repetitive Signal**, *3-6*
- **Ring Bell if Condition Met**, *3-45*
- **RUN/STOP**, *3-7*
- **Sample**, *3-6*
- **Single Acquisition Sequence**, *3-7*
- **Stop After**, *3-7*, *3-46*
- **Stop After Limit Test Condition Met**, *3-45*
- **Template Source**, *3-43*
- **V Limit**, *3-44*

ACQUIRE MENU button, *3-6*, *3-43*

Acquisition, *2-17–2-21*, *3-9*, *G-1*
- Interval, *G-1*
- Modes
  - Average, *3-5*
  - Envelope, *3-4*
  - Hi Res, *3-4*
  - Peak detect, *3-2*
  - Sample, *3-2*
- Readout, *3-5*

Active cursor, *G-1*

Active voltage probes, *3-70–3-71*

active, Saved waveform status, *3-85*

Algorithms, *A-25–A-36*

Aliasing, *2-24*, *G-1*

Amplitude, *3-48*, *G-1*

Area, *3-48*, *G-1*

Attenuation, *G-1*

Auto, Main Trigger menu, *3-29*

Auto, Video Trigger menu, *3-105*

Automated Measurements, Snapshot of, *1-22*

Automated measurements, *1-19*, *2-28*, *3-48*

Automatic trigger mode, *2-14*, *G-1*

Autoset, *1-12*, *2-25*, *3-9–3-10*, *G-2*

AUTOSET button, *1-12*, *3-9*, *3-90*

Auxiliary trigger, *2-12*

Average acquisition mode, *3-5*, *G-2*

Average mode, Acquire menu, *3-43*

Average, Acquire menu, *3-6*

B

Bandwidth, *1-3*, *2-20*, *G-2*

Bandwidth, Vertical menu, *3-99*

Before you begin, *1-6*

BMP, *3-30*

BMP, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*

Burst width, *3-48*

Button
- **ACQUIRE MENU**, *3-6*, *3-43*
- **AUTOSET**, *1-12*, *2-24*, *3-9*, *3-90*
- **CLEAR MENU**, *1-11*, *1-20*, *2-2*, *2-7*, *3-57*
- **CURSOR**, *2-27*, *3-13*
- **DELAYED TRIG**, *3-18*
- **DISPLAY**, *3-21*
- **FORCE TRIG**, *3-94*
- **HARDCOPY**, *3-31*, *3-77*
- **HELP**, *3-38*
- **HORIZONTAL MENU**, *3-17*
- **MEASURE**, *3-51*
- **MORE**, *3-86*, *3-88*, *3-106*
- **ON/STBY**, *1-5*, *2-2*
- Save/recall **SETUP**, *1-8*, *3-83*
- Save/recall **WAVEFORM**, *3-85*
- **SET LEVEL TO 50%**, *3-94*
- **SINGLE TRIG**, *3-7*, *3-94*
- **STATUS**, *3-92*
- **TOGGLE**, *2-27*, *3-14*, *G-8*
- **TRIGGER MENU**, *3-26*, *3-96*, *3-100*
- **UTILITY**, *3-31*, *3-77*
- **VERTICAL MENU**, *1-16*
- **WAVEFORM OFF**, *1-18*, *3-25*, *3-89*
- **ZOOM**, *2-25*, *3-109*

Buttons
- **CH1, CH2 ...**, *3-88*
- Channel selection, *1-15*, *3-88*
- Main menu, *2-2*
- Side menu, *2-2*

C

Cables, *3-76*, *3-77*

Cart, Instrument, K212, *A-3*

CAUTION
- statement in manuals, *v*
- statement on equipment, *v*

Centronics, **Port** (optional), *3-31*, *3-34*, *3-75*

Certificate of Calibration and Test Data Report, *A-3*

CH1, CH2 ... buttons, *3-88*

Ch1, Ch2 ..., Delayed Trigger menu, *3-19*

Ch1, Ch2 ..., Main Trigger menu, *3-26*

Ch1, Ch2 ..., Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

Change Math waveform definition, More menu, *3-107*

Channel, *3-88–3-89*, *G-2*
- Readout, *2-5*, *3-88*
- Reference Indicator, *2-5*
- Selection buttons, *1-15*, *3-88*
- Trigger input, *2-11–2-12*

Channel readout, *2-5*

Channel reference indicator, *G-2*

Circuit loading, *G-2*

CLEAR MENU button, *1-11*, *1-20*, *2-2*, *2-7*, *3-57*

Compact-to-miniature probe tip adapter, *3-64*, *A-7*

Compare Ch1 to, Acquire menu, *3-45*

Compare Ch2 to, Acquire menu, *3-45*

Compensation, *3-66*

Configure, Utility menu, *3-31*, *3-77*

Connector
- BNC, *A-6*
- GPIB, *2-4*, *3-76*

Contrast, Display menu, *3-22*

Conventions, x

Coupling, *1-16*
- AC, *2-15*
- DC, *2-15*
- Ground, *G-4*
- Input Signal, *2-20–2-21*
- Trigger, *2-15*

Coupling, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*

Coupling, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*

Coupling, Vertical menu, *3-98*

Create Limit Test Template, Acquire menu, *3-43*

Create Measrmnt, Measure Delay menu, *3-57*

Cross Hair, Display menu, *3-24*

Current probes, *3-71*

Cursor
- Horizontal bar, *2-27*, *3-11*
- Measurements, *2-27*
- Mode, *2-27–2-28*
  - Independent, *2-27–2-28*
  - Tracking, *2-28*
- Paired, *2-27*, *3-11*
- Vertical bar, *2-27*, *3-11*

CURSOR button, *3-13*

Cursor menu, *3-13*
- **1/seconds (Hz)**, *3-15*
- **Function**, *3-13*, *3-14*
- **H Bars**, *3-13*, *3-14*
- **Independent**, *3-14*
- **seconds**, *3-15*
- **Time Units**, *3-15*
- **Tracking**, *3-14*

Cursor Readouts, *3-12*

Cursor Speed, *3-15*

Cursors, *2-27*, *3-11–3-15*, *G-2*

Custom, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

Cycle area, *3-48*, *G-2*

Cycle mean, *3-48*, *G-2*

Cycle RMS, *3-48*, *G-2*

D

DANGER, statement on equipment, *v*

Date/Time
- On hardcopies, 3-32
- To set, 3-33

DC coupling, *2-15*, *G-3*

DC, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*

Delay by Events, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-19*

Delay by Lines, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*

Delay by Time, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-19*

Delay by Time, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*

Delay by, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-19*

Delay measurement, *3-55*, *G-3*

Delay time, *G-3*

Delay To, Measure Delay menu, *3-55*

Delayed Only, Horizontal menu, *3-17*

Delayed Runs After Main, Horizontal menu, *3-17*, *3-41*

Delayed Scale, Horizontal menu, *3-41*

DELAYED TRIG button, *3-18*

Delayed trigger, *3-16–3-20*

Delayed Trigger menu, *3-18–3-20*
- **Ch1, Ch2 ...**, *3-19*
- **Coupling**, *3-20*
- **Delay by**, *3-19*
- **Delay by Events**, *3-19*
- **Delay by Time**, *3-19*
- Falling edge, *3-20*
- **Level**, *3-20*
- Rising edge, *3-20*
- **Set to 50%**, *3-20*
- **Set to ECL**, *3-20*
- **Set to TTL**, *3-20*
- **Slope**, *3-20*
- **Source**, *3-19*

Delayed Triggerable, Horizontal menu, *3-18*, *3-41*

Deskjet, *3-30*

Deskjet, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*

Differential active probes, *3-70*

Digitizing, *G-3*

Digitizing rate, *1-3*

Display, *2-5*, *3-9*
- Options, *3-21–3-25*
- Record View, *3-95*
- System, *G-3*

Display 'T' @ Trigger Point, Display menu, *3-22*

DISPLAY button, *3-21*

Display menu, *3-21*
- **Contrast**, *3-22*
- **Cross Hair**, *3-24*
- **Display 'T' @ Trigger Point**, *3-22*
- **Dots**, *3-21*
- **Dots** style, *3-44*
- **Filter**, *3-23*
- **Format**, *3-24*
- **Frame**, *3-24*
- **Full**, *3-24*
- **Graticule**, *3-24*
- **Grid**, *3-24*
- **Infinite Persistence**, *3-22*
- **Intensified Samples**, *3-21*
- **Intensity**, *3-22*
- **Linear interpolation**, *3-23*
- **Overall**, *3-22*
- **Readout**, *3-22*
- **Sin(x)/x interpolation**, *3-23*
- **Style**, *3-21*
- **Text/Grat**, *3-22*
- **Trigger Bar**, *3-22*
- **Variable Persistence**, *3-22*
- **Vectors**, *3-21*
- **Waveform**, *3-22*
- **XY**, *3-24*
- **YT**, *3-24*

Dots, *3-21*
Dots style, Display menu, *3-44*
Dots, Display menu, *3-21*
Dual Wfm Math, More menu, *3-107*
Dual-lead adapter, *3-65*
Duty cycle, *1-20*, *G-5*, *G-6*

E

Edge trigger, *2-12*, *3-26*, *G-3*
Readout, *3-26*
Edge, Main Trigger menu, *3-26*, *3-96*
Edges, Measure Delay menu, *3-56*
empty, Saved waveform status, *3-85*
Encapsulated Postscript, *3-30*
Envelope acquisition mode, *3-4*, *G-3*
Envelope, Acquire menu, *3-6*
EPS Color, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
EPS Image, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
EPS Mono, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Epson, *3-30*
Epson, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Equivalent time sampling, *2-19*
Equivalent-time sampling, random, *G-3*

F

Factory initialization settings, *A-39–A-42*
factory, Saved setup status, *3-83*
Fall time, *3-49*, *G-3*
Falling edge, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*
Falling edge, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*
Fields. *See Video Fields*
Filter, Display menu, *3-23*
Fine Scale, Vertical menu, *3-99*
Firmware version, *3-92*
Fixtured active probes, *3-70*
FORCE TRIG button, *3-94*
Format, Display menu, *3-24*
Format, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Frame, Display menu, *3-24*
Frequency, *1-20*, *3-49*, *G-3*
Front Cover, *A-1*
Front panel, *2-3*
Full, Display menu, *3-24*
Full, Vertical menu, *3-99*
Function, Cursor menu, *3-13*, *3-14*
Fuse, *1-4*, *2-4*

G

Gated Measurements, *3-53*, *G-3*
Gating, Measure menu, *3-53*
General purpose (high input resistance) probes, *3-68*
General purpose knob, *1-21*, *2-6*, *G-4*
GPIB, *2-4*, *3-75–3-78*, *G-4*
GPIB, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
GPIB, Utility menu, *3-77*
Graticule, *3-24*, *G-4*
Measurements, *2-26*
Graticule, Display menu, *3-24*
Grid, Display menu, *3-24*
Ground coupling, *G-4*
Ground lead inductance, *3-59*

H

H Bars, Cursor menu, *3-13*, *3-14*
H Limit, Acquire menu, *3-44*
Hardcopy, *3-30–3-37*, *G-4*
Hardcopy (Talk Only), Utility menu, *3-31*
HARDCOPY button, *3-31*, *3-77*
Hardcopy if Condition Met, Acquire menu, *3-45*
Hardcopy Interface, Optional RS-232/Centronic, *A-1*
Hardcopy menu
BMP, *3-31*
Clear Spool, *3-31*
Deskjet, *3-31*
EPS Color, *3-31*
EPS Image, *3-31*
EPS Mono, *3-31*
EPS PCX, *3-31*
Epson, *3-31*
Format, *3-31*
GPIB, *3-31*
HPGL, *3-31*
Interleaf, *3-31*
Landscape, *3-31*
Laserjet, *3-31*
Layout, *3-31*
Port, *3-31*
Portrait, *3-31*
Thinkjet, *3-31*
TIFF, *3-31*
Hardcopy, Utility menu, *3-77*
HELP button, *3-38*
Help system, *3-38*
HF Rej, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*
Hi Res acquisition mode, *3-4*
Hi res acquisition mode, *G-4*
Hi Res, Acquire menu, *3-6*
High, *3-49*, *G-4*
High frequency rejection, *2-15*
High Ref, Measure menu, *3-55*
High speed active probes, *3-70*
High voltage probes, *3-69–3-70*
High-Low Setup, Measure menu, *3-54*
Histogram, Measure menu, *3-54*
Holdoff, trigger, *2-14*, *G-4*
Horiz Pos, Horizontal menu, *3-42*
Horiz Scale, Horizontal menu, *3-41*
Horizontal, *3-9*
Bar cursors, *2-27*, *3-11*, *G-4*
Control, *3-39–3-42*
Position, *3-39*
POSITION knob, *2-23*
Readouts, *3-40*
Scale, *3-39*
SCALE knob, *1-11*, *2-23*
System, *1-11*, *2-23*
Horizontal menu, *3-17*
Delayed Only, *3-17*
Delayed Runs After Main, *3-17*, *3-41*
Delayed Scale, *3-41*

Delayed Triggerable, *3-18*, *3-41*
Horiz Pos, *3-42*
Horiz Scale, *3-41*
Intensified, *3-17*, *3-19*
Main Scale, *3-41*
Record Length, *3-41*
Set to 10%, *3-42*
Set to 50%, *3-42*
Set to 90%, *3-42*
Time Base, *3-17*, *3-40*
Trigger Position, *3-41*
HORIZONTAL MENU button, *3-17*
Horizontal **POSITION** knob, *3-39*
Horizontal Readouts, *3-40*
Horizontal **SCALE** knob, *3-39*
HPGL, *3-30*
HPGL, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*

I

I/O, Status menu, *3-92*
I/O, Utility menu, *3-31*, *3-77*
IC protector tip, *3-64*
Icons, *1-3*
Independent Mode, Cursor, *2-27–2-28*
Independent, Cursor menu, *3-14*
Infinite Persistence, Display menu, *3-22*
Installation, *1-4–1-5*
Intensified Samples, Display menu, *3-21*
Intensified, Horizontal menu, *3-17*, *3-19*
Intensity, *3-22*, *G-5*
Intensity, Display menu, *3-22*
Interlaced Field One, Video Trigger menu, *3-103*
Interlaced Field Two, Video Trigger menu, *3-103*
Interlacing, *2-12*
Interleaf, *3-30*
Interleaf, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Interpolation, *2-18*, *3-23*, *G-5*

K

Knob, *G-5*
General purpose, *1-21*, *2-6*, *G-4*
Horizontal **POSITION**, *1-11*, *2-23*, *3-39*
Horizontal **SCALE**, *1-11*, *2-23*, *3-39*
MEASURE, *2-28*
Trigger **MAIN LEVEL**, *1-12*, *2-16*
Vertical **POSITION**, *1-11*, *2-23*, *3-97*
Vertical **SCALE**, *1-11*, *2-23*, *3-97*

L

Landscape, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Laserjet, *3-30*
Laserjet, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Layout, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Level, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*
Level, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*
Level, Trigger, *2-16*
LF Rej, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*
Limit Test Condition Met, Acquire menu, *3-46*
Limit Test Setup, Acquire menu, *3-45*, *3-46*
Limit Test Sources, Acquire menu, *3-45*
Limit Test, Acquire menu, *3-46*
Limit testing, *3-43–3-47*
Linear interpolation, *2-19*, *3-23*, *G-5*
Linear interpolation, Display menu, *3-23*
Long ground leads, *3-62*
Low, *3-49*, *G-5*
Low frequency rejection, *2-15*
Low impedance Zo probes, *3-69*
Low Ref, Measure menu, *3-55*
Low-inductance ground lead, *3-62*
Low-inductance spring-tips, *3-63*, *A-7*

M

Main menu, *G-5*
Main menu buttons, *2-2*, *G-5*
Main Scale, Horizontal menu, *3-41*
Main Trigger Menu
Falling edge, *3-28*
Rising edge, *3-28*
Main Trigger menu, *3-26*, *3-96*
AC, *3-27*
Auto, *3-29*
Ch1, Ch2 ..., *3-26*
Coupling, *3-27*
DC, *3-27*
Edge, *3-26*, *3-96*
HF Rej, *3-27*
Level, *3-28*
LF Rej, *3-27*
Mode & Holdoff, *3-29*
Noise Rej, *3-27*
Normal, *3-29*
Set to 50%, *3-28*, *3-94*
Set to ECL, *3-28*
Set to TTL, *3-28*
Slope, *3-28*
Source, *3-26*
Type, *3-26*, *3-96*, *3-100*, *3-101*
Video, *3-100*, *3-101*
Marker rings, *3-62*, *A-7*
Math Waveform
Differential, *A-1*
FFT, *A-1*
Integral, *A-1*
Optional Advanced, *A-1*
Math waveforms, *3-106*
Math1/2/3, More menu, *3-106*
Maximum, *3-49*, *G-5*
Mean, *3-49*, *G-5*
MEASURE button, *3-51*
Measure Delay menu
Create Measrmnt, *3-57*
Delay To, *3-55*
Edges, *3-56*
Measure Delay To, *3-55*
OK Create Measurement, *3-57*
Measure Delay To, Measure Delay menu, *3-55*
Measure menu, *2-9*, *3-51*, *3-57*
Gating, *3-53*
High Ref, *3-55*
High-Low Setup, *3-54*
Histogram, *3-54*

Low Ref, *3-55*
Mid Ref, *3-55*
Mid2 Ref, *3-55*
Min-Max, *3-54*
Reference Levels, *3-54*
Remove Measrmnt, *3-52*, *3-58*
Select Measrmnt, *3-51*, *3-55*
Set Levels in % units, *3-54*
Snapshot, *3-57*

Measurement
Amplitude, *3-48*, *G-1*
Area, *3-48*, *G-1*
Burst width, *3-48*, *G-2*
Cycle area, *3-48*, *G-2*
Cycle mean, *3-48*, *G-2*
Cycle RMS, *3-48*, *G-2*
Delay, *3-55*, *G-3*
Duty cycle, *1-20*, *G-5*, *G-6*
Fall time, *3-49*
Frequency, *1-20*, *3-49*, *G-3*
Gated, *G-3*
High, *3-49*, *G-4*
Low, *3-49*, *G-5*
Maximum, *3-49*, *G-5*
Mean, *3-49*, *G-5*
Minimum, *3-49*, *G-5*
Negative duty cycle, *3-49*
Negative overshoot, *3-49*
Negative width, *3-49*
Overshoot, *G-6*
Peak to peak, *3-49*, *G-6*
Period, *3-50*, *G-6*
Phase, *3-49*, *G-6*
Positive duty cycle, *3-50*
Positive overshoot, *3-50*
Positive width, *3-50*
Propagation delay, *3-49*
Readout, *3-51*
Reference levels, *1-21*
Rise time, *1-20*, *3-50*, *G-7*
RMS, *3-50*, *G-7*
Undershoot, *G-6*
Width, *1-20*, *G-6*, *G-7*

Measurement Accuracy, Ensuring maximum, *3-90–3-91*

Measurements, *2-26–2-28*, *3-48–3-58*
Algorithms, *A-25–A-36*
Automated, *1-19*, *2-28*
Cursor, *2-27*, *3-11*
Gated, *3-53*
Graticule, *2-26*
Snapshot of, *3-57*

Menu
Acquire, *3-6*, *3-43*
Cursor, *3-13*
Delayed Trigger, *3-18–3-20*
Display, *3-21*
Horizontal, *3-17*
Main, *2-5*
Main Trigger, *3-26*, *3-96*
Measure, *2-9*, *3-51*, *3-57*
More, *2-9*, *3-86*, *3-106*
Operation, *2-6*
Pop-up, *2-7*, *G-6*
Save/Recall, *3-83*
Save/Recall Setup, *2-9*
Save/Recall Waveform, *2-9*, *3-85*
Setup, *1-8*
Status, *3-92*
status, *2-9*
Utility, *2-10*, *3-30*, *3-77*
Video Trigger, *3-100*

Mid Ref, Measure menu, *3-55*

Mid2 Ref, Measure menu, *3-55*

Min-Max, Measure menu, *3-54*

Minimum, *3-49*, *G-5*

Mode, Cursor, *2-27–2-28*

Mode & Holdoff, Main Trigger menu, *3-29*

Mode & Holdoff, Video Trigger menu, *3-105*

Mode, Acquire menu, *3-6*

Model number location, *2-2*

MORE button, *3-44*, *3-86*, *3-88*, *3-106*

More menu, *2-9*, *3-86*, *3-106*
Change Math waveform definition, *3-107*
Dual Wfm Math, *3-107*
Math1/2/3, *3-106*
OK Create Math Waveform, *3-107*
Reference waveform status, *3-86*
Set 1st Source to, *3-108*
Set 2nd Source to, *3-108*
Set Function to, *3-107*
Set operator to, *3-108*
Set Single Source to, *3-107*
Single Wfm Math, *3-107*

N

Neg Sync, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*

Negative duty cycle, *3-49*

Negative overshoot, *3-49*

Negative width, *3-49*

Noise Rej, Main Trigger menu, *3-27*

Nominal Traits
Defined, *A-10*
Listed, *A-10*

NonInterlaced Both Fields, Video Trigger menu, *3-103*

Normal trigger mode, *2-14*, *G-6*

Normal, Main Trigger menu, *3-29*

Normal, Video Trigger menu, *3-105*

NTSC Video Standard, *2-13*

NTSC, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

O

OFF (Real Time Only), Acquire menu, *3-6*

Off Bus, Utility menu, *3-77*

Offset, Vertical, *2-23*, *3-99*

Offset, Vertical menu, *3-99*

OK Create Math Wfm, More menu, *3-107*

OK Create Measurement, Measure Delay menu, *3-57*

OK Erase Ref & Panel Memory, Utility menu, *3-84*

OK Store Template, Acquire menu, *3-44*

ON (Enable ET), Acquire menu, *3-6*

ON/STBY button, *1-5*, *2-2*

Optical probes, *3-72*

Option 2A, *A-1*

Option 2B, *A-2*

Options, *A-1–A-8*

Oscilloscope, *G-6*

Overall, Display menu, *3-22*

Overshoot, *G-6*

P

Packaging, *A-37*

Paired cursor, *2-27*, *3-11*

PAL Video Standard, *2-13*

PAL, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

Passive voltage probes, *3-68–3-69*

PCX, *3-30*
PCX, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Peak detect acquisition mode, *3-2*
Peak Detect, Acquire menu, *3-6*
Peak to peak, *3-49*, *G-6*
Performance Characteristics
  Nominal. *See Nominal Traits*
  Typical. *See Warranted Characteristics*
  Warranted. *See Warranted Characteristics*
Period, *3-50*, *G-6*
Persistence, *3-22*
Phase, *3-49*, *G-6*
Pixel, *G-6*
Plotter, HC100, *A-3*
Pop-up menu, *2-7*, *G-6*
Port, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Port, Utility menu, *3-77*
Portrait, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Pos Sync, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*
Position, Vertical, *2-23*, *3-97*
Position, Vertical menu, *3-99*
Positive duty cycle, *3-50*
Positive overshoot, *3-50*
Positive width, *3-50*
Postscript, *3-30*
Posttrigger, *G-7*
Pouch, *A-1*
Power connector, *1-4*
Power cords, *A-1*, *A-2*
Power off, *1-6*
Power on, *1-5–1-6*
Pretrigger, *G-7*
Principal power switch, *1-5*, *2-4*
Printer
  DPU-411, *A-1*
  DPU-412, *A-1*
Probe accessories
  Compact-to-miniature probe tip adapter, *3-64*, *A-7*
  Dual-lead adapter, *3-65*
  IC protector tip, *3-64*
  Long ground leads, *3-62*
  Low-inductance ground lead, *3-62*
  Low-inductance spring-tips, *3-63*, *A-7*
  Marker rings, *3-62*, *A-7*
  Probe tip-to-chassis adapter, *3-64*, *A-7*
  Probe tip-to-circuit board adapters, *3-63*
  Retractable hook tip, *3-60*
  SMT KlipChip, *3-63*, *A-7*
Probe Cal, 1-6
Probe tip-to-chassis adapter, *3-64*, *A-7*
Probe tip-to-circuit board adapters, *3-63*
Probes
  Accessories, *3-60–3-65*, *A-4*, *A-5–A-8*
  Active voltage, *3-70–3-71*
  Additional, *A-3*
  By applications, *3-73*, *3-74*
  Compensation, *1-11*, *3-66*, *G-7*
  Connection, *1-7*, *3-59–3-65*
  Current, *3-71*
  Definition, *G-7*
  Differential active, *3-70*
  Fixtured active, *3-70*
  General purpose (high input resistance), *3-68*
  High speed, *3-70*
  High voltage, *3-69–3-70*
  Low impedance Zo, *3-69*
  Optical, *3-72*
  Passive, *3-66*
  Passive voltage, *3-68–3-69*
  Selection, *3-68–3-74*
  Time-to-voltage converter, *3-72*
Propagation delay, *3-49*

Q

Quantizing, *G-7*

R

Rack mounting, *A-3*
Rate 1, Video Trigger menu, *3-104*
Rate 2, Video Trigger menu, *3-104*
Rate 3, Video Trigger menu, *3-104*
Rate 4, Video Trigger menu, *3-104*
Readout
  Acquisition, *3-5*
  Channel, *2-5*, *3-88*
  Cursors, *2-5*
  Edge trigger, *3-26*
  General purpose knob, *2-5*
  Measurement, *2-28*, *3-51*
  Record view, *2-5*
  Snapshot, *3-57*
  Time base, *2-5*
  Trigger, *2-5*, *3-95*
  Trigger Level Bar, *3-22*
  Trigger Point, *3-22*
Readout, Display menu, *3-22*
Real time sampling, *2-18*
Real-time sampling, *G-7*
Rear panel, *2-4*, *3-77*
Recall, Setups, *3-83–3-84*
Recall Factory Setup, Save/Recall Setup menu, *3-84*
Recall Saved Setup, Save/Recall Setup menu, *3-84*
Recalling, Waveforms, *3-85*
Record length, *1-3*, *2-18*, *3-41*, *A-2*, *G-7*
Record Length, Horizontal menu, *3-41*
Record View, *2-22*, *3-40*, *3-95*
Record view, *2-5*
Ref1, Ref2, Ref3, Ref4, Reference waveform status, *3-86*
Ref1, Ref2, Ref3, Ref4, Save/Recall Waveform menu, *3-86*
Reference levels, *1-21*, *3-54*
Reference Levels, Measure menu, *3-54*
Reference memory, *G-7*
Remote communication, *3-75–3-78*
Remove Measrmnt, Measure menu, *3-52*, *3-58*
Repetitive Signal, Acquire menu, *3-6*
Reset Zoom Factors, Zoom menu, *3-111*
Retractable hook tip, *3-60*
Ring Bell if Condition Met, Acquire menu, *3-45*
Rise time, *1-20*, *3-50*, *G-7*
Rising edge, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*
Rising edge, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*

RMS, *3-50*, *G-7*

Roll, *G-7*

Roll Mode, *3-79–3-82*
- Triggered, *3-81*
- Triggered, with Single Sequence, *3-81*
- Untriggered, *3-79*
- Untriggered, with Single Sequence, *3-79*

RS-232, **Port** (optional), *3-75*

RS-232, **Port** (optional), *3-31*, *3-34*

RUN/STOP, Acquire menu, *3-7*

S

Safety, *v*
- Symbols, *v*

Sample acquisition mode, *3-2*, *G-7*

Sample interval, *G-8*

Sample, Acquire menu, *3-6*

Sampling, *2-18*, *G-8*

Save, Setups, *3-83–3-84*

Save Current Setup, Save/Recall Setup menu, *3-83*

Save Waveform, Save/Recall Waveform menu, *3-85*

Save/Recall **SETUP** button, *3-83*

Save/recall **SETUP** button, *1-8*

Save/Recall Setup menu, *2-9*, *3-83*
- **factory** status, *3-83*
- **Recall Factory Setup**, *3-84*
- **Recall Saved Setup**, *3-84*
- **Save Current Setup**, *3-83*
- **user** status, *3-83*

Save/Recall **WAVEFORM** button, *3-85*

Save/Recall Waveform menu, *2-9*, *3-85*
- **active** status, *3-85*
- **empty** status, *3-85*
- **Ref1**, **Ref2**, **Ref3**, **Ref4**, *3-86*
- **Save Waveform**, *3-85*

Saving, Waveforms, *3-85*

Saving and recalling setups, *1-24*, *3-83*

Saving and recalling waveforms, *3-85*

Scan Parameter, Video Trigger menu, *3-103*

SECAM Video Standard, *2-13*

SECAM, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

seconds, Cursor menu, *3-15*

Select Measrmnt, Measure menu, *3-51*, *3-55*

Selected waveform, *G-8*

Selecting channels, *3-88*

Self test, *1-6*

Set 1st Source to, More menu, *3-108*

Set 2nd Source to, More menu, *3-108*

Set Function to, More menu, *3-107*

SET LEVEL TO 50% button, *3-94*

Set Levels in % units, Measure menu, *3-54*

Set operator to, More menu, *3-108*

Set Single Source to, More menu, *3-107*

Set to 10%, Horizontal menu, *3-42*

Set to 50%, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*

Set to 50%, Horizontal menu, *3-42*

Set to 50%, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*, *3-94*

Set to 90%, Horizontal menu, *3-42*

Set to ECL, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*

Set to ECL, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*

Set to TTL, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*

Set to TTL, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*

Set to Zero, Vertical menu, *3-99*

Setup menu, *1-8*

Setups, Save and recall, *3-83–3-84*

Shipping, *A-37*

Side menu, *G-8*

Side menu buttons, *2-2*, *G-8*

Signal Path Compensation, *1-6*, *3-90–3-91*, *G-8*

Sin(x)/x interpolation, *2-19*, *3-23*, *G-5*

Sin(x)/x interpolation, Display menu, *3-23*

Single Acquisition Sequence, Acquire menu, *3-7*

SINGLE TRIG button, *3-7*, *3-94*

Single Wfm Math, More menu, *3-107*

Single-Shot sampling, *2-18*

Slope, *G-8*

Slope, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-20*

Slope, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*

Slope, Trigger, *2-16*

SMT KlipChip, *3-63*, *A-7*

Snapshot, Readout, *3-57*

Snapshot of Measurements, *1-22*, *3-57*

Snapshot, Measure menu, *3-57*

Software, *1-3*

Software version, *3-92*

Source, Delayed Trigger menu, *3-19*

Source, Main Trigger menu, *3-28*

Source, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*

SPC, *G-8*

Specification, *A-9*

Spooler, Hardcopy, *3-32*

Start up, *1-4*

STATUS button, *3-92*

Status menu, *2-9*, *3-92*
- Firmware version, *3-92*
- **I/O**, *3-92*
- **System**, *3-92*
- **Trigger**, *3-92*
- **Waveforms**, *3-92*

Stop After Limit Test Condition Met, Acquire menu, *3-45*

Stop After, Acquire menu, *3-7*, *3-46*

Style, Display menu, *3-21*

Switch, principal power, *1-5*, *2-4*

Sync Polarity, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*

Sync Pulse, *2-12*

System, Status menu, *3-92*

System, Utility menu, *3-31*, *3-77*

T

Talk/Listen Address, Utility menu, *3-77*

Tek Secure, *3-84*, *G-8*
Tek Secure Erase Memory, Utility menu, *3-84*
Temperature compensation, *3-90–3-91*
Template Source, Acquire menu, *3-43*
Text/Grat, Display menu, *3-22*
Thinkjet, *3-30*
Thinkjet, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
TIFF, *3-30*
TIFF, Hardcopy menu, *3-31*
Time base, *G-8*
Time Base, Horizontal menu, *3-17*, *3-40*
Time Units, Cursor menu, *3-15*
Time-to-voltage converter, *3-72*
TOGGLE button, *2-27*, *3-14*, *G-8*
Tracking Mode, Cursor, *2-28*
Tracking, Cursor menu, *3-14*
Trigger, *2-11–2-16*, *3-9*, *G-9*
  AC Line Voltage, *2-12*
  Auxiliary, *2-12*
  Coupling, *2-15*
  Delayed, *3-16–3-20*
  Edge, *2-12*, *3-26*, *G-3*
  Holdoff, *2-14*
  Level, *2-16*, *G-9*
  Mode, *2-13*
  Position, *2-15*, *3-41*
  Readout, *3-95*
  Slope, *2-11*, *2-16*
  Source, *2-11*
  Status Lights, *3-94*
  Types, *3-96*
  Video, *2-12*, *3-100*
Trigger Bar, *2-5*
Trigger Bar Style, Display menu, *3-22*
Trigger Level Bar, Readout, *3-22*
Trigger **MAIN LEVEL** knob, *1-12*, *2-16*, *3-93*
TRIGGER MENU button, 3-26, *3-96*, 3-100
Trigger Point, Readout, *3-22*
Trigger Position, Horizontal menu, *3-41*
Trigger Status Lights, *3-94*
Trigger, Status menu, *3-92*
TV Delay Mode, Video Trigger menu, *3-102*
Type, Main Trigger menu, *3-26*, *3-96*, *3-100*, *3-101*
Typical Characteristics
  Defined, *A-21*
  Listed, *A-21*

U

Undershoot, *G-6*
user, Saved setup status, *3-83*
UTILITY button, *3-31*, *3-77*
Utility Menu
  OK Erase Ref & Panel Memory, *3-84*
  Tek Secure Erase Memory, *3-84*
Utility menu, *2-10*, *3-30*, *3-77*
  Configure, *3-31*, *3-77*
  GPIB, *3-77*
  Hardcopy, *3-77*
  Hardcopy (Talk Only), *3-31*
  I/O, *3-31*, *3-77*
  Off Bus, *3-77*
  Port, *3-77*
  System, *3-31*, *3-77*
  Talk/Listen Address, *3-77*

V

V Limit, Acquire menu, *3-44*
Variable Persistence, Display menu, *3-22*
Vectors, *3-21*
Vectors, Display menu, *3-21*
Vertical, *3-9*
  Bar cursors, *2-27*, *3-11*, *G-9*
  Control, *3-97–3-99*
  Offset, *2-23*, *3-99*
  Position, *2-23*, *3-97*
  POSITION knob, *2-23*
  Readout, *3-97*
  Scale, *3-97*
  SCALE knob, *1-11*, *2-23*
  System, *1-11*, *2-23*
Vertical menu
  100 MHz, *3-99*
  20 MHz, *3-99*
  Bandwidth, *3-99*
  Coupling, *3-98*
  Fine Scale, *3-99*
  Full, *3-99*
  Offset, *3-99*
  Position, *3-99*
  Set to Zero, *3-99*
VERTICAL MENU button, *1-16*
Vertical **POSITION** knob, *3-97*
Vertical Readout, *3-97*
Vertical **SCALE** knob, *3-97*
VGA display, *A-43*
Video Class, Video Trigger menu, *3-101*
Video Output
  Acceptable Cable, *A-20*
  Description, *A-13*
Video Standards, *2-13*
Video Trigger
  Fields, *2-12*
  Interlacing, *2-12*
  NTSC Standard, *2-13*
  PAL Standard, *2-13*
  SECAM Standard, *2-13*
  Standards, *2-13*
  Sync Pulse, *2-12*
Video trigger, *2-12*, *3-100*
Video Trigger Menu
  Neg Sync, *3-102*
  Pos Sync, *3-102*
Video Trigger menu, *3-100*
  Auto, *3-105*
  Ch1, Ch2 ..., *3-101*
  Custom, *3-101*
  Delay by Lines, *3-102*
  Delay by Time, *3-102*
  Interlaced Field One, *3-103*
  Interlaced Field Two, *3-103*
  Mode & Holdoff, *3-105*
  NonInterlaced Both Fields, *3-103*
  Normal, *3-105*
  NTSC, *3-101*
  PAL, *3-101*
  Rate 1, *3-104*
  Rate 2, *3-104*
  Rate 3, *3-104*
  Rate 4, *3-104*
  Scan Parameter, *3-103*
  SECAM, *3-101*
  Source, *3-101*
  Sync Polarity, *3-102*
  TV Delay Mode, *3-102*
  Video Class, *3-101*
Video, Main Trigger menu, *3-100*, *3-101*

W

WARNING, statement in manual, *v*

Warranted Characteristics
- Defined, *A-15*
- Listed, *A-15*
- Performance Conditions for, *A-15*

Waveform, *G-9*
- Interval, *G-9*
- Math, *3-106–3-108*
- Off priority, *3-89*

WAVEFORM OFF button, *1-18*, *3-25*, *3-89*

Waveform Rate, *A-11*

Waveform, Display menu, *3-22*

Waveforms, Math, *3-106*

Waveforms, Status menu, *3-92*

Width, *1-20*, *G-6*, *G-7*

X

XY, Format, *3-24–3-25*

XY format, *G-9*

XY, Display menu, *3-24*

Y

YT, Format, *3-24–3-25*

YT format, *G-9*

YT, Display menu, *3-24*

Z

Zoom, *3-109–3-112*

ZOOM button, *3-109*

Zoom feature, *2-25*

Zoom menu
- **Reset Zoom Factors**, *3-111*
- **Zoom Off**, *3-111*

Zoom Off, Zoom menu, *3-111*

Contents printed on recyclable paper. Please recycle.